

Morte Arture.

DUBLIN: WILLIAM MCGEE, 18, NASSAU STREET.
EDINBURGH: T. G. STEVENSON, 22, SOUTH FREDERICK STREET.
GLASGOW: HUGH HOPKINS, ROYAL BANK PLACE.
BERLIN: ASHER & CO., UNTER DEN LINDEN, 11.
NEW YORK: C. SCRIBNER & CO.; LEYPOLDT & HOLT.
PHILADELPHIA: J. B. LIPPINCOTT & CO.

Monte Arthure,

OR

The Death of Arthur.

EDITED FROM

ROBERT THORNTON'S MS.

IN THE LIBRARY OF LINCOLN CATHEDRAL,

BY

EDMUND BROCK.

[3rd Edition, 1871.]

LONDON:

PUBLISHED FOR THE EARLY ENGLISH TEXT SOCIETY,
BY N. TRÜBNER & CO., 60, PATERNOSTER ROW.

MDCCCLXV.

1865

PR
1119
A2
no. 8
1871

EF. & REN.

7915

CONTENTS.

	PAGE
PREFACE	vii
ON THE METRE OF THE POEM	ix
NOTES	xiv
MORTE ARTHURE	1
INDEX OF NAMES	129
GLOSSARIAL INDEX	136

P R E F A C E.

THE present version of the *Morte Arthure* or *Death of Arthur* is mainly an account of the great war with Lucius Iberius, Emperor of Rome, and its sequel, the war with the traitor Modred, who, being left in charge of the kingdom, during Arthur's absence usurped the throne and married Queen Guinevere. In his combat with Modred, whom he slays, Arthur receives his death-wound, and shortly after dies. Among the incidents in the story not forming part of the wars, we may note the great feast at Carlisle, the king's dream of the dragon and bear, the slaughter of the great giant on Michael's Mount, and Arthur's dream of Fortune's wheel and the Nine Worthies. The love of Lancelot for the queen finds no place in this work.

Morte Arthure was probably written in the latter part of the fourteenth century, or early in the fifteenth. Of the author nothing whatever is known, not even his name. This is the more to be regretted as he must certainly be considered a poet of no mean order; the freshness of his descriptions of scenery¹, the touching pathos of some of his passages², and the rapid flow and thundering force of his diction in others³, mark him out as one of the greatest writers of his time. What, beside him, are Occleve, Lydgate, Awdeley, Hylton, Hawes, Lonelich, and like poetasters? What even Chestre and Skelton?

¹ See ll. 920—932, 2506—2512.

² See ll. 3790—3808, 3874—3894, 3949—3971.

³ See ll. 2204—2217, 2541—2573, 2989—3000.

The poem is printed from the Thornton MS., in the library of Lincoln Cathedral; no other copy is known. The MS. is a collection of poems and treatises on various subjects, some in English, some in Latin; a list of the contents may be found in Sir Frederic Madden's *Syr Gawayne* (Bannatyne Club, 1839), or in the *Thornton Romances*, ed. Halliwell (Camden Soc. 1844). The MS. is named after Robert Thornton, who penned a great part of it. At the end of *Morte Arthure* we find, "*R. Thornton dictus qui scripsit sit benedictus. Amen.*" Thornton was "a native of Oswaldkirk in Yorkshire, and Archdeacon of Bedford, in the Diocese of Lincoln, about the middle of the fifteenth century. The date of Archdeacon Thornton and his connection with Lincoln Cathedral can be ascertained pretty accurately, as among the archives of the Cathedral there is preserved an instrument or deed of considerable importance, attested by him as Archdeacon, which bears date 1439."¹

Morte Arthure was first printed in 1847, by J. O. Halliwell, but can hardly be said to have been published, since the impression was limited to 75 copies. In 1865 it was edited by the Rev. George G. Perry, for the Early English Text Society. The present edition appears instead of a reprint of Mr Perry's, but differs from it in several respects; the text has been carefully read throughout with the MS. at Lincoln, and corrections made, where needful; the side-notes are greatly altered, often replaced with new; a new Glossary has been written, and an index of names and some notes added.

I am greatly indebted to the Rev. W. W. Skeat for much valuable help, especially with the Glossary, also for kindly revising his paper on the metre of the poem.

E. B.

¹ From Mr Perry's Preface, p. vii.

ON THE METRE OF THE POEM.

THE metre in which the "Morte Arthure" is written may best be understood by comparing it with "Piers Plowman," the accentuation and *swing* of the verse being much better marked in the last-mentioned poem. The principles which govern this peculiar metre may thus be more readily discerned, and, when once understood, may easily be applied to the present poem.

For a similar reason, it will be the simplest method to consider, first of all, a few lines (of "Piers Plowman") where the metre is most strongly marked, and, afterwards, some where it is, apparently, less regular.

It should first, however, be observed that each complete line in an alliterative poem consists generally of two *sections*, which were separated in old manuscripts by a dot, called the *metrical point* or *pause*, and which may conveniently be denoted by an inverted full stop, thus :—

"Schelde vs ffro schamesdede · and synfulle werkes ;"

or else by printing the lines thus :—

"Schelde vs ffro schamesdede,
And synfulle werkes."

In reading aloud a pause may conveniently be made between the sections.

The two sections form, however, but one complete line ; and, as the metrical point is more necessary when the poem is to be sung or recited than when it is merely to be read, it has not been thought necessary to insert it in this edition, since the reader, when he has

once caught the rhythm of the verse, may always be tolerably sure as to where it must occur.

To begin, then ; consider the line—

“Ac Lucifer lowest · lith of hem allē.”

Piers Plowman (ed Skeat), B. i. 124.

If we use an asterisk to denote a strongly-accented¹ (or *loud*) syllable, the figure 1 to denote a *single* unaccented syllable, the figure 2 to mean *two* unaccented syllables immediately succeeding each other, and so on ; we may represent the above line by the scheme,

1 * 2 * 1 : * 2 * 1 ;

and this may be taken as a convenient type of alliterative lines, from which the scansion of very many others may be readily deduced. Some, however, as will be shewn presently, must be referred to a type somewhat different.

Now, we here observe (1) that each section contains two strong accents ; (2) that, of the strongly-accented syllables, three begin with a common letter, which has been called the *rime-letter* ; and (3) of these three, two occur in the first section, and one in the second. Such is the usual and normal arrangement. The *rime-letters* may be either consonants or vowels, and may consist of *single* letters, or of such combinations as *se*, *bl*, *tr*, etc. If vowels, it is sufficient that they *are* so ; they need not be the *same* vowels, and, in practice, are generally *different*.

Again, the last strongly-accented syllable in the line does *not* begin with the *rime-letter*. This also is the usual and more correct arrangement.

Having once this typical form to refer to, it is easy to enumerate most of the changes which may arise. Let us now take the line,

“Here² messe and here matynes · and many of here oures.”

Piers Plowman, B. Prol. 97.

¹ I use the term *strongly-accented* advisedly, all accents not being equal. Thus, in the line—

“On the oāt-grass and the swórd-grass, and the búlrush in the póol,”
the syllables marked are *strongly-accented*.

² “*Hire* [or *here* = their] is a monosyllable.”—*Guest on English Rhythms*; ed. 1838, p. 34.

We have here the arrangement

1 * 2 * 1 : 1 * 3 * 1

which shews (1) that an unaccented syllable may be introduced at the beginning of the second section ; and (2) that the number of intermediate unaccented syllables may be readily increased to *three*.

Now herein lies the peculiar freedom and elasticity of alliterative verse ; we shall soon find by observation that, under certain circumstances, as many as *four* short unaccented syllables (even if they contain among them one that is accented *slightly*) may be inserted at pleasure between the emphatic syllables without destroying the rhythm ; for it is one addressed to the *ear* only, and not to the *eye*. The chief point which the poet has to take care of is that when he introduces a larger number of unaccented syllables, they should be capable of rapid enunciation, lest the verse seem clogged and unmusical. An example may be seen in the lines,

“Fáyteden for here fóde · fou³ten attë álé ;”
Piers Plowman B. ProL. 42.

which may be denoted by

* 4 * 1 : * 3 * 1

It would take up too much space to explain here the true method of scanning the lines by division into feet ; it may suffice to say that the *general effect* of the metre is *dactylic*, supposing the term *dactyl* to be capable of application to an *English* foot, which, to speak strictly, it is not. Indeed, the nomenclature of English prosody is in sore need of alteration. Neither is there space to explain, and to account for, the curious variations which may further be made in the alliterative metre. The view here given is only an approximate one, which will be found useful in practice. A longer passage may exemplify it better—

“I lóked on my léft half · as þe lády me taúghte,
 And was wár of a wómman · wórthe^{li} yelóthed,
 Púrfiled with pélure · þe finest vpon érthe,
 Y-croúne^{de} with a córone · þe kýng hath non bétter ;
 Fétislich hir fýngres · were frétted with gólde wyre.”
Piers Plowman, B. ii. 7.

<i>Analysis:</i>	1	*	3	*	1	:	2	*	2	*	1
	2	*	2	*	1	:		*	3	*	1
		*	3	*	1	:	1	*	3	*	1
	1	*	3	*	1	:	1	*	2	*	1
		*	3	*	1	:	1	*	2	*	1

One variation, however, found oftenest in the first section, is too important to be passed over. It is that we sometimes find in a section a *third* strongly-accented syllable, thus giving to the line a rather unwieldy length; as in,

“The mōste mýschief on mólde · is mountyng wel fáste.”
Piers Plowman, B. Prol. 67.

This third accent is often very awkwardly placed, as in the first line of “Morte Arthure,”

“Now grétt glórious Gódde · thurgh gráce of hym seluene.”

Other noticeable deviations from the strict type may be briefly indicated.

(1) The syllable beginning with the rime-letter is sometimes unemphatic; as in “Morte Arthure,” l. 59,

“In Glamórgane with glée · thare gládchipe was éuere.”

(2) Sometimes there are but *two* rime-letters, as in l. 95,

“At prýme of the dáye · in páyne of 3our lýrys.”

(3) Sometimes there is *no* alliteration, as in l. 70. (4) Sometimes there are *four* rime-letters, as l. 32, where all belong to accented syllables,

“Scáthylle Scóttlande by skýlle · he skýftys as hym lýkys;”

or as in l. 35, where one belongs to an unaccented syllable,

“Hólaund and Hénawde · they hélde of hyme bóthen.”

It will now be sufficient, perhaps, to indicate what is probably the correct accentuation of the first fourteen lines, as this will enable the reader to perceive in them a certain vigorous *swing* (well suited for the ballad-reciter), which will suggest the scansion of most other lines, though there is always somewhat of difficulty in it, from the fact that we have now-a-days changed the accentuation of many words, and cannot be quite certain about the final *e*'s.

"Now grétt glórious Gódde · thurgh gráce of hym séluene,
 And the précyous práyere · of hys prýs módyr
 Schéldé vs ffro schámesdede · and synfulle wérkes,
 And gýffe vs gráce to gýe · and góuerne vs hére 4
 In this wréchyde wérldé · thorowe vért[u]jous lýwyngé
 That we may káyre til hys cóurte · the kýngdome of hévyne,
 Whene oure saúles schalle párté · and súndyre ffra the bódý
 Ewyre to béldé and to býde · in blýsse wyth hymé séluene; 8
 And wýsse me to wérpe owte · some wórde at this týme,
 That nothyre vóyde be ne váyne · bot wýrchip tille hymé sélvyne; ;
 Plésande and prófitabile · to the pópule that theme héres.
 3e that líste has to lýth · or lúffes for to hére 12
 Off élders of áldé tyme · and of theire áwke dédys,
 Hów they were léle in theire láwe · and lóuede Gód Almýghty," etc.

The accentuation of the last two lines is a little doubtful. There may have been an accent on the second *of* in l. 13, owing to its position and the fact of its beginning with a rime-letter; while in l. 14 we have the rather unusual number of six accents, unless *how* was slurred over.

After all, the best way of perceiving the rhythm is to read over some fifty lines several times till they seem quite familiar, and then to read them over once more *out loud*, with strong emphasis on the verbs, substantives, and adjectives, and with a natural and free pronunciation.

One peculiarity in this poem should be particularly noticed, viz. that the same rime-letter is often continued throughout several successive lines. There is a remarkable instance of this in the passage beginning with l. 1844, where we have in succession 4 lines founded on *s*, 2 on hard *c*, 2 on *f*, 6 on *s*, 6 on *b*, 4 on hard *c*, 2 on vowels, 2 on *s*, 2 on *ch*, 2 on *f*, and 2 on *r*. Other striking examples are 7 lines on vowels, 571—577, 8 on *s*, 3310—3317, 9 on *j* or soft *g*, 2889—2897, 10 on *f*, 3300—3309, and 11 on *f*, 2755—2765. Similar instances are rare in *Piers the Plowman*, though we find 5 successive lines founded upon *p* in the B-text, Pass. xiv. 190—194.

For further remarks, see the Essay on Alliterative Verse in the third volume of the *Percy Folio MS.*, ed. Hales and Furnivall, and the introduction to *Piers the Plowman*, Text A. pp. xxii and xxx.

NOTES.

Lines 212—215. Precious stones were supposed to keep off poison. Compare the following:—"þe earn deð in his neste enne deorewurðe zimston þet hette achate. Vor non attri þinc ne mei þene ston neiben, ne þeo hwule þet he is in his neste hermen his briddes. Þes deorewurðe ston, þet is Iesu Crist, ase ston treowe and ful of alle mihten, ouer alle zimstones. He is þe achate þet atter of sunne ne neihede neuere. Do hine iðine neste, þet is, iðine heorte. Þenc hwuch pinen he þolede on his flesche wiðuten, and hu swete he was iheorted, and hu softe wiðinnen; and so þu schalt driue ut euerich atter of þine heorte, and bitternesse of þine bodie. Þes ston, ase ich er seide, avleieð attri þinges. Habbe þu þesne ston wiðine þine heorte, þet is Godes nest, ne þer-tu nout dreden þe attrie neddre of helle. Þine briddes, þet beoð þine gode werkes, beoð al sker of his atter."—*The Ancren Riwle*, ed. Morton, p. 134—136. Compare also *Piers the Plowman* (ed. Skeat, Clarendon Press Series), note to Pass. ii. l. 14.

450. *Wailynq-strette*, "the Roman road leading from Dover to Cardigan. Leland describes it thus: *Secunda via principalis dicitur Watelingstreate, tendens ab euro-austro in Zephyrum Septentrionalem. Incipit enim a Dovaria, tendens per medium Cantia, juxta London, per S. Albanum, Dunstaplum, Stratfordiam, Towcestriam, Litleburne, per montem Gilberti juxta Salopiam, deinde per Stratton, et per medium Wallia, usque Cardigan. Itin. vol. vi. p. 120, edit. Oxon. 1744.*"—Bosworth's *Anglo-Saxon Dictionary*, under *Wætlinga stræt*.

793. *Brathelle* is purposely omitted from the Glossary, because it ought to have been printed *brayelle*, as it stands in the MS. It seems to mean the fur of the bear's belly. Compare the following:—

"Brayeul: m. The parts, or feathers, about the Haukes fundament, called by our Faulconers the brayle in a short-wingd, and, the pannell in a long-wingd, Hauke."—*Cotgrave*.

"The *brayle*, or pannell of a Hawke. *Le brayer d'un oiseau, le brayeul.*"—*Sherwood*.

"Briael, *brayette*: Partie de la culotte qui tenoit lieu de celle qu'on appelle à présent le pont."—*Roquefort*.

"Braioel, brao'el: Le haut de la culotte."—*Roquefort*.

966. *Thow sayned the vnsekyrly*. Thou blessedst thyself vnsafely, i. e. you did not cross yourself in a proper manner, so as to ensure your safety; otherwise you would not be here, in this perilous place. If the sign of the cross was not made in the right way, it was considered of no avail.

1195. Read *with [the] conquerour*.

1270. *Or many lyghte salle lawe*. Or many shall light low, i. e. fall.

1285. "Horns of elephants full loudly blown." Our fathers were remarkably ignorant of the nature and habits of foreign animals.

1293. *Ewyne in the myddes*. Right in the middle.

1315. *That no mysse serues*. Who deserve no ill.

1364. *Fretted in salle*. Read *sable*.

1414. *Bretons*. This is probably the verb, *brittenes*, not the substantive, *Britons*.

1425. *Battailles*. Restore the reading of the MS.; it is right.

1474. *He ryghttez theire brenez*. More likely *he rittez*.

1485. The relative pronoun is omitted after *Boyce*. This is a frequent ellipsis. See line 1558, where *that* is omitted after *Henry*.

1548. *Or sone delyuerde*, i. e. soon to be delivered.

1572. The alliteration would be improved by reading *bot [sir] Ewayne*.

1588. *With mangere to lengene*. Qu. with *maugree*, ill-will.

1653. *Lythe*. The alliteration and sense require *kythe*.

1698. *Borghie*. A strange mistake for *Brute*, i. e. Brutus, the supposed founder of Britain.

1717. "Whether we retire or appear (show ourselves), arrange as you please."

1736. *Wellyde alle qwyke*. Boiled alive.

1797. *Wyrkez his ine wayfare*. Qu. *ine* his wayfare.

1840. *Lang ere*. The MS. reads *langere*, which may be right.

1842. *At* = that = what.

1899. *On lyfe* should be *of lyfe*.

1911. The line is incomplete; add [many].

2070. *Reverssede it redelye*. Turned it, the eagle, over quickly.

2108. *Heyghe* = *heythe*, heath. Compare *trewghe* for *trewthe*.

2128. *Handsomere*, not more handsome, but more handy or convenient.

2189. *3ife the werlde happyne*. Qu. *welthe*.

2197. This line recurs at 4155.

2245. "*Arthure!*" *askryes*. Shouts "Arthur;" but perhaps it should be simply *Arthure askryes*, Arthur shouts. Compare l. 1412.

2250. *Beblede at* should certainly be *Beblede al*.

2280. *Lyghte strandez*. This should perhaps be *lythe strandez*, as at 1517.

2295. *Heghe* = heath. See note on 2108.

2398. *I kepe noghte to layne.* I care not to concea..

2408. *Turkayne* (so in MS.) is certainly a mistake for *Tuskayne*, Tuscany. Correct the sidenote accordingly.

2506. Insert [of] after *myste*, or else read *mysty*.

2519. *With birene ony borne.* This is corrupt; no doubt the right reading is, *With-outene eny berne*.

2565. *Alet.* "Towards the close of the thirteenth century and not long after the commencement of the reign of Edward I., a new mode of protecting the neck was invented, which consisted of small plates of steel placed on the shoulders, sometimes called, from their resemblance to little standards, *Gonfanons*. They are likewise mentioned by the name of *ailettes*, or little wings, in that curious document of the sixth year of this monarch, relative to a tournament in Windsor Park, given in the XVIIIth volume of the *Archaeologia*; and in the *Statuta armorum in Tornamentis*, a few years after, by that of shoulder plates. They continued in fashion till the middle of the reign of Edward III. Their shape was . . . varied; they were square, round, pentagonal, and shieldlike; sometimes plain, but generally ornamented with the family arms, or the cross of St. George."—Meyrick, in the *Archaeologia*, vol. xix, pp. 137, 138.

2577. It is well known that in early times barbers practised blood-letting; they would therefore, of course, know how to stanch blood.

2578. *Blyne schalle he neuer.* He shall never cease [to bleed].

2586. *Surgyone in Salarne.* Compare l. 4311 and *William of Palerne*, ed. Skeat, ll. 964 and 1033.

2616. *Cyrus witye* should be *cyrqwitye*. The letter *q* is raised a little and looks very much like the usual contraction for *us*. *Cyrqwitye* = *surquidry*, arrogance, pride.

2675. This line is misplaced; it ought to follow line 2677.

2771. *Breste* seems to be a mistake for *brethe*, breath.

2934. *ffy a debles* seems to be meant for French. *Fie*, (go) to the devil.

3061. *Idene the.* The alliteration, at first sight, would seem to be on the *d* of this *idene* and of *dout*; but there is no reason why it may not be on the *i* of *idene* and the *e* of *elles*. *Idene*, if not a miswriting, may be the same as *ipenti*, frequently, in the following lines:—

"*þai þat war fild wit enst and hete
þat ipenti þair hertes ete,
þar wormes sal þam underwrote
In bale wituten hope and bote,
And for-þi þai her war wont to li
In þair stincand licheri,
Ne wald noght here bot þair delices
þat drogh þam until oper vices
þai sal haf ipen stinc iwiss
þat þai sal never mar mis.*"—*Cursor Mundi*, as quoted

by Dr Morris in the preface to *Hampole's Pricke of Conscience*, pp. x, xi.

The may be the verb *thee*, to thrive; it was most likely mistaken for the article by the scribe, who wrote it with *y*. The meaning of the line would be, "He shall frequently thrive full well, fear nought else." This accords with the statement, l. 3056, that the king spoke to the duchess "myldly with fulle meke wordes."

3257. The word *With* clearly belongs to the line before. *With bruchez*, &c.

3282. *The two eyne*. This is clearly an error for "the tone eye" = (the) one eye. "One eye of the man was brighter than silver, the other was yellower than the yolk of an egg."

3439. *Nynne of the nobileste namede in erthe*. These were the Nine Worthies. The list agrees with that given in *Reliquie Antiquæ*, vol. i. p. 287.

Saraceni.

Judæi.

Ector, Alex., Julius; David, Josue, Machabæus;

Cristiani.

Artur cum Carolo, Galfridum linquere nolo;

Isti sunt ter tres trini fidei meliores.

See Shakespere, *Love's Labour Lost*, Act 5, sc. 2.

3937. *Guchede*. I can make nothing of this word, the plain reading of the MS., unless it = gutted = *goutté*, dropped or spotted. At line 3759, we read that this king of Gothland "bare of gowles fulle gaye with gowces of syluere." *Gowces* I suppose to be miswritten for *gowtes*, drops, spots.

LIST OF ABBREVIATIONS USED IN THE GLOSSARIAL INDEX.

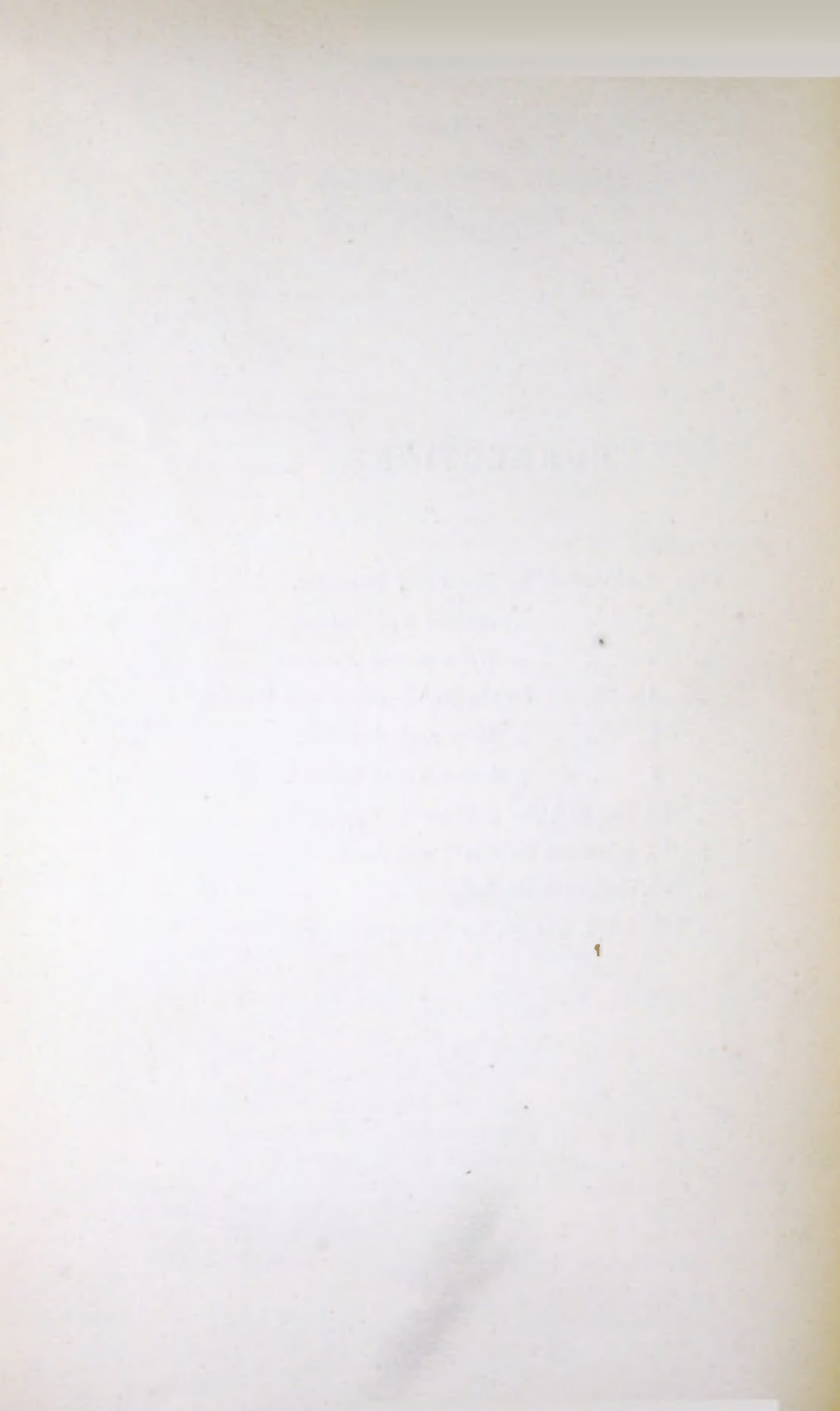
<p><i>adj.</i> = adjective. <i>adv.</i> = adverb. A.S. = Anglo-Saxon. <i>b.</i> = back. col. = column. <i>comp.</i> = comparative form. Comp. = compare. <i>conj.</i> = conjunction. ed. = edited by. E. E. T. S. = Early English Text Society. Fr. = French. <i>fut.</i> = future. <i>gen.</i> = genitive case. Germ. = German. Her. = Heraldry. <i>imp.</i> = imperative. <i>impers. v.</i> = impersonal verb. <i>ind.</i> = indicative. <i>inf.</i> = infinitive. <i>int.</i> = interjection. <i>i. p.</i> = imperfect participle. l. = line. Lat. = Latin. ll. = lines. M.Goth. = Mæso-Gothic. O.E. = Old English.</p>	<p>O.Fr. = Old French. O.N. = Old Norse. p. = page. <i>pl.</i> = plural. 2 <i>pl.</i> = second person plural. pp. = pages. <i>p.p.</i> = past or passive participle. <i>prep.</i> = preposition. <i>pres.</i> = present. <i>pret.</i> = preterite. <i>Prompt. Parv.</i> = Promptorium Parvulorum. <i>pron.</i> = pronoun. Qu. = Query. <i>ref.</i> = reflexive. <i>s.</i> = substantive. 1 <i>s.</i> = first person singular. 2 <i>s.</i> = second person singular. 3 <i>s.</i> = third person singular Sc. = Scotch. <i>sg.</i> = singular. Span. = Spanish. <i>subj.</i> = subjunctive. <i>superl.</i> = superlative form. tom. = tomo. <i>v.</i> = verb. vol. = volume.</p>
---	---

The following works are indicated in the Index by their authors' names :—

- Bosworth's Anglo-Saxon and English Dictionary.
Brockett's Glossary of North Country Words.
Burguy's Glossary to his *Grammaire de la Langue d'Oïl*.
Ducange's *Glossarium Mediæ et Infimæ Latinitatis*, ed. 1840.
Halliwell's Dictionary of Archaic and Provincial Words.
Jamieson's Etymological Dictionary of the Scottish Language.
Roquefort's *Glossaire de la Langue Romane*.
Stratmann's Dictionary of the Old English Language.
Verelius's *Index linguæ veteris Scytho-Scandicæ sive Gothicæ*, 1691.

CORRECTIONS.

-
- Page 2, sidenotes, for *Tours* read *Touraine*.
 „ 2 „ „ *Aniana* read *Aniane*.
 „ 2 „ „ *Naverne* read *Navarre*.
 „ 3 „ for the 2nd *Caerleon* read *Carlisle*.
 „ 7 „ „ *hams* read *shoulders*.
 „ 7 „ „ *bustards* read *bitterns*.
 „ 28, line 913, for *grayuez* read *graynez*.
 „ 33, sidenotes, for *smoke* read *foam*.
 „ 78, strike out the footnote.
 „ 134, col. 1, line 23, for *Apulia* read *Poland*.



Morte Arthure.

Here begynnes **Morte Arthure.** In nomine Patris et [leaf 53]
Filij et Spiritus Sancti. Amen pur charite. Amen.

Now grett glorious Godde, thurgh grace of hym seluene,
And the precyous prayere of hys prys modyr,
Schelde vs ffro schamesdede and synfulle werkes,
And gyffe vs grace to gye, and gouerne vs here, 4
In this wrechde werlde thorowe vertous lywyng,
That we may kayre til hys courte, the kyngdome of hevyne,
Whene oure saules schalle parte and sundyre ffra the body,
Ewyre to belde and to byde in blysse wyth hym seluene; 8
And wysse me to werpe owte some worde at this tyme,
That nothyre voyde be ne vayne, bot wyrchip tille hym
selvyne, and for power to write something profitable.
Plesande and profitabille to the popule that theme heres.
3e that liste has to lyth, or luffes for to here, 12
Off elders of alde tyme and of their awke dedys,
How they were lele in their lawe, and louede God Al-
myghty, Ye that list to hear of elders of old time,
Herkyne me heyndly and holdys 3ow styll,
And I salle telle 3ow a tale, that trewe es and nobyll, 16
Off the ryealle renkys of the Rownde Table,
That chefe ware of cheualrye and cheftans nobyll,
Bathe ware in thire werkes and wyse mene of armes,
Doughty in thire doyns, and dredde ay schame, 20

MORTE ARTHURE. 1

kind, and courteous, and worshipful.

They slew Lucius, lord of Rome, and won his kingdom.

Hear now the story.

When King Arthur had won many kingdoms and countries,

Argyle, Orkney, and the isles,

Ireland and Scotland, Wales, Flanders, and France,

had made tributary Holland and Hainault, Burgundy and Brabant, Brittany, Guienne, Gothland and Greece, he occupied Bayonne and Bordeaux, Tours and Toulouse.

He was prince of Poitiers and [leaf 53, back] Provence, of Valence and Vienne, of Erugia and Aniana, of Navarre and Norway and Normandy.

Of Germany, of Austria, and many other lands.

He conquered all Denmark with his sword. Then he dubbed his knights and gave them lands.

Created kings anointed.

Then rested the hero, and held the Round Table.

After solacing himself in Bri-

Kynde mene and courtays, and couthe of courte thewes ;
How they whanne wyth were wyrchippis many,
Sloughe Lucyus *the* lythyre, that lorde was of Rome,
And conqueryd that kyngryke thorowe craftys of armes ;
Herkenes now hedyrwarde, and herys this storye. 25

Qwene that the kyng Arthur by conqweste hade wonnyne
Castelles and kyngdoms, and contreez many,
And he had couerede the coroune of the kyth ryche, 28
Of alle that Vter in ertlie aughte in his tyme,
Orgayle and Orkenay, and alle this owte-iles,
Irelande vtirly, as Occyane rynnys ;

Scathylle Scottlande by skylle he skyftys as hym lykys,
And Wales of were he wane at hys wille, 33
Bathe fflaundrez and ffrance fre til hym seluyne ;

Holaund and Henawde they helde of hyme bothen,
Burgoyne and Brabane, and Bretayne the lesse, 36
Gyane and Gothelande, and Grece the ryche ;
Bayone and Burdeux he heldytt fulle faire,
Turoyne and Tholus with toures fulle hye ;

Off Peyters and of Prouynce he was prynce holdyne, 40
Of Valence and Vyenne, off value so noble,
Of Eruge and Anyone, thos erledoms ryche ;
By conqweste fulle cruelle they knewe hym fore lorde,
Of Nauerne and Norwaye, and Normaundye eke, 44

Of Almayne, of Estriche, and other ynowe ;
Danmarke he dryssede alle by drede of hym seluyne,
ffra Swynne vnto Swetherwyke, with his swerde¹ kene !
Qwenne hethes dedes had done, he doubbyd hys knyghtez,
Dyuusyde dowcherys and delte in dyuerse remmes ; 49

Mad of his cosyns kyngys ennoyntede,
In kyth there they couaitte crounes to bere.
Whene he thys² rewmes hade redyne and rewlyde the
popule, 52

Then rystede that ryalle and helde *the* Rounde Tabyll ;
Suggeourns that sesone to solace hyme seluene,
In Bretayne *the* braddere, as hym beste lykys ;

¹ MS. swrede.

² Or thes.

- Sythyne wente in-to Wales *with* his wyes alle, 56 tain, he goes into
Wales,
Sweys in-to Swaldye *with* his snelle houndes, to hunt the hart
with his swift
For to hunt at *the* hartes in thas hye lanndes, houndes,
In Glamorgane *with* glee, thare gladchipe was euere. and in Glamorgan
founds Caerleon
And thare a citee he sette, be assentte of his lordys, 60 upon Usk.
That Caerlyone was callid, *with* curius walles,
On the riche reuare *that* rynnys so faire,
There he myghte semble his sorte to see whenne hym
lykyde ;
- Thane aftyre at Carlelele a Cristynmese he haldes, 64 At Caerleon he
holds high festi-
This ilke kyde *conquerour*, and helde hym for lorde, val at Christmas-
tide with his lords
Wyth dukez and dusperes of dyuers rewmes, and bishops,
Erles and archeuesqes, and *other* ynowe,
Byschopes and bachelers, and banerettes nobille, 68
That bowes to his banere, buske whene hym lykys :
Bot on the Cristynmesdaye, whene they were alle ssemblyde,
That comlyche *conquerour* commaundez hym seluyne
That ylke a lorde sulde lenge, and no lefe take, 72 and bids none
depart from the
To the tende day fully ware takyne to *the* ende. feast till ten days
are expired,
Thus one ryalle araye he helde his Rounde Table,
With semblant and solace and selcouthe metes ;
Whas neuer syche¹ noblay, in no manys tyme, 76 Never was so
noble a feast
Mad in mydwynter in *tha* weste marchys ! known.
- B**ot on the newzere daye, at *the* none euyne,
As the bolde at the borde was of brede *seruyde*,
So come in sodanly a *senatour* of Rome, 80
Wyth sextene knyghtes in a soyte, sewande hym one.
He saluzed the souerayne and the sale aftyre,
Ilke a kynge aftyre kynge, and mad his inclines ;
Gaynour in hir degré he grette as hym lykyde, 84
And syne agayne to *the* gome he gaffe vp his nedys :
“ Sir Lucius Iberius, the Emperour of Rome,
Saluz the as sugett, vndyre his sele ryche ;
It es credens, *sir* kynge, *with* cruelle wordez, 88
Trow it for no truffles, his targe es to schewe !
Now in this newzers daye *with* notaries sygne,

¹ *swyche* struck out, and *syche* written instead.

he summons Ar-
thur to appear at
Rome on Lammas
day,

I make the somouns *in sale* to sue for *thi* landys,
That on *Lammesse* daye thare be no lette ffoundene, 92
That thow bee redy at Rome with alle *thi* Rounde Table,
Appere in his *presens* with thy price knyghtez,
At pryme of the daye, in payne of *your* lyvys,
In *the* kydde *Capytoile* before *the* kyng selvyne, 96
Whene he and his *senatours* bez sette as them lykys,

to answer why
he occupys his
lands instead of
paying homage
to him,

To ansuere anely why thow occupyes the lanndez,
That awe homage of alde tille hym *and* his eldyrs ;
Why thow has redyne and raymede, *and* raunsound *the*
pople, 100
And kyllde doune his cosyns, kyngys ennoynttyde ;
Thare schalle thow gyffe rekkynyng for alle thy Round
Table,

and how he dare
rebel against
him.

Why thow arte rebelle to Rome, and rentez theme
wytholdez !

3iff thow theis somouns wythsytte, he sendes *thi* thies
wordes, 104

But if Arthur
will not come,
the Emperor will
invade his land
and take him
captive,

He salle the seke ouer *the* see wyth sextene kynges,
Bryne Bretayne *the* brade, and bryttyne thy knyghtys,
And bryng the bouxsomly as a beste with brethe whare
hym lykys,

That thow ne schalle rowte ne ryste vndyr the heuene
ryche, 108

Thofe thow for reddour of Rome ryne to *the* erthe !
ffor if thow flee in-to Fraunce or ffreselannnd owther,
Thou salle be fechede with force, and ouersette fore euer !

and destroy him
wherever he may
fly.

Thy fadyr mad fewtee, we fynde in oure rollez, 112

The Register of
Rome declares
that Arthur's fa-
ther paid tribute,
which was won
by Julius Caesar
and his gentle
knights.

In the registre of Rome, who so ryghte lukez :
With-owttyne more trouflyng the trebute we aske,
That Iulius Cesar wane wyth his ientille knyghttes !"

Then did King
Arthur look with
ferocious glance
on the Senator.

THe kyng blyschit one the beryne with his brode egfne,
That fulle brymly for breth brynte as the gledys ;
Keste colours as kyng with crouelle lates, 118

[leaf 54, back]

So terrible was
his face that the
Romans quailed
before him.

Luked as a lyone, and on his lyppe bytes !
The Romaynes for radnesse ruschte to *the* erthe,
ffore ferdnesse of hys face, as they fey were ;

Cowhide as kenetez be-fore *the* kynge seluynne,
 Be-cause of his contenance confusede theme semede !
 Thene couerd vp a knyghte, *and* criede ful lowde,¹ 124

“Kynge coroune of kynd, curtays and noble,
 Misdoe no messangere for menske of *thi* seluynne,
 Sen we are in thy mañrede, and *mercy the* besekes ;

Then one of them
 humbly entreats
 mercy.

We lenge *with sir* Lucius, that lorde es of Rome, 128
 That es *the* meruelyousteste mane *that* on molde lengez ;
 It es lefulle tille vs his likynge tille wyrche ;²

We come at his commaundment ; haue vs excusede.”

Then carpys *the* conquerour crewelle wordez,— 132

“Haa ! cranaunde knyghte ! a cowarde *the* semez !
Thare [is] some segge in this sale, and he ware sare
 greuede,

Upon which Ar-
 thur upbraids
 him as a coward.

Thow durste noghte for³ alle Lumberdye luke one hym
 ones.”

“Sir,” sais *the* senatour, “so Crist mott me helpe, 136
The voute of *thi* vesage has woundyde vs alle !

But the Senator
 excuses him on
 the ground that
 Arthur's visage is
 very terrible.

Thow arte *the* lordlyeste lede *that* euer I one lukyde ;
 By lukyngge, *with*-owtityne lesse, a lyone the semys !”

“Thow has me somonde,” *quod the* kynge, “*and* said
 what *the* lykes ;⁴ 140

ffore sake of thy soueraynge I suffre *the the* more ;

Sen I corouñde in kyth wyth crysume enoyntede,

Was neuer creature to me *that* carpede so large !

Bot I salle tak concelle at kynges enoyntede, 144

Off dukes *and* duspers and doctours noble,

Offe peres of *the* parlement, prelates *and* other,

Off *the* richeste renkys of *the* Rounde Table ;

The King tells
 him that he will
 take counsel of
 his dukes, doc-
 tors, peers, and
 knights,

Thus schalle I take avisemente of valiant^t beryns, 148

Wyrke aftyre the wytte of my wyes knyghttes :

To warpe wordez in waste no wyrchipe it were,

Ne wilfully in *this* wrethe to wrekenne my seluene. 151

ffor-*thi* salle thow lenge here, *and* lugge wyth *thise* lordes,

while the Ro-
 mans stay a week

¹ *hughe* struck out, and *lowde* written instead.

² *scheue* struck out, and *wyrche* written instead.

³ MS. fulle.

⁴ *Likyde* struck out, and *lykes* written instead.

to refresh themselves. This seuenyghte in solace, to suggourne *your* horses,
To see whatte lyfe *that* wee leede in thees lawe lanndes." ffor by *the* realtee of Rome, *that* recheste was euere,

Sir Cayous is bid to entertain the lords, He commande *sir* Cayous, "take kepe to thoos lordez, 156
To styghtylle *tha* steryne mene as theirre statte askys,
That they bee herberde in haste in thoos heghe chambres,
Sythine sittandly in sale *seruyde* ther-aftyr ;

[leaf 55] and their horses. That they fynd na fawte of fude to thiere horsez, 160
Nowthire weyne, ne waxe, ne welthe in *this* erthe ;
Spare for no spycerye, bot spende what *the* lykys,
That there be largesce one lofte, and no lake foundene ;
If *thou* my wyrchipe wayte, wy, be my trouthe, 164
Thou salle haue gersoms fulle grett, *that* gayne salle *the* euere !"

Then were they quickly harboured within the high walls. In chambers with chimneys they changed their weeds. Now er they herberde in hey, *and* in oste holdene,
Nastyly wyth hende mene *with-in* thees heghe wallez ;
In chambyrs *with* chympnes *they* chaungen *theire* wedez,
And sythyne the chauncelere *theme* fecchede *with* che-
ualrye¹ noble. 169

The Senator sat at the King's table, and was served like himself. Sone *the* senatour was sett, as hyme wele semyde,
At *the* kynges owne borde ; twa knyghtes hym *seruede*,
Singulere sothely, as Arthure hym seluene, 172
Richely on *the* ryghte hannde at the Rounde Table ;
Be resoune *that* *the* Romaynes whare so ryche holdene,
As of *the* realeste blode *that* reynede in erthe. 175
There come in at *the* fyrste course, be-for *the* kynges seluene,
Bareheuedys *that* ware bryghte, burnyste *with* syluer,
Alle *with* taghte mene and towne in togers fulle ryche,
Of saunke realle in suyte, sixty at ones ;

for the Romans are of the most royal blood on earth. Boars'-heads there were served upon silver by numerous gaily-dressed attendants. fflesch fluriste of fermysone *with* frumentee noble, 180
Ther-to wylde to wale, and wynlyche bryddes,²

peacocks and plovers upon golden plates, Pacokes and plouers in platers of golde,
Pygges of porke despyne, *that* pastureded neuer ;
Sythene herons in hedoyne, hyled fulle faire ; 184
Grett swannes fulle swytthe in silueryne chargeours,

great swans in silver chargers,

¹ MS. *cheualrye*.² *brides* struck out, and *bryddes* written instead.

- Tartes of *Turky*, taste whame *theme* lykys ; tarts of turkey,
- Gumbaldes graythely, fulle gracious to taste ;
- Seyne bowes of wylde bores *with the braune lechyde*, hams and brawn
in slices,
- Bernakes and botures in baterde dysches, 189 geese and
bustards.
- Thareby* braunchers in brede, bettyr was neuer,
- With* brestez of barowes, *that* bryghte ware to schewe ;
- Seyne come *ther* sewes sere, *with* solace *ther*-after, 192 Then came
'sewes sere,'
- Ownde of azure alle ouer *and* ardant *them* semyde,
- Of ilke a leche *the* lowe launschide fulle hye,
- That* alle ledes myghte lyke *that* lukyde *theme* apone ;
- Thane* cranes *and* curlues craftyly rosted, 196 then cranes and
curlues craftly
rosted,
- Connygez in cretoyne colourede fulle faire,
- ffesauntez enflureschit in flammande siluer, pheasants upon
flashing silver,
- With* darielles endordide, and daynteez ynewe ; 'daries' and
many other
dainties.
- Thane* clarett and Creette, clergyally rennene, 200 Wine caused to
[leaf 55, back]
run skilfully in
silver conduits.
- With* condethes fulle curious alle of clene siluyre ;
- Osay a[n]d algarde, and *other* ynewe,
- Rynisch wyne and Rochelle, richere was neuer ;
- Vernage of Venyce vertuose and Crete ; 204 Rare sorts served
in cups of fine
gold.
- In faucetez of fyne golde, fonode who so lykys ;
- The kynggez cope-borde was closed in siluer, The King's cup-
board was glori-
ous with plate.
- In grete goblettez ouergylte glorious of hewe ;
- There was a cheeffe buttlere, a cheualere noble, 208
- Sir Cayous *the* curtaise, *that* of *the* cowpe seruede ; The chief butler
was Sir Cayous,
- Sexty cowpes of suyte fore *the* kyng seluyne,
- Crafty *and* curious, coruene fulle faire, who served the
wine in goblets
decked with pre-
cious stones,
- In euer-ilk a party pyghte *with* precyous stones, 212 which hinder the
deadly effects of
poison.
- That* nane enpoysons sulde goo preuely *ther*-vndyre,
- Bot *the* bryght golde for brethe sulde briste al to peces,
- Or ells *the* venyme sulde voyde thurghe vertue of *the*
stones ;
- And the conquerour hymseluene, so clenly arayed, 216
- In colours of clene golde cleede, wyth his knyghttys,
- Drissid *with* his dyademe one his deesse ryche,
- fore he was demyde *the* doughtyeste *that* duellyde in erthe.
- Thane* *the* conquerour kyndly carpede to *those* lordes,
- Rehetede *the* Romaynes *with* realle sneche, 221 Then he spake
courteous words
to those lords.

"Sirs, be of good cheer, we give you the best our barren country affords, which indeed is but poor."

"Sirs, bez knyghtly of contenance, *and* comfurthes
your seluyne,

We knowe noghte in *this* countré of curious metez ;
In thees barayne landez, bredes none *other*, 224
ffore-thy wythowttyne feynynge, enforce 3ow *the*¹ more
To feede 3ow *with* syche feble as 3e be-fore fynde."

"Sir," says the Senator, "Rome itself can show nothing equal to this luxurious feast."

"Sir," sais *the* *senatour*, "so Criste motte me helpe !
There ryngnede neuer syche realtee *with-in* Rome walles !
There ne es prelatte, ne pape, ne prynce in *this* erthe,
That he ne² myghte be wele payede of *thees* pryce metes !"

Then they washed and withdrew to the chamber.

A ftyre theyre welthe *they* wesche, *and* went vn-to
chambyre,

Sir Gawain leads Guinevere.

This ilke kydde conquerour *with* knyghtes ynewe ; 232

Spiced drinks were served to all.

Sir Gaywayne *the* worthy Dame Waynour he ledys ;
Sir Owghtretñ on *the* tother syde, of Turry was lorde.
Thane spyces vn-sparly *thay* spendyde there-aftyre,
Maluesye *and* muskadelle, *thase* meruelyous drynkes,
Raykede fulle rathely in rossete cowpes, 237

Certain lords were assigned to attend upon the Senator.

Tille alle *the* riche on rawe, Romaynes *and* *other*.

Bot the soueraingne sothely, for solauce of hym seluene,

Assingnyde to *the* *senatour* certaygne lordes,

To lede to his leueré, whene he leue askes, 241

With myrthe *and* *with* melodye of mynstralsy noble.

Arthur goes to council in the Giant's tower,

Thane *the* conquerour to concelle cayres there-aftyre,

Wyth lordes of his lygeaunce *that* to hym selfe langys ;

with his lords, justices, judges, and gentle knights.

To *the* geauntes toure iolily he wendes, 245

Wyth justicez *and* iüggez, and gentille knyghtes.

[leaf 56]

First speaks Sir Cador of Cornwall.

Sir Cador of Cornewayle to *the* kyng carppes,

Lughe one hyme luffly *with* lykande lates,— 248

"I thanke Gode of *that* thraa *that* vs *thus* thretys !

3ow moste be traylede, I trowe, bot 3ife 3e trett bettyre :

The letters of Sir Lucius, he says, lighten his heart.

The *lettres* of sir Lucius lyghttys myne herte !

We hafe as losels liffyde many longe daye, 252

Wyth delyttes in *this* lande *with* lordchipez many,

They had too long lived a life of inglorious peace.

And forelytenede the loos *that* we are layttede :

I was abaischite, be oure Lorde, of oure beste bernes,

¹ MS. *the* 3ow.

² MS. ne ha.

- ffore gret dule of deffuse of dedez of armes ! 256
- Now wakkenyse *the* were ! wyrchipide be Cryste ! He rejoices to return again to deeds of arms.
- And we salle wynne it ag[a]yne be wyghtnesse *and* strenghe !”
- “Sir Cadour,” *quod the kyng*, “thy concelle es noble, The king praises Sir Cadour for his bold words,
- Bot *thou arte a meruailous mane with thi mery wordez!*
- ffor thow countez no caas, ne castes no forthire, 261 spoken from his heart without thought or care.
- Bot hurles furthe appone heuede, as thi herte thynkes ;
- I moste trette of a trew towchande *thise nedes,*
- Talke of thies tythdands *that tenes myne herte ;* 264 He himself is grieved at these tidings.
- Thou sees that the emperour es angerde a lyttille ;*
- Yt semes be his sandismene *that he es sore greuede ;*
- His senatour has sommonde¹ me, and said what hym lykyde,
- Hethely in my halle, wyth heynous wordes, 268 He has been insulted in his own hall by heinous words,
- In speche disspyzede me, *and sparede me lyttille ;*
- I myght noghte speke for spytte, so my herte trymblyde ! and insolently summoned to pay tribute to the Emperor of Rome,
- He askyde me tyrauntly tribute of Rome,
- That tenefully tynt was in tyme of myne elders ; 272
- There alyenes, in absence of alle mene of armes,
- Couerde it of commons, as cronicles telles ;
- I haue title to take tribute of Rome,
- Myne ancestres ware emperours, *and aughte it theme* of whom he ought rather to demand tribute.
- seluene, 276
- Belyne *and* Bremyne, *and* Bawdewyne the thyrde,
- They occupyede *the empyre aughte score wynttyrs,*
- Ilkane ayere aftyre *other*, as awlde mene telles ; His ancestors occupied the Empire of Rome eight score winters.
- Thei couerde *the Capitoile*, and keste doune *the walles ;*
- Hyngede of *theire heddys-mene* by huñdretes at ones ;
- Seyne Constantyne, our kynsmane, conquerid it aftyre, His kinsman, Constantine, afterwards subdued it—
- That ayere was of Ynglande, and emperour of Rome,* 284 he who gained by conquest the true Cross.
- He *that* conquerid *the crosse* be craftez of armes,
- That Criste was on crucifiede, *that kyng es of heuene ;*
- Thus hafe we euydens to aske *the emperour the same,*
- That *thus* regnez at Rome, whate ryghte *that he claymes.”*

¹ Or somounde.

Then answered King Aungers and said that Arthur ought to be supreme over all kings.

[leaf 56, back]

The Romans had done many evil deeds in Scotland,

for which he would have revenge.

He promises to bring 50,000 men to aid Arthur.

The king of little Britain would have Arthur return a fierce answer,

He fears the Romans no whit.

He promises to bring 30,000 knights within a month.

Then answered kyng Aungers to Arthure hym seluynе,
 “Thow aughte to be ouerlynge ouer alle other
 kynges, 289

ffore wyseste, and worthyeste, and wyghteste of hanndes,
 The knyghtlyeste of counsaile *that euer corone bare* ;
 I dare saye fore Scottlande, *that we theme schathe*
 lympyde, 292

Whene *the* Romaynes regned, *thay* raunsounde oure
 eldyrs,

And rade in theirе ryotte, and rauyschett oure wyfes,
 With-owttyne resone or ryghte refte vs oure gudes ;
 And I salle make myne avowe deuotly to Criste, 296

And to *the* haly vernacle, vertuus and noble,
 Of this grett velany I salle be vengede ones
 On zone venemus mene, wyth valiant knyghtes !
 I salle the forthire of defence fosterde ynewe, 300

ffifty thowsande mene, wyth-in two eldes,
 Of my wage for to wende, whare so the lykes,
 To fyghte wyth thy ffaa mene, *that vs unfaire ledes.*”

Thane the burelyche beryne of Bretayne *the* lyttlyle
 Counsayles *sir* Arthure, and of hyme besekys 305

To ansuere *the* alyenes wyth austerene wordes,
 To entyce the emperour to take ouere the mounttes.

He said, “ I make myne avowe verreilly to Cryste, 308
 And to *the* haly vernacle, *that* voide schalle I nenere,

ffor radnesse of na Romayne *that* regnes in ertne ;
 Bot ay be redye in araye, and at areste ffoundene,
 No more dowtte the dynte of theirе derfe wapyns, 312
 Than *the* dewe *that* es dannke, whene *that* it doune ffalles ;
 Ne no more schoune¹ fore *the* swape of theirе scharpe
 suerddes,

Then fore *the* faireste flour *thatt* on the folde growes !
 I salle to batelle the brynge, of brenyede knyghtes 316

Thyrtty thosannde be tale, thyrftye in armes,
 Wyth-in a monethe daye in-to whatte marche,
That thow wylle sothelye assygne, whene thy selfe lykes.”

¹ Or *schonne*.

"A! A!" sais *the Walsche kyng*, "wirchipid be Criste! Then Arthur exclaims Ah! ah!
 Now schalle we wreke fulle wele *the wrethe of oure* Now shall we have revenge.
 elders! 321

In West Walys i-wysse syche wonndyrs *that* wroghte,
 That alle for wandrethe may wepe, *that one that* were
 thynkes.

I salle haue the avanttwarde wytterly my seluene, 324

Tylle *that* I haue venquiste *the* Vicounte of Rome,
 That wroghte me at Viterbe a velanye ones,

He himself would fight at the head of his army till he had revenged himself on the Viscount of Rome for a villany he once wrought him at Viterbo.

As I paste in pylgremage by the Pounte Tremble; 327

He was in Tuskayne *that* tyme, and tuke of oure knyghttes,
 Areste theme vnryghttwyslye, and raunsounde *thame*
 aftyre;

I salle hym surelyensure, *that* saghetylle salle we neuer,
 Are we sadlye assemble by oure selfene ones,

And dele dynttys of dethe *with* oure derfe wapyns! 332

And I salle wagge to *that* were of wyrchipulle knyghtes,
 Of Wyghte and of Walschelande, and of *the* Weste
 Marches,

He would take two thousand worshipful knights.

Twa thosande in tale, horsede one stedys,

[leaf 57]

Of *the* wyghteste wyes in alle zone weste landys!" 336

Syre Ewane fytz Vryence¹ *thane* egerly fraynez,

Was cosyne to *the* conquerour, corageous hymselfene,

Then spoke Sir Ewayne and said that they would all follow his command gladly.

"Sir, and we wyste *your* wyll, we walde wirke *ther-*
 aftyre; 339

3if *this* journee sulde halde, or be ajournede forthyre,

To ryde one zone Romaynes *and* ryott theire landez,

We walde schape vs there-fore to schippe whene *3ow*
 lykys."

"Cosyne," *quod* *the* conquerour, "kyndly *thou* asches; Then said Arthur,
 3ife my concelle accorde to conquere *3one* landez, 344

By *the* kalendez of Iuny we schalle encountre ones,

"We will be ready by the kalends of June,

Wyth fulle creuelle knyghtez, so Cryste mot me helpe!

There-to make I myne avowe devottly to Cryste,

And to *the* holy vernacle, vertuous and noble, 348

I salle at Lammesse take leue, to lenge at my large

and at Lammass will enjoy our-

¹ Read Vryence.

- selves in Lorraine
or Lombardy,
- In Lorayne or Lumberdye, whethire me leue thynkys ;
Merke vn-to Meloyne, and myne doune *the wallez*,
Bathe of Petyrsande, *and* of Pys, and of *the Pounte*
Tremble, 352
- sojourn six
weeks in the
Vale of Viterbo.
- In *the* Vale of Viterbe vetaile my knyghttes,
Suggourne there sex wokes *and* solace my selfene ;
Send prekers to *the* price toune, and plaunte there my
segge,
Bot if *thay* profre me *the* pece be processe of tyme." 356
- send riders to
Rome and lay
there a siege,
unless they offer
peace."
- Then Sir Ewayne
vows vengeance
against the Em-
peror of Rome
for occupying Ar-
thur's heritage,
- " Certys," sais *sir* Ewayne, " and I avowe aftyre,
And I *that* hathelle may see euer with myne eghn,
That occupies thine heritage, *the* empyere of Rome,
I salle auntyre me anes hys egle to touche, 360
That borne es in his banere of brighte golde ryche,
And raas it frome his riche mene, and ryfe it in sondyre,
Bot he be redily reschowede with riotous knyghtez ;
I salle enforsse zowe in *the* felde with fresche mene of
armes, 364
- and promises
50,000 men on
fair steeds.
- ffyfty thosande folke apone faire stedys,
On thi ffoo mene to foonde, there the faire thynkes,
In ffrance or in ffriselande, feghte whene *the* lykes !"
- Then Lancelot
declares his satis-
faction at the
war.
- " By oure Lorde," quod *sir* Launcelott, " now lyghttys
myne herte ! 368
I loue Gode of *this* loue¹ *this* lordes has avowede !
Nowemay lesse mene haue leue to say whatt theme lykes,
And hafe no lettyng be lawe, bot lystynnys *thise* wordez ;
I salle be at journee with gentille knyghtes, 372
On a jamby stede fulle jolyly graythide,
Or any journee be-gane to juste with hym selfene,
Emange alle his geauntez genyuers and *other*,
Stryke hym styfflye fro his stede, with strenghe of myne
handys, 376
ffor alle *tha* steryne in stour, *that* in his stale houys !
Be my retenu arayede, I rekke bott a lyttille
To make rowtte in-to Rome, with ryotous knyghtes !
With-in a seuenyghte daye, with sex score helmes, 380
- He is ready to
joust with the
Emperor him-
self,
- [leaf 57, back]
and to carry the
war into Rome.

¹ Or perhaps, lone.

I salle be scene on the see, saile whene *the* lykcs."

Thane laughes *sir* Lottez, and alle one lowde meles,
 "Me likez *that sir* Lucius langes aftyre sorowe ;
 Now he wylnez *the* were, hys wanedrethe begynnys, 384
 It es owre weredes to wreke the wrethe of oure elders !
 I make myne a-vowe to Gode, and to *the* holy vernacle,
 And I may se *the* Romaynes, *that* are so ryche haldene,
 Arayede in *theire* riotcs on a rounde felde, 388

Sir Lottez laughs
for joy,

and hopes to see
the rich Romans
in their pomp,

I salle at *the* reuerence of *the* Rounde Table
 Ryde throughte alle *the* rowtte, rereuarde *and other*,
 Redy wayes to make, and renkkes fulle rowme,
 Rynnande on rede blode, as my stede ruschez ! 392
 He *that* folowes my fare, and fyrste commes aftyre,
 Salle fynde in my fare-waye manye ffay leuyde !"

that he may cut
his way through
them and shed
their blood.

Thane *the* conquerour kyndly comforthes *these* knyghtes,
 Alowes *thaim* gretly *theire* lordly a-vowes,— 396

Then Arthur
praises his
knights for up-
holding his
honour.

"Alweldande Gode wyrchipe 3ow alle !
 And latte me neuere wantte 3ow, whylls I in werlde
 regne ;

My menske and my manhede 3e mayntene in erthe,
 Myne honour alle vtterly in *other* kyngys landes ; 400
 My wele and my wyrchipe, of alle *this* werlde ryche,
 3e haue knyghtly conqueryde, *that* to my coroune langes ;
 Hym thare be ferde for no faees, *that* swylke a folke ledes,
 Bot euer ffresche for to fyghte, in felde whene hym lykcs.

I acounte no kynge *that* vndyr Criste lyffes, 405
 Whilles I see 3owe alle sounde, I sette be no more."

While they re-
main true to him
he fears no king
on earth.

Qwhene they tristily had tretim, *thay* trumppede vp
 aftyre,

Then the Council
breaks up.

Descendyd doune *with* a daunce of dukes and erles ; 408
 Thane *they* semblede to sale, and sowpped als swythe,
 Alle *this* semly scerte, wyth semblante fulle noble.

Music and
dancing succeed,

Thene the roy realle rehetes *thes* knyghttys,
 Wyth reuerence and ryotte of alle his Rounde Table, 412

and they are all
feasted in the
ball.

Tille seuen dayes was gone : *the* senatour askes
 Answer to *the* emperour *with* austeryne wordez.

After seven days
the Senator de-
mands his answer
for the Emperor.

Aftyre *the* Epiphanye, whene *the* purpos was takyne

Of peris of *the parlement*, prelates and *other*. 416
 The kyng in his concelle, curtaise and noble,
 Vtters *the alienes*, and ansuers *hyme seluene* :—
 “ Gret wele Lucius, thi lorde, and layne noghte *thise*
 wordes ;
 Ife *thow* be lygmane¹ lele, late *hyme wiet sone* 420
 I salle at Lammese take leue, and loge at my large
 In delitte in his lanndez, wyth lordes ynewe,
 Regne in my realtee, and ryste whene me lykes,
 By *the reyuere* of Reone halde my Rounde Table, 424
 ffrange the fermes in faithe² of alle *tha faire* rewmes,
 ffor alle *the manace* of hys myghte, and mawgree his
 eghne !
 And merke sythene ouer the mounttez in-to his mayne
 londez, 427
 To Meloyne the meruaylous, and myne doun the walles ;
 In Lorryayne ne in Lumberdye lefe schalle I nowthire
 Nokyne lede appone liffe, *that thare* his lawes zemes ;
 And *turne* in-to Tuschayne, whene me tyme thynkys,
 Ryde alle *thas rowme* landes wyth ryotous knyghttes ;
 Byde hy[m] make reschewes fore menske of *hyme seluene*,
 And mette me fore his manhede in *thase* mayne landes !
 I salle be foundyne in Fraunce, fraiste whene hym lykes,
 The fyrste daye of Feuerzere, in *thas faire* marches ! 436
 Are I be fechyde wyth force, or forfette my landes,
The flour of his faire folke fulle fay salle be leuyde !
 I salle hym sekyrly ensure, vndyre my seele ryche,
 To seege *the cetee* of Rome wyth-in seuene wyntyre, 440
 And that so sekerly ensege apone sere halves,
 That many a *senatour* salle syghe for sake of me one !
 My *sommons* er certifiende and *thow arte* fulle *seruyde*
 Of cuñdit and credense, kayre where the lykes : 444
 I salle thi *journeye* engyste, enjoyne theme my seluene,
 ffrō this place to *the porte*, there *thou salle* passe ouer ;
 Seuene dayes to Sandewyche, I sette at the large,
 Sixty myle on a daye, *the somme* es bott lyttille ! 448

Then Arthur bids him greet Lucius and tell him that he shall quickly see him in his country ;

that he will hold his Round Table by the river Rhone,

[leaf 58]

and mine down the walls of Milan,

ravage Tuscany with his knights,

he will be found in France on the first of February,

and before seven winters are gone besiege Rome,

and many a senator shall rue his wrath.

The messenger may depart as soon as he pleases.

He must travel to Sandwich in seven days,

¹ Or leygmane.

² Or fatthe.

- Thowe moste spede at the spurs, and spare noghte thi sole,
 Thow weynde by Watlyng-strette, and by no waye elles : going by Wat-
ling-street,
 Thare thow nyghttes one nyghte, nedez moste *thou* lenge, stopping at night
wherever he may
chance to be,
 Be it foreste or felde, found *thou* no forthire ; 452 tying his horse
to a bush by the
bridle.
 Bynde thy blonke by a buske *with* thy brydille euene,
 Lugge *thi* selfe vndyre lynde, as *the* leefe thynkes,
 There awes none alyenes to ayere appone nyghttys,
With syche a rebawdous rowtte to ryot thy seluene. 456
 Thy lycence es lemete in presence of lordys,
 Be now lathe or lette, ryghte as *the* thynkes,
 For bothe *thi* lyffe and thi lyme lygges *ther*-appone,
Those *sir* Lucius had laide *the* lordechipe of Rome ; 460
 ffor be *thow* foundene a fute *with*-owte *the* flode merkes,
 Aftyr *the* aughtende day, whene vndroune es rungene,
Thou salle be heuedede in hye, *and* *with* horsse drawene,
 And seyne heyly be hangede, houndes to gnawene ! 464 If after undern
of the eighth day
he is found in the
country, he shall
be hanged up for
dogs to gnaw.
 The rente ne rede golde, *that* vn-to Rome langes,
 Salle noghte redily, renke, raunsone thyne one !"
 "Sir," sais *the* senatour, "so Crist mot me helpe !
 Might I *with* wirchipe wyne awaye ones, 468
 I sulde neuer fore emperour, *that* on erthe lenges,
 Effte vnto Arthure ayere one syche nedys ;
 Bot I am sengilly here, *with* sex sum of knyghtes ;
 I be-seke *zow*, *sir*, that we may sounde passe : 472 He prays that his
retinue may be
protected on their
way.
 If any vnlawefulle lede lette vs by *the* waye,
With-in thy lycence, lorde, thy loosse es enpeyrede."
 "Care noghte," quod the kynge, "thy coundyte es [leaf 58, back]
 knawene
 ffro Carlelele to *the* coste, there thy cogge lengges ; 476 Then Arthur tells
him that if his
coffers were
crammed full of
silver he would
be safe with his
passport.
Thoghe thy cofers ware fulle, cramede *with* syluer,
 Thow myghte be sekyre of my sele sixty myle forthire."
 They enclined to *the* kynge, and counge *thay* askede,
 Cayers owtt of Carelele, catchez one theirre horsez ; 480
 Sir Cadore *the* curtayes kende theme the wayes,
 To Catrike *theme* curvayede, *and* to Crist *theme*
 bekennyde.
 So *they* spede at *the* spoures, *they* sprangene *theirre* horses, Then the Romans
depart with all
speed,

- and never rest till they reach Sandwich by the time prescribed.
- Hyres *theme hakenayes* hastily *there-aftyre* ; 484
 So fore reddour *they redene*, and risted *theme neuer*,
 Bot 3if they luggede vndire lynd, whills *theme lyghte*
 failede ;
 Bot euere *the senatour* for-sothe soghte at *the* gayneste.
 By *the* seuende day was gone *the cotee thai* rechide ; 488
 Of alle *the* glee vndire Gode so glade ware *they neuere*,
 As of *the* sounde of *the* see and Sandwyche belles !
 Wythowttyne more stownntyng *they* schippide *theire*
 horsez,
- Never were they so glad of any thing as of the sound of the sea and Sandwich bells.
- They cross the sea to Flanders,
- Wery to *the* wane see *they* went alle att ones ; 492
 With *the* mene of *the* walle *they* weyde vp *theire* ankys,
 And fleede at *the* fore flude, in Flaundrez *they* rowede,
 And thorughe Flaundres *they* founde, as *theme faire*
 thoghte,¹
- and over Mount St Gothard into Lombardy,
- through Tuscany to Rome.
- Tille Akyne in Almayne, in Arthur landes ; 496
 Gosse by *the* Mount Goddarde fulle greuous wayes,
 And so in-to Lumberddyde, lykande to schewe ;
 They turne thurghe Tuskayne, with towres fulle heghe,
 In pris appairelles *theme* in precious wedez ; 500
 The Sonodaye in suters *thay* suggourne *theire* horsez,
 And seked *the* Seyntez of Rome, be assente of knyghtes ;
 Sythyne prekes to *the* pales with portes so ryche,
 Thare sir Lucius lenges with lordes enowe ; 504
 Lowttes to hym luffy, and lettres hym bedes
 Of credence enclosyde, with knyghtlyche wordez.
- Then the Senator seeks an audience with the Emperor Lucius,
- who asks eagerly for Arthur's answer, and on what ground he resists the power of Rome.
- Thene *the* emperour was egree, and enkerly fraynes,
 The answeere of Arthure he askes hyme sone, 508
 How he arayes *the* rewme, and rewlys *the* pople ;
 3if he be rebelle to Rome, whate ryghte *that* he claymes :
 "Thow sulde his ceptre haue sesede, and syttyne aboune,
 ffore reuerence and realtee of Rome *the* noble : 512
 By sertes *thow* was my sandes, and senatour of Rome,
 He sulde fore solempnitee hafe seruede *the* hym seluene."
- His ambassador ought to have seized his sceptre and sat above him. Arthur, he says, ought himself to have served the Senator.

¹ *lykyde* struck out, and *thoghte* written instead by the same hand.

"That wille he neuer for no waye¹ of alle this werlde
ryche, 515

Bot who may wynne hym of werre, by wyghtnesse of
handes ;

Many fey schalle be fyrste appone *the felde leuyde*,
Are he appere in this place, profre whene *the likes*.

I saye the, *sir*, *Arthure* es thyne enmye fore euer, 519
And ettelles to bee ouerlynge of *the empyre of Rome*,
That alle his ancestres aughte, bot *Vtere* hym selfe.

Thy nedes this newe zere, I notifiede my selfene,
Be-fore *that noble of name and neynesome of kynges* ;²

In the moste reale place of *the Rounde Table*, 524

I somounde hyme solempnylye, one-seeande his knyghtez ;
Sene I was formyde in faythe so ferde was I neuere,

In alle *the placez* ther I passede of pryncez in erthe !

I wolde fore-sake alle my suyte of segnoury of Rome,
Or I este to *that soueraygne whare sente one suyche nedes* !
He may be chosyne cheftayne, cheefe of alle *other*, 530

Bathe be chauncez of armes and cheuallrye noble,
ffor whye seste, *and worthyeste*, and wyghteste of hanndez :

Of alle the wyes *thate* I watte in this werlde ryche,
The knyghtlyeste creatoure in Cristyndome haldene,
Of kyngz or of conquerour, crowne in erthe,

Of countenance, of corage, of crewelle lates, 536

The comlyeste of knyghtehode *that vndyre Cryste lyffes* !

He maye be spokene in dyspens, despysere of syluere,
That no more of golde gyffes *thane* of grette stones,

No more of wynethane of watyre, *that of the welle rynnys*,
Ne of welthe of *this werlde* bot wyrchipe allone. 541

Syche contaunce was neuer knowene in no kythe ryche,
As was *with that conquerour* in his courte haldene ;

I countede at this Crystynmesse, of kyngz encynttete,
Hole tene at his table, *that tyme with hyme selfene* ;

He wylle werraye i-wysse, be ware zif *the lykes*, 546

Wage many wyghtemene, and wache thy marches,

Then answers the
Senator, that Ar-
thur is too great
to do that for
any one.

He claims no less
than the Empire
of Rome.

[leaf 59]

He tells the Em-
peror how he
had delivered his
message,
and that he was
never so fright-
ened since he was
born.

Arthur is worthy
to be king of men
for his wisdom
and valour.

He is the most
famous knight in
Christendom.

To him gold and
silver are as no-
thing,

and wine no more
than water.

Ten kings anoint-
ed feast at his
table.

¹ ? wye.

² Substituted for *knyghtez*.

Good need is
there of zealous
preparation,

and that soldiers
should be dis-
patched to the
mountains forth-
with.

"By Easter,"
says the Emperor,
"I undertake to
be in Germany
with an army,

and will send
many giants and
mighty men to
meet him in the
mountains.

A watch-tower
shall be reared on
Mount St. Goth-
ard, with a beacon
ready to light,

and another on
Mount St.
[near 59, back]
Bernard.

He shall not be
suffered to enter
Paria."

Then Lucius
sends letters into
the East,

to demand aid of
all the kings and
lords.
Quickly they all
come, for fear of
his might.

That they be redye in araye, and at areste foundyne ;
ffor zife he reche vn-to Rome, he raunsouns it for euere !
Irede *thow* dresce the *ther*-fore, and drawe no lyttel angere,
Be sekyre of *thi* sowdeours, and sende to *the* mowntes ;
Be *the* quartere of *this* zere, and hym *quarte* stannde,
He wylle wyghtlye in a qwhyle one his wayes hye." 553
"Bee Estyre," sais *the* emperour, "I ettylle my selfene,
To hostaye in Almayne with armede knyghtez ;
Sende freklye in-to Fraunce, *that* flour es of rewmes,
ffande to fette *that* freke, and forfette his landez ; 557
ffor I salle sette kepers, fulle couaunde and noble,
Many geaunte of geene, justers fulle gude,
To mete hym in the mowntes, and martyre hys knyghtes,
Stryke *theme* doune in strates, and struye *theme* fore euere,
There salle appone Godarde a garette be rerede, 562
That schalle be garneschte and kepyde with gude mene
of armes,
And a bekyne abouenn to brynne whene *theme* lykys,
That nane enmye with hoste salle entre the mowntes ;
There schalle one Mownte Bernarde be beyldede anothero,
Buschede with banerettes and bachelers noble : 567
In at the portes of Pavye schalle no pryuce passe,
Thurgh the perelous places, for my pris knyghtes."
Thane *sir* Lucius lordlyche *lettres* he sendys
T Onone in-to *the* Oryente, with austeryne knyghtez,
Tille Ambyganye and Orcage, and Alysauudyre eke, 572
To Inde and to Ermonyne, as Ewfrates rynnys,
To Asye, and to Affrike, and Ewrope *the* large,
To Irritayne, and Elamet, and alle *thase* owte ilez ;
To Arraby and Egipt, tiller erles and *other*, 576
That any erthe occupyes in *thase* este marches
Of Damaske and Damyat, and dukes and erles ;
ffor drede of his daungere they dresside *theme* sone ;
Of Crete and of Capados the honourable kyngys 580
Come at his commandmente, clenly at ones ;
To Tartary and Turkey, whene tythynggez es comene,
They turne in by Thebay, terauntez fulle hugge,

- The flour of the faire folke, of Amazonnes landes ; 584
 Alle thate ffaillez on the felde be forfeite fore euere !
 Of Babyloyne and Baldake the burlyche knyghtes,
 Bayous with theire baronage bydez no langere ;
 Of Perce, and of Pamphile, and Preter Iohne landes, 588
 Iche prynce with his powere appertlyche graythede ;
 The Sowdane of Surrye assemblez his knyghtes,
 ffra Nylus to Nazareth, nommers fulle huge ;
 To Garyere and to Galelé they gedyre alle at ones ; 592
 The Sowdanes that ware sekyre sowdeours to Rome,
 They gadyrede ouere the Grekkes See with greuous wapyns,
 In theire grete galays, wyth gleterande scheldez ;
 The kynge of Cyprys one the see the Sowdane habydes,
 With alle the realles of Roodes, arayede with hymne one ;
 They sailede with a syde wynde oure the salte strandez :
 Sodaynly the Sarezenes, as theme selfe lykede,
 Craftly at Cornett the kynges are aryefede, 600
 ffra the ceté of Rome sexti myle large.
 Be that the Grekes ware graythede, a fulle gret nombyre,
 The myghtyeste of Macedone, with mene of the marches,
 Pulle and Pruysslande presses with other, 604
 The lege-mene of Lettow with legyons ynewe :
 Thus they semble in sortes, summes fulle huge,
 Sowdanes and Sarezenes owt of sere landes,
 The Sowdane of Surry and sextene kynges, 608
 At the cetee of Rome assemblede at ones.
 Thane yschewes the emperour armede at ryghtys,
 Arayede with his Romaynes appone ryche stedys ;
 Sixty geauntes be-fore, engenderide with fendez, 612
 With weches and warlaws to wacchene his tentys,
 Ay-ware whare he wendes, wyntrez and zeres.
 Myghte no blonkes theme bere, thos bustous churles,
 Bot couerde camellez of tourse, enclosyde in maylez ;
 He ayerez oute with alyenez, ostes fulle huge, 617
 Ewyne in-to Almayne, that Arthure hade wonnyne ;
 Rydes in by the ryuere, and ryottez hymne seluene,
 And ayerez with a huge wylle alle thas hye landez ; 620

All that fail are
to forfeit their
lands.

From all the East
they come sailing
across the Greek
Sea in their
mighty ships
armed for war,

and assembled at
Corneto, sixty
miles from Rome.

There were of
Greeke a vast
number, and men
of Italy, with
Saracens from
many lands,

Then goes forth
the emperour with
his knights,

headed by
sixty giants.
Witches and war-
locks watch his
tents.

[Deaf 60]
No horse might
carry those churils.
They ride upon
camels bearing
towers.

The emperour
marches into
Germany.

Alle Westwale of werre he wynnys as hym lykys,
 Drawes in by Danuby, and dubbez hys knyghtez;
 In the contré of Colome¹ castelles enseggez, 623
 And suggeournez *that* sesone wyth Sarazenes ynewe.

Meanwhile Arthur commands his knights to gather their forces, and to be ready to meet him.

At the vtas of Hillary, Syr Arthure hym seluene
 In his kydde councelle commande *the* lordes,—
 “Kayere to *your* cuntrez, and semble *your* knyghtes,
 And kepys me at Constantyne clenlyche arayede; 628
 Byddez me at Bareflete apone *tha* blythe stremes,
 Baldly *with-in* borde *with* *zowre* beste beryns;
 I schalle menskfully *zowe* mete in thos faire marches.”
 He sendez furthe sodaynly *sergeantes* of armes, 632

The fleet assembles at Sandwich.

To alle hys mariners on rawe, to areste hym schippys;
 Wyth-in sextene dayes hys fleet whas assemblede,
 At Sandwyche on *the* see, saile whene hym lykys.

He holds a parliament at York,

In the palez of *zorce* a parlement he haldez, 636
 With alle *the* perez of *the* rewme, prelates and *other*;
 And aftyre *the* prechyng in presence of lordes,
 The kyng in his concelle carpys *thes* wordes,—

“I am in *purpos* to passe *perilous* wayes, 640
 To kaire *with* my kene mene, to conquere *zone* landes,
 To owthraye myne enemy, *zif* auenture it schewe,
 That occupyes myne heritage, *the* empyre of Rome.

and appoints as viceroy Sir Mordred, his nephew.

I sett *zow* here a *soueraing*e, ascente *zif* *zowe* lykys,
 That es mesybb, my syster sone, Sir Mordred hym seluene,
 Salle be my leutenaunte, *with* lordchipez ynewe, 646
 Of alle my lele lege-mene, *that* my landez *zemes*.”

He carpes tille his cosyne *thane*, in counsaile hym seluene,—
 “I make the kepare, *sir* knyghte, of kyngrykes manye,
 Wardayne wyrchipulle, to weilde al my landes, 650
 That I haue wonnene of werre, in alle *this* werlde ryche;

He bids him take care of Queen Guinever,

I wyлле *that* Waynour, my weife, in wyrchipe be holdene,
 That hire wantte noo wele, ne welthe *that* hire lykys;
 Luke my kydde castells be clenlyche arrayede, 654

and of his castles and forests.

There cho maye suggeourne hire selfe, wyth semlyche
 berynes.

¹ Or Coloine.

- fflande my fforestез be ffrythede, o frenchepe for euere,
 That nane werreye my wylde, botte Waynour hir seluene,
 And *that* in the sesone whene grees es assignyde, 658 The queen alone
is allowed to hunt
in his absence.
 That cho take hir solauce in certayne tymms.
 Chauncelere and chambyrleyne change as *the* lykес,
 Audytours and offycers ordayne thy seluene,— 661 All officers are
to be completely
under his com-
mand.
 Bathe jureez, and juggez, and justicez of landes,
 Luke thow justyfyе theme wele that injurye wyrkes : [leaf 60, back]
 If me be destaynede to dye at Dryghtyns wylle, 664
 I charge the my sektour, cheffe of alle *other*,
 To mynystre my mobles, fore mede of my saule,
 To mendynantез¹ and mysese in myschefe fallene :
 Take here my testament of tresoure fulle huge, 668
 As I trayste appone the, be-traye thowe me neuer !
 As *thow* wille answeze be-fore the austeryne jugge,
 That alle *this* werlde wynly wysse as hyme lykес,
 Luke *that* my laste wylle be lelely perfournede ! 672
 Thow has clenly *the* cure that to my coroune langez,
 Of alle my werdez wele, and my weyffe eke ;
 Luke *thowe* kepe the so clere, there be no cause fondene,
 Whene I to contré come, if Cryste wille it thole ; 676
 And thow haue grace gudly to gouerne thy seluene,
 I salle coroune *the*, knyghte, kyng with my handez.”
Than *sir* Modrede fulle myldly meles hym seluene,
 Knelyd to *the* conquerour, and carpes *thise* wordez,—
 “ I be-seke 3ow, *sir*, as my sybbe lorde, 681 But Mordred de-
sires to be ex-
cused,
 That 3e wille for charyté cheese 3ow a-nother ;
 ffor if 3e putte me in *this* plytte, 3owre pople es dyssauyde ;
 To presente a prynce astate my powere es symple. 684
 Whene *other* of werre wysse are wyrchipide here-aftyre,
 Thane may I for-sothe be sette bott at lyttillе.
 To passe in 3our presance my puri os es takyne,
 And alle my purueaunce apperte fore my pris knyghtez.”
 “ Thowe arte my neuewe fulle nere, my nurtree of olde,
 That I haue chastyede and chosene, a childe of my
 chambyre ; 690 and would rather
go to the war.
But Arthur bids
him, as his near-
est of kin, to
undertake the
office.

¹ MS. mendynantез.

ffor the sybredyne of me, fore-sake noghte *this* offyce
That thow ne wyrk my wille, thow watte whatte¹ it
menes."

Nowe he takez hys leue, and lengez no langere, 693
At lordez, at lege-mene, *that* leues hyme by-hyndene.

Then Arthur
takes leave of
his queen.

And seyne *that* worthilyche wy went vn-to chambyre,
ffor to comfurthe *the* qwene, *that* in care lenges ; 696

Waynour waykly wepande hym kyssiz,

Talkez to hym tenderly *with* teres ynewe,—

Guinever laments
his departure,

"I may wery the wye, thatt this werre mouede,
That warnes me wyrchippe of my wedde lorde ; 700

Alle my lykyng of lyfe owte of lande wendez,

And I in langour am lefte, leue 3e for euere !

and would rather
die in his arms.

Whyne myghte I, dere lufe, dye in *your* armes, 703
Are I *this* destanye of dule sulde drye by myne one !"

But Arthur bids
her not to grieve,

"Grefe *the* noghte, Gaynour, fore Goddes lufe of hewene,
Ne gruche noghte my ganggyng, it salle to gude turne !

Thy wonrydez and thy wepyng woundez myne herte,

I may noghte wit of *this* woo, for alle *this* werlde ryche ;

I haue made a kepare, a knyghte of thyne awene, 709

and tells her that
he has made Mor-
dred, a knight
of her own, his
deputy.

Ouerlyng of Ynglande vndyre thy seluene,

And thates *sir* Mordrede, *that* thow has mekyllpraysede,
Salle be thy dictour, my dere, to doo whatte the lykes."

[leaf 61]

Then he kisses
the ladies, and
takes leave of
them.
But Guinever
swoons when he
asks for his
sword.

Thane he takes hys leue at ladys in chambyre, 713

Kysside them kyndlyche, and to Criste be-taches ;

And then cho swounes fulle swythe, whe[n] he hys
swerde aschede,

Twys in a swounyng, swelte as cho walde ! 716

The king then
departs hastily
with his knyghtes.

He pressed to his palfray, in presance of lordes,

Prekys of the palez *with* his prys knyghtes,

Wyth a realle rowte of *the* Rounde Table ; 719

Soughte to-warde Sandwyche, cho sees hyme no more !

Thare the grete ware gederyde, wyth galyarde knyghtes,

Garneschit one *the* grene felde and graythelyche arayede ;

Dukkes and duzseperez daynttehely rydes,

Erlez of Ynglande *with* archers ynewe : 724

At Sandwich all
the lords and
their followers
assemble.

¹ MS. whatte watte.

- Schirreues scharply schiftys the comouns,
 Rewlys be-fore *the* ryche of the Rounde Table,
 Assingnez ilke a contree to certayne lordes, 727
 In the southe one *the* see banke saile whene *theme* lykys.
 Thane bargez *theme* buskez, and to *the* bannke rowes, Horses, arms,
lents, and other
things are
shipped.
 Bryngez blonkez one bourde, and burlyche helmes ;
 Trussez in tristly trappyde stedes,
 Tentez,¹ and othire toylez, and targez fulle ryche, 732
 Cabanes, *and* clathe-sekkes, and coferez fulle noble,
 Hukes, and haknays, and horsez of armez ;
 Thus they stowe ine the stuffe of fulle steryne knyghtez.
Qwene alle was schyppede that scholde, they schounte
 no lengere, 736
 Bot ventelde *theme* tyte, as *the* tyde rynnez ;
 Coggez and crayers *than* crossez *thaire* mastez,
 At the commandment of *the* kyng, vncouerde at ones.
 Wyghtly one *the* wale *thay* wye vp *thaire* ankers, 740 Then the ships
at the word of
command cross
their yards,
weigh their an-
chors ;
the well-skilled
sailors hoist the
sails and steer the
vessels.
 By wytt of *the* watyre-mene of *the* wale ythez,
 ffrekes one *the* forestayne fakene *theire* coblez,
 In floynes, and fercostez, and Flemesche schyppes,
 Tytt saillez to *the* toppe, and turnez *the* lufe, 744
 Standez appone stere-bourde, sterynly *thay* songene,
 The pryce schippeez of the porte prouene *theire* depnesse,
 And fondez wyth fulle saile ower *the* fawe ythez ;
 Holly *with-owt*tyne harme *thay* hale in bottes, 748 Then they haul
in the boats, shut
the ports, heave
the lead, look well
to the guiding
star, and skil-
fully shape their
course with the
needle and the
stone.
 Schipe-mene scharply schotene *thaire* portez,
 Launchez lede apone lufe, lacchene *ther* depez,
 Lukkes to *the* lade-sterne, whene *the* lyghte faillez ;
 Castez coursez be crafte, whene *the* clowde rysez, 752
With the nedylle and *the* stone one *the* nyghte tydez ; After a little de-
lay on account of
darkness, they all
sail at once.
 ffor drede of *the* derke nyghte *thay* drecchede a lyttille,
 And alle *the* steryne of *the* streme strekyne at onez.
 The kyng was in a gret cogge, *with* knyghtez fulle many,
 In a cabane enclosede, clenlyche arayed ; 757 The king is in a
large vessel with
many knights.
With-in on a ryche bedde rystys a littyllle,
 And *with* *the* swoghe of *the* see in swefnynghe he felle. Resting himself
in his cabin, he
falls asleep,

¹ Or teinttez.

- and dreams of a
dreadful dragon.
- [leaf 61, back]
- His head and
neck are blue ;
his shoulders cov-
ered with silver
scales ;
- his belly and
wings of various
hues ;
- his feet are
black, and out of
his mouth comes
fire.
- Then comes
against the dra-
gon a fierce black
bear,
with huge paws
and perilous
claws,
- mis-shapen legs,
and foaming lips.
- He prepares to
fight,
roaring and
raging for the
strife.
- Then the dragon
assails him,
fighting like a
falcon with beak
and claws.
- The bear bites
him with baleful
teeth, and causes
the blood to flow.
- He had killed the
dragon but for
- Hym dremyd of a dragone, dredfulle to be-holde, 760
Come dryfande ouer *the* depe to drenschene hys pople,
Ewene walkande owte of the weste landez,
Wanderande vnworthyly ouere the wale ythez ;
Bothe his hede and hys hals ware halely alle ouer 764
Oundyde of azure, enamelde fulle faire :
His scoulders ware schalyde alle in clene syluere,
Schreede ouer alle *the* schrympe with schrinkande poyntez ;
Hys wombe and hys wenges of wondyrfulle hewes, 768
In *meruaylous* maylys he mountede fulle hye ;
Whayme *that* he towchede he was tynt for euer !
Hys feete ware floreschede alle in fyne *sabylle*,
And syche a *vennymous* flayre flowe fro his lyppez,
That the flode of *the* flawez alle one fyre semyde ! 773
Thane come of *the* Oryente, ewyne hyme agaynez,
A blake bustous bere abwene in the clowdes,
With yche a pawe as a poste, and paumes fulle huge,
With pykes fulle *perilous*, alle plyande *thame* semyde,
Lothene and lothely, lokkes and *other*,
Alle *with* lutterde legges, lokerde vnfaire,
ffiltyrde vnfrelly, wyth fomannde lyppez, 780
The foulleste of feigure that *fourmede* was euer !
He baltyrde, he bleryde, he *braundyschte* *ther*-after ;
To bataile he bounnez hym *with* bustous clowez :
He romede, he rarede, that roggede alle *the* erthe ! 784
So ruydly he rappyd at to ryot hym seluene !
Thane the dragone on dreghe dressede hyme a-zaynez,
And *with* hys duttez hym drafe one dreghe by *the* walkyne :
He fares as a fawcone, frekly he *strykez* ; 788
Bothe *with* feete and *with* fyre he feghttys at ones !
The bere in the bataile *the* bygger hym semyde,
And byttes hyme boldlye wyth balefulle tuskez ;
Syche buffetez he hym rechez *with* hys brode klokkes,
Hys brest and his brathelle whas blodye alle ouer ! 793
He rawmpyde so ruydly that alle *the* erthe ryfez,
Rynnaunde one reede blode as rayne of the heuene !
He hade weryede the worme by wyghtnesse of strenghte,

Neware it fore *the* wyld fyre *that* he hyme wyth defendez. the fire which he breathes.

Thane wandrys *the* worme away to hys heghttez,
Commes glydande fro *the* clowddez, and cowpez fulle
euene ; 799 Then the dragon flies aloft, and comes swooping down,

Towchez hym wyth his talounez, and terez hys rigge,
Be-twyx *the* taile and the toppe tene fote large ! tearing a vast rent in the back of the bear,

Thus he brittenyde the bere, and broghte hyme olyfe,
Lette hyme falle in the flode, fleete whare hyme lykys : and lets him drop into the water.
So they brynge *the* bolde kyng bynne *the* schippe-burde,
That nere he bristez for bale, one bede whare he lyggez.

Thane waknez *the* wyese kyng, very fore-trauaillede, Then Arthur awaking is
Takes hyme two phylozophirs, that folowede hyme euer, [leaf 62] troubled at the dream, and sends for his two philosophers, men very learned in the seven sciences.
In the seuyne scyence the suteleste fondene, 808
The cony[n]geste of clergie vndyre Criste knowene ;
He tolde *theme* of hys tourmente, *that* tyme *that* he slepede,

“ Drechede *with* a dragone, and syche a derfe beste,
Has mad me fulle very ; 3e telle me my swefene, 812
Ore I mone swelte as swythe, as wysse me oure Lorde ! ”

“ Sir,” saide *they* sone thane, thies sagge philosopherse, These wise men tell him that by the dragon is meant himself.
“ The dragone *that* thow dremyde of, so dredfulle to schewe,

That come dryfande ouer *the* deepe, to drynchene thy pople,
Sothely and certayne thy seluene it es, 817

That thus saillez ouer *the* see *with* thy sekyre knyghtez :
The colurez *that* ware castyne appone his clere wengez,
May be thy kyngrykez alle, *that* thow has ryghte wonnyne ;
And the tachesede taile, *with* tonges so huge, 821

Be-takyns *this* faire folke, *that* in thy fleet wendez.

The bere *that* bryttenede was abowene in *the* clowdez, The bear signifies the tyrants who torment his people, or else some giant whom Arthur is destined to overthrow in battle.
Be-takyns the tyrauntez *that* tourmentez thy pople ;
Or elles *with* somme gyaunt some journee salle happyne,

In syngulere batelle by 3oure selfe one ;
And *thow* salle hafe *the* victorye thurgh the helpe of oure
Lorde,

As *thow* in thy vision was opynly schewede ! 828
Of this dredfulle dreme ne drede the no more,
Ne kare noghte, *sir* conquerour, bot comforth thy seluene ;

Arthur is exhorted to be of good courage.

And thise *that* saillez ouer *the* see, with thy sekyre knyghtez."

With trumppez thene trustly, they trisene vpe *thaire* saillez, 832

They speed on their way, and arrive on the coast of Normandy.

At Barflete they find a fleet of friends,

the flower of fifteen realms.

And rowes ouer the ryche see, this rowtte alle at onez ;
The comely coste of Normandye they cachene fulle euene,

And blythely at Barflete theis bolde are arryfedez,
And fyndys a flete there of frendez ynewe, 836

The floure and *the* faire folke of fyftene rewmez ;
ffore kynggez and capytaynez kepyde hyme fayre,
As he at Carelele commaundyde at Cristymesse hym seluene. 839

When they had disembarked and pitched their tents, a Templar comes to the king,

and tells him of a ferocious giant who feeds upon men and children,

Be they had taken the lande, and tentez vpe rerede,
Comez¹ a templere tyte, and towchide to *the* kyng—

"Here es a teraunt be-syde that *tourmentez* thi pople,
A grett geaunte of geene, engenderde of fendez ;
He has fretyne of folke mo thane fyfe hondrethe, 844
And als fele fawntekyns of freeborne childyre !

This has bene his sustynauce alle this seuene wyntteres,
And zitt es that sotte noghte sadde, so wele hyme it lykez !
In *the* contree of Constantyne no kynde has he leuede,
With-owttyne kydd castelles enclosid wyth walles, 849
That he ne has clenly dystroyede alle the knaue childyre,
And theme caryede to *the* cragge, and clenly deworyde !

and who had that day captured the [leaf 62, back] Duchess of Britany, and carried her to the mountain.

The duchez of Bretayne to daye has he takyne, 852
Be-side Reynes as scho rade with hire ryche knyghttes ;
Ledd hyre to *the* mountayne, thare *that* lede lengez,
To lye by that lady, aye whyls hir lyfe lastez.

We folowede o ferrome moo thene fyfe hundrethe, 856
Of beryns, and of burgeys, and bachelers noble,
Bot he couerde the cragge ; cho cryede so lowde,
The care of *that* creatoure couer salle I neuer !

She was the flower of all France, and the fairest lady on earth,

Scho was flour of alle Fraunce, or of fyfe rewmes, 860
And one of the fayreste that fourmede was euere,
The gentileste jowelle a-juggede with lordes,
ffro Geene vn-to Gerone, by Ihesu of heuene !

¹ Or *Commez*.

Scho was thy wyfes cosyne, knowe it if *the* lykez, 864 cousin of Arthur's queen.
Comene of *the* rycheeste, that rengnez in erthe :

As thow arte ryghtwise kynge rewe on thy pople,
And fande for to venge theme, that thus are rebuykyde !”

“ Allas !” sais *sir* Arthure, “ so lange haue I lyffede, Then Sir Arthur bitterly laments her fate, 869

Hade I wytene of this, wele had me chefede ;
Me es noghte fallene faire, bot me es foule happynede,
That thus this faire ladye this fende has dystroyede !

I had leuere thane alle Fraunce, this fyftene wynter,
I hade bene be-fore thate freke, a furlange of waye, 873 and wishes he had been there to aid her.

Whene he that ladye had laghte and ledde to *the* montez :

I hadde leste my lyfe are cho hade harme lymppyde !

Bot walde *thow* keneme to *the* crage, thare *that* kene lengez,
I walde cayre to *that* coste, and carpe wythe hyme seluene, He desires to know where the giant lives,

To trette *with* that tyraunt fore tresone of londes,¹

And take trewe for a tyme, tille it may tyde bettyre.”

“ Sire, see 3e 3one farlande, *with* 3one two fyrez, 880 and is directed by the Templar how to find his abode,

Thar filsnez² *that* fende, fraiste whene the lykes,

Appone the creste of the cragge, by a colde welle,

That enclosez *the* clyfe *with* *the* clere strandez,

Ther may thow fynde folke fay wyth-owttyne nowmer, where there are many captives,

Mo florenez in faythe thane Fraunce es in aftyre ; 885

And more tresour vn-trewely that traytour has getyne, and vast treasure stored up.

Thane in Troye was, as I trowe, *that* tyme *that* it was wonne.”

Thane romyez the ryche kynge for rewthe of *the* pople, Then Arthur is greatly excited.

Raykez ryghte to a tente, and restez no lengere ! 889

He welterys, he wristeles, he wryngez hys handez !

There was no wy of *this* werlde, *that* wyste whatt he menede !

He calles *sir* Cayous *that* of *the* cowpe serfede, 892 and bids Sir Cayous and Sir Bedevere attend him at evening,

And *sir* Bedvere *the* bolde, *that* bare hys brande ryche,—

“ Luke 3e aftyre euensange be armyde at ryghttez,

On blonkez by 3one buscayle, by 3one blythe stremez,

flore I wille passe in pilgremage preuely here-aftyre, pretending that he is going on a pilgrimage.

In the tyme of suppere, whene lordez are seruede, 897

ffor to sekene a saynte be 3one salte stremes,

[leaf 63]

¹ Originally lordez.

² Or filsuez.

In seynt Mighelle mount, there myraclez are schewede."

Then Arthur proceeds to dress and arm himself,

Aftyre euesange, sir Arthure hyme se[1]fene 900

Wente to hys wardrope, and warpe of hys wedez,
Armede hym in a actone with orfraez fulle ryche,

Abouen *that* a jeryne of Acres owte ouer,

Abouen *that* a jesseraunt of jentyllle maylez, 904

A jupone of Ierodyne jaggede in schredez ;

He brayedez one a bacenett burneschte of syluer,

The beste *that* was in Basille, wyth bordurs ryche ;

The creste and *the* coronalle, enclosed so faire 908

Wyth clasppis of clere golde, couched wyth stones ;

The vesare, *the* aventaille, enarmede so faire,

Voyde with-owttyne vice, with wyndowes of syluer ;

His gloues gaylyche gilte, and grauene at *the* hemmez,

With grayuez and gobelets, glorious of hewe ; 913

He bracez a brade schelde, and his brande aschez,

Bounede hyme a broune stede, and one *the* bente houys ;

He sterte tille his sterepe and stridez one lofte, 916

Streynez hyme stowttly, and sterys hyme faire,

Brochez *the* baye stede, and to *the* buske rydez,

And there hys knyghtes hyme kepede fulle clenlyche
arayede.

Thane they roode by *that* ryuer, *that* rynnnd so swythe,

Thare *the* ryndez ouerrechez with realle bowghez ; 921

The roo and *the* rayne-dere reklesse thare ronene,

In ranez and in rosers to ryotte *thame* seluene ;

The frithez ware floreschte with flourez fulle many,

Wyth fawcouns and fesantez of ferlyche hewez ; 925

Here all birds abound,

Alle *the* feulez thare fleschez, that flyez with wengez,

flore thare galedede *the* gowke one greuez fulle lowde,

Wyth alkyne gladchipe *thay* gladdene *theme* seluene :

and nightingales make sweet music.

Of *the* nyghtgale notez *the* noizez was swette, 929

They threpide wyth *the* throstilles, thre hundreth at ones !

That whate swowyng of watyre, and syngyng of byrdez,

It myghte salue hyme of sore, *that* sounde was neuere !

Here they leave their horses, and

Thane ferkez this folke, and one fotte lyghttez, 933

ffestenez their faire stedez o ferrome by-tweine ;

And thene the kyng kenely comandyde hys knyghtez
ffor to byde *with* theire blonkez, and bowne no forthyre,—
the king bids his knights to await his return.

“ffore I wille seke this seynte by my selfe one, 937
And melle *with* this mayster mane, *that* this monte zemez;
And seyne salle ze offyre, aythyre aftyre *other*,
Mensfully at Saynt Mighelle fulle myghtty *with* Criste!”

The kyng coueris *the* cragge wyth cloughes fulle hye,
To the creste of the clyffe he clymbez one lofte ;
The king alone ascends the [leaf 63, back] mountain,

Keste vpe hys vmbrere, and kenly he lukes, 943
Caughte of *the* colde wynde to comforthe hym seluene ;
Two fyrez he fyndez fflawmande fulle hye,
The fourtedele a furlange be-twene *thus* he walkes ;
The waye by *the* weHe strandez he wandyrde hyme one,
To wette of *the* warlawe, whare *that* he lengez ; 948

He ferkez to *the* fyrste fyre, and euene there he fyndez
A very wafulle wedowe, wryngande hire handez,
and going to a fire which he sees he finds a woeful widow wringing her hands.

And gretande on a graue grysely teres,
Now merkyde one molde, sene myddaye it semede : 952
He saluzede *that* sorowfulle *with* sittande wordez,
And fraynez aftyre the fende fairely there-aftyre.

Thane this wafulle wyfe vñ-wynly hym gretez,
He asks her concerning the giaut.

Couerde vp on hire kneesse, and clappyde hire handez ;
Said, “carefulle caremane, thow carpez to lowde ! 957
May zone warlawe wyt, he worows vs alle !
She answers with terror, and warns him that he cannot hope to contend with so terrible a monster.

Weryd worthe *the* wyghte ay, *that* *the* thy wytt refede,
That mase the to wayfe here in *thise* wylde lakes ! 960

I warne *the* fore wyrchipe, *thou* wylnes aftyx sorowe !
Whedyre buskes *thou* berne ? vnblysside *thow* semes !

Wenez thow to brittene hyme *with* thy brande ryche ?
Ware thow wyghttere thane Wade or Wawayne owthire,

Thow wynnys no wyrchipe, I warne the be-fore ! 965
Thow saynned the vnsekyrly to seke to *these* mountez,

Siche sex ware to symple to semble *with* hyme one ;
ffor and thow see hyme *with* syghte, the seruez no herte,

To sayne the sekerly, so semez hym huge ! 969
Thow arte frely and faire, and in thy fyrste flourez,

Bot thow arte fay be my faythe, and *that* me for-thynkys !

Fifty such as Arthur he could fell with his fist.

The poor duchess has been ravished and murdered by him, and the doleful widow, her foster-mother, has buried her,

and will remain there till death to bewail her.

[leaf 64]
Then Arthur says that he comes from the great King Arthur on a mission to treat with the giant.

The old wife tells him that he cares nothing for laws or treaties; that he regards not gold or treasure;

only he has a famous kirtle covered with hair,

which is bordered with the beards of mighty kings.

The tribute of fifteen realms is sent to him on each Easter-eve.

Ware syche fyfty one a felde, or one a faire erthe, 972

The freke walde *with* hys fyste felle 3ow at ones!

Loo! here the duchez dere,—to daye was cho takyne,—

Depe doluene and dede, dyked in moldez; 975

He hade morthiredede this mylde be myddaye war rongene,

With-owttyne mercy one molde, I not watte it ment:

He has forsedede hir and fylede, and cho es fay leuede;

He slewe hir vn-slely, and slitt hir to *the nauylle!*

And here haue I bawmede hir, and beryede *ther-aftyr*;

ffor bale of *the* botelesse, blythe be I neuer! 981

Of alle *the* frendez cho hade, *there* folowede none aftyre,

Bot I, hir foster modyr of fyftene wynter!

To ferke of this farlande, fande salle I neuer, 984

Bot here be foundene on felde, tille I be fay leuede!"

Thane answers *sir* Arthure to *that* alde wylf;

"I am comyne fra *the* conquerour, curtaise and gentille,

As one of *the* hatelest of Arthur knyghtez, 988

Messenger to *this* myx, for mendemente of *the* pople,

To mele *with* this maister mane, that here this mounte

zemez;

To trete *with* this tyraunt for tresour of landez,

And take trew for a tyme, to bettyr may worthe." 992

"3a, thire wordis are bot waste," *quod* this wif thane,

"ffor bothe landez and lythes ffulle lyttille by he settes;

Of rentez ne of rede golde rekkez he neuer, 995

ffor he wille lenge owt of lawe, as hym selfe thynkes,

With-owtene licence of lede, as lorde in his awene;

Bot he has a kyrtille one, kepide for hyme seluene,

That was sponene in Spayne *with* speyalle byrdez,

And sythyne gamescht in Grece fulle graythly to-gedirs;

It es hydede alle *with* hare hally al ouere, 1001

And bordyrde *with* the berdez of burlyche kynggez,

Crispid and kombide, that kempis may knawe

Iche kyng by his colour, in kythe there he lengez;

Here the fermez he fangez of fyftene rewmez, 1005

ffor ilke Esterne ewyne, how-euer that it falle,

They send it hyme sothely for saughte of *the* pople,

Sekerly at *that sesone with certayne knyghtez*, 1008

And he has aschede *Arthure alle this seuene wynnnter*.

ffor-thy hurdez he here, to owtraye hys pople,

He has long wished for the beard of Arthur.

Tille *the Bretones kyng*e haue burneschte his lypmys,

And sent his berde to that bolde wyth his beste berynes ;

Bot thowe hafe broghte *that berde*, bowne the no forthire,

ffor it es butelesse bale, thowe biddez oghte elles ; 1014

ffor he has more tresour to take whene hyme lykez,

Thane euere aughte *Arthure*, or any of hys elders ;

If thowe hafe broghte *the berde*, he bese more blythe

If he has brought the beard, the giant will be blithe.

Thane *thowe* gafe hym *Burgoyne*, or *Bretayne the more* ;

Bot luke nowe for charitee, *thow* chasty thy lypmes,

That the no wordez eschape, whate so be-tydez ; 1020

But he must approach him with due caution,

Luke *thi* presante be priste, and presse hym bott lyttille,

ffor he es at his sowper, he wille be sone greuyde.

And *thow* my concelle doo, *thow* dosse of thy clothes,

and had better doff his clothes and kneel to him.

And knele in thy kyrtylle, and calle hym thy lorde.

He sowppes alle *this sesone with seuene knaue childre*,

He sups at this season on seven male children chopped in a charger of chalk-white silver.

Choppid in a chargour of chalke whytt syluer, 1026

With pekille and powdyre of precious spycez,

And piment fulle plenteuous of *Portyngale* wynes ;

Thre balefulle birdez his brochez *they* turne, 1029

Three wretched women turn his spits for him.

That byddez his bedgatt, his byddyngge to wyrche ;

Siche foure scholde be fay with-in foure hourez,

Are his fylth ware filledde, that his flesch zernes."

[leaf 64, back]

"3a, I haue broghte *the berde*," quod he, "the bettyre

me lykez ;

1033

"Yes," says Arthur, "I have indeed brought this beard ; but show me where I shall find him."

ffor-thi wille I boune me, and bere it my seluene ;

Bot, lefe, walde *thow* lere me whare *that lede* lengez,

I salle alowe *the* and I liffe, oure Lorde so me helpe !"

"fferke fast to *the fyre*," quod cho, "that flawmez so hye ;

Then she directs him to approach the great fire.

Thare fillis *that fende* hyme, fraist whene the lykez ;

Bot thow moste seke more southe, sydlyngs a lyttille,

ffor he wille hafe sent hym selfe sex myle large." 1040

To *the* sowre of *the reke* he soghte at *the gayneste*,

Sayned hyme sekerly with certeyne wordez,

And sydlyngs of *the segge* the syghte had he rechide,

Arthur goes to the fire, and finds the giant lying extended with his back to the fire, picking the thigh of a man.

How vn-semly *that* sott satt sowpande hym one ; 1044
 He lay lenand one lange, lugande vn-faire,
The thee of a manns lymme lyfte vp by the haunche ;
 His bakke, and his bewschers, and his brode lendez,
 He bekez by *the* bale-fyre, and breklesse hyme semede ;
Thare ware rostez fulle ruyde, and rewfulle bredez, 1049
 Beerynes and bestaile brochede to-geders ;
 Cowlefulle cramede of crysmede chilydre,
 Sum as brede brochede, and bierdez *thame* tournede.

Roasts of the flesh of men and cattle are spitted together.

Then Arthur's heart bleeds for the woes inflicted by this wretch. He fastens on his shield and brandishes his bright sword,

And *thane* this comlych kynge, by-cause of his pople,
 His herte bledez for bale, one bent ware he standez !
 Thane he dressede one his schelde, schuntes no lengere,
 Braundesche his bryghte swerde by *the* bryghte hiltz,
 Raykez to-warde *the* renke reghte *with* a ruyde wille,
 And hyely hailsez *that* hulke *with* hawtayne wordez,—

and right boldly addresses the giant.

“ Now, alle-weldand Gode, *that* wurscheppez vs alle,
 Giff the sorowe and syte, sotte, there thow lygges, 1060
 ffor the fulsomeste freke *that* fourmede was euere !

He upbraids him with his vile crimes and his unclean meat.

froully thow fedys *the*, *the* fende haue thi saule !
 Here es cury vn-clene, earle, be my trowthe,
 Caffe of creatours alle, thow curssede wriche ! 1064

For his horrible murders of Christian children,

Be-cause that *thow* killide has *thise* cresmede chilydre,
 Thow has marters made, and broghte oute of lyfe,
That here are brochede one bente, and brittenede *with*
 thi handez, 1067

he would now take vengeance on him, by the aid of St Michael.

I salle merke *the* thy mede, as *thou* has myche serfede,
 Thurghe myghte of seynt Mighelle, *that* *this* monte zemes !
 And for this faire ladye, *that* *thow* has fey leuyde,
 And *thus* forcede one foulde, for fylth of *thi* selfene !
 Dresse the now, dogge-sonne, the deuelle haue *thi* saule !
 ffor *thow* salle dye this day, thurghe dynt of my handez !”

Then the giant stared with amazement, and gnashed his teeth with fury.

Thane glonede *the* glotone and glorede vn-faire ;
 He grennede as a grewhounde, *with* grysly tuskes ;
 He gapede, he groned faste, *with* grucchande latez, 1076
 ffor grefe of *the* gude kynge, *that* hyme *with* grame gretez !
 His fax and his foretoppe was filterede to-geders,

- And owte of his face fome ane halfe fote large ;
 His frount and his forheuede, alle was it ouer, 1080
 As *the felle* of a froske, and fraknede it semede,
 Huke-nebbyde as a hawke, and a hore berde,
 And herede to *the hole eyghne* with hyngande browes ;
 Harske as a hunde-fisch, hardly who so lukez, 1084
 So was *the hyde* of *that hulke* hally al ouer !
 Erne had he fulle huge, and vgly to schewe,
 With eghne fulle horreble, and ardaunt for sothe ;
 flatt-mowthede as a fluke, with fleryande lypmys, 1088
 And *the flesche* in his fortethe fowly as a bere.
 His berde was brothy and blake, *that tille* his brest
 rechede,
 Grassede as a mereswyne with corkes fulle huge,
 And alle falterde *the flesche* in his foule lippys, 1092
 Ilke wrethe as a wolfe-heuede, it wraythe owtt at ones !
 Bullenekkyde was *that bierne*, and brade in the scholders,
 Brok-brestede as a brawne, with Brustils fulle large,
 Ruyd armes as an ake with rusclede sydes, 1096
 Lyme and leskes fulle lothyne, leue ze for sothe :
 Schouelle-fotede was *that schalke*, and schaylande hyme
 semyde,
 With schankez vn-schaply, schowande to-gedyrs ;
 Thykke theese as a thurse, and thikkere in *the hanche*,
 Greesse growene as a galte, fulle grylych he lukez ! 1101
 Who *the lenghe* of *the lede* lelly accountes,
 ffo *the face* to *the fote*, was fyfe fadome lange !
 Thane stertez he vp sturdely one two styffe schankez,
 And sone he caughte hyme a clubb alle of clene yryne !
 He walde hafe kyllede *the kynge* with his kene wapene,
 Bot thurghe *the craft* of Cryste zit *the carle* failede ;
 The creest and *the coronalle*, *the claspes* of syluer, 1108
 Clenly with his clubb he crasschede doune at onez !
 The kynge castes vp his schelde, and couers hym faire,
 And with his burlyche brande a box he hyme reches ;
 ffulle butt in *the frunt* the fromonde he hittez, 1112

Out of his mouth
came smoke.

His forehead was
like the fell of a
frog.

He was hook-
nosed like a
[leaf 65]

hawk, with hair
up to his eyes, and
beetle brows.

His skin was hard
as that of a dog-
fish ; his ears
huge and ugly ;
his eyes horrible
and burning.

Flat-mouthed,
with grinning
lips, and jaws
like a bear.

A black beard
reached to his
breast, with
mighty bristles.

The flesh of his
lips was in un-
even folds, each
fold, like an out-
law, twisted it-
self out.

He was bull-
necked and broad
in the shoulders ;
breasted like a
boar, with huge
bristles ; his arms
like an oak ; his
limbs and flanks
loathly ; shovel-
footed and scaly,
with unshapely
shanks ;

of gigantic thick-
ness in his
haunches.

In height, full
five fathoms.

Up starts this
fell giant, and
seizing an iron
club, aims a blow
at Arthur.

The king catches
it on his shield,
and returns the
blow with his
sword right upon
the forehead.

The bright blade pierces to the brain. The giant wipes his face with his hands, and strikes fiercely at the king. Arthur draws back,

That the burnyschit blade to *the* brayne rynnez ;
He feyede his fysnamye *with* his foule hondez,
And frappez faste at hys face fersely *ther*-aftyre !
The kyng chaungez his fote, eschewes a lyttille, 1116
Ne had he eschapede *that* choppe, cheuede had euylle ;
He folowes in fersly, and festenesse a dynte

and then drives his sword into the giant's haunch.

Hye vpe one *the* hanche, *with* his harde wapyne,
That he hillid *the* swerde halfe a fote large ; 1120
The hott blode of *the* hulke vn-to *the* hilde rynnez,
Ewyne in-to jumette the gyaunt he hyttez,
Iust to *the* genitales,¹ and jaggede *thame* in sondre !

The monster roars and strikes at random. So mighty is his stroke, that it penetrates a sword's length into the ground. The king nearly swoons at the noise of the blow, but quickly strikes him with his sword. His entrails and blood gush out.

Thane he romyede and rarede, and ruydly he strykez
ffulle egerly at *Arthure*, and one the erthe hittez 1125
A swerde lenghe *with-in* *the* swarthe, he swappez at ones,
That nere swounes *the* kyng for swoughe of his dynttez !
Bot 3it the kyng sweperly fulle swythe he by-swenkez,
Swappez in *with* the swerde *that* it *the* swange brystedde ;
Bothe *the* guttez and the gorre guschez owte at ones,
That alle englaymez *the* gresse, one grounde *ther* he
standez ! 1131

[leaf 65, back]
Then throwing away his club, the giant seizes Arthur in his arms.

Thane he castez the clubb, and the kyng hentez,
On *the* creeste of *the* cragg he caughte hyme in armez,
And enclosez hyme clenly, to cruschene hys rybbez ;
So harde haldez he *that* hende, *that* nere his herte brystez !
Thane the balefulle bierdez bownez to *the* erthe, 1136
Kneland and cryande, and clappide *theire* handez,—

The baleful birds pray for the success of Arthur.

“Criste comforthe 3one knyghte, and kepe hym fro
sorowe,

And latte neuer 3one fende felle hyme olyfe !”

They have a fearful wrestling match, and fall from the top of the cliff down to the shore.

3itt es *the* warlow so wyghte, he welters hyme vndere,
Wrothely *thai* wrythyne and wrystille to-gederz, 1141
Welters and walowes ouer *with-in* *thase* buskez,
Tumbellez and turnes faste, and terez *thaire* wedez,
Vn-tenderly fro *the* toppe *thai* tiltine to-gederz ; 1144
Whilome *Arthure* ouer, and *other*-while vndyre,
ffro *the* heghe of *the* hylle vn-to *the* harde roche ;

¹ MS. genitates.

They feyne neuer are they falle at *the* flode merkes ;
 Bot Arthur with ane anlace egerly smyttez, 1148 Arthur stabs the
giant,
 And hittez euer in the hulke vp to *the* hiltez.
 The theeffe at *the* dede-thrawe so throly hyme thyrngez,
 That three rybbys in his syde he thyrstез in sundere ! who in his death-
struggle breaks
three of Arthur's
ribs.
 Thene sir Kayous *the* kene vn-to *the* kyngе styrtез,—
 Said, “allas ! we are lorne, my lorde es confundede,
 Ouer-fallene with a fende ! vs es fulle hapsede ! 1154
 We mone be forfeatede in faith, and flemyde for euer !” His knights find
him lying ex-
hausted.
 Thay hafe vp hys hawberke *thane*, and handilez *ther*-
 vndyre,
 His hyde and his haunche eke, one heghte to *the*
 schuldrez,
 His flawnke and his feletez, and his faire sydez, 1158
 Bothe his bakke and his breste, and his bryghte armez.
 Thay ware fayne *that* they fande no flesche entamede,
 And for *that* journee made joye, *thir* gentille knyghttez. They examine
him and find no
wound.
 “Now, certez,” saise Sir Bedwere, “it semez, be my
 Lorde ! 1162 Sir Bedever
speaks face-
tiously of this
saint whom Ar-
thur had sought.
 He sekez seyntez bot seldene, *the* sorere he grypes,
 That thus clekys this corsaunt owte of *thir* heghe clyffez,
 To carye forthe siche a carle at close hym in siluere ;
 Be Myghelle, of syche a makk I hafe myche wondyre
 That euer owre soueraygne Lorde suffers hyme in heuene ;
 And alle seyntez be syche, *that* seruez oure Lorde, 1168 If all saints are
like him no saint
would he be.
 I salle neuer no seynt bee, be my fadyre sawle !”
 Thane bouredez *the* bolde kyngе at Bedvere wordez,—
 “*This* seynt haue I soghte, so helpe me owre Lorde !
 for-thy brayd owtte *thi* brande, and broche hyme to *the*
 herte ; 1172 Arthur bids him
stab the monster
to the heart, to
make sure of him,
for only once be-
fore had he met
with such a ter-
rible foe.
 Be sekere of this *sergeaunt*, he has me sore greuede !
 I faghte noghte wyth syche a freke *this* fyftene wyntyrs,
 Bot in *the* montez of Araby I mett syche another ;
 He was *the* forcyere be ferre *that* had I nere fundene,
 Ne had my fortune bene faire, fey had I leuede ! 1177
 Onone stryke of his heuede, and stake it there-aftyre,
 Gife it to thy sqwyere, fore he es wele horsede ; He bids them cut
off his head,

and bear it first
to Sir Hoel,
[leaf 68]

then to Barflete,
and set it on the
barbican.

His sword and
shield and the
giant's club are
to be fetched from
the hill.

They may take
what treasure
they will; all Ar-
thur desires is the
kirtle and the
club.

The affair was
kept a secret till
break of day.

Then the people
kneel before Ar-
thur, and thank
and praise him
for slaying the
giant.

Arthur ascribes
all to God.

He bids his fol-
lowers distribute

Bere it to *sir Howelle*, *that es in harde bandez*, 1180

And byd *hyme herte hym wele*, his enemy es destruede !

Syne bere it to *Bareflete*, and brace it in *ryne*,

And sett it on the *barbycane*, *biernes to schewe*.

My brande and my brode schelde apone *the bent lyggez*,

On *the creeste of the cragge*, thare fyrste we encountrede,

And *the clubb thar-by*, alle of clene irene,

That many Cristene has kyllde in Constantyne landez ;

fferke to the *farlande*, and fetche me *that wapene*, 1188

And late founde till *oure flete*, in *fode thare* it lengez.

If thow wylle any *tresour*, take whate the lykez ;

Haue I the *kyrtylle* and *the clubb*, I coueite *noghte elles* !"

Now *they caire to the cragge*, *thise comlyche knyghtez*,

And broghte *hyme the brade schelde*, and his bryghte

wapene, 1193

The clubb and the cotte ahs, *Syr Kayous hym seluene*,

And *kayres with conquerour*, the *kyngez to schewe* ;

That in *couerte the kyng* helde *close to hym seluene*,

Whilles clene day fro *the clowde clymbyd on lofte*.

Be that to *courte was comene clamour fulle huge*,

And be-fore *the comlyche kyng* they knelyd alle at

ones,— 1199

"Welcome, *oure liege lorde*, to lang has thow duellyde !

Gouernour vndyr Gode, graytheste and noble,

To whame grace es graunted, and *gyffene at his wille* !

Now thy *comly come* has *comforthede vs alle* !

Thow has in thy *realtee reuengyde thy pople* ! 1204

Thurghe helpe of thy hande, thyne enemye are struyede,

That has thy *renkes ouer-ronne*, and refte them *theire*

childyre !

Whas *neuer rewme owte of araye so redyly releuede* !"

Thane *the conquerour cristenly carpez* to his pople,

"Thankes Gode," quod he, "of *this grace*, and no gome

elles, 1209

ffor it was *neuer manns dede*, bot myghte of *Hym selfene*,

Or myracle of *hys modyre*, *that mylde es till alle* !"

He somond than *the schippemeue scharpely ther-aftyre*,

To schake furthe *with the* schyre mene to schifte *the*
gudez ; the giant's trea-
sure among the
clergy and people.

“ Alle *the* myche tresour that traytour had wonnene,
To comouns of the contré, clergy and *other*,
Luke it be done and delte to my dere pople, 1216
That none pleyne of theirre parte, o peyne of *your* lyfez.”

He comande hys cosyne, *with* knyghtlyche wordez,
To make a kyrke on *the* cragg, ther the corse lengez,
And a couent there-in, Criste for to serfe, 1220
In mynde of *that* martyre, *that* in *the* monte rystez.

A church and
convent are to
be built on the
cliff.

Qwen Sir Arthur the kyng had kyled *the* gyaunt,
Than blythely fro Bareflete he buskes one *the* morne,
With his batelle one brede, by *tha* blythe stremes ; 1224

When the giant
is slain, Arthur
moves from Bar-
flete to Castle
Blanc.

To-warde Castelle Blanke he chesez hym *the* waye,
Thurgh a faire champayne, vndyr schalke hyllis ;
The kyng fraystez a furth ouer the fresche strandez,
ffoundez *with* his faire folke ouer as hym lykez : 1228

[leaf 66, back]

ffurthe stepes that steryne, and strekez his tentis
One a strenghe by a streme, in *thas* straytt landez.

Onone aftyre myddaye, in the mene while,
Thare comez two messangers of *tha* fere marchez, 1232
fra *the* marschalle of Fraunce, and menskfully hym gretes,
Be-soghte hyme of sucour, and saide hyme *thise* wordez,—

Then come two
messengers from
the Marshal of
France, who ac-
quaint Arthur

“ Sir, *thi* marschalle, *thi* mynistre, thy mercy be-sekez,
Of thy mekille magestee, fore mendement of *thi* pople,

Of *thise* marchez-mene, that thus are myskaryede,
And thus merrede amange, maugree theirre eghne ;

I witter *the the* emperour es entirde in-to Fraunce,
With osten of enmyse, horrible and huge ; 1240

with the mischief
which the Em-
peror Lucius is
working in
France,

Brynnez in Burgoyne thy burghes so ryche,
And brittenes *thi* baronage, that bieldez *thare*-in ;

He encrochez kenely by craftez of armez,
Countrese and castelles *that* to thy corour lañgez ; 1244

seizing castles,
confounding the
commons,

Confoundez thy comouns, clergy and *other* ;
Bot thow comfurth theme, *sir* kyng, couer salle they
neuer !

He fellez forestez fele, forrayse *thi* landez,

falling forests,

- ffyrsthez no fraunchez, bot fraisez the pople ; 1248
Thus he fellez thi folke, and fangez their gudez !
 ffremedly the Franche tunge fey es be-lefede.
 He drawes in-to douce Fraunce, as Duchemen tellez,
 Dresside *with* his dragouns, dredfulle to schewe ; 1252
 Alle to dede they dyghte *with* dynttys of swerddes,
 killing dukes and douze-peers. Dukez and dusperes, *that* dreches thare-ine ;
 ffor-thy the lordez of the lande, ladys and *other*,
 Prayes the for Petyr luffe, *the* apostylle of Rome,
 Sen thow arte present in place, *that* thow wille profyre
 Therefore they desire Arthur's help. make
 To *that* perilous prynce, be processe of tyme. 1258
 He ayers by 3one hilles, 3one heghe holtez vndyr,
 Hufes thare *with* hale strenghe of haythene kynges ;
 Helpe nowe for His lufe, *that* heghe in heuene sittez,
 And talke tristly to theme, *that* thus vs destroyes !"
 He sends some of his knights to the emperour, The kyng biddis *sir* Boice, " buske the be-lyfe !
 Take *with* the *sir* Berille, and Bedwere the ryche, 1264
Sir Gawayne and *sir* Gryme, these galyarde knyghtez,
 And graythe 3owe to 3one grene wode, and gose ouer
ther nedes ;
 Saise to syr Lucius, to vn-lordly he wyrkez,
 Thus letherly agaynes law to lede my pople ; 1268
 I lette hyme or oghte lange, 3if me *the* lyffe happene,
 Or many lyghte salle lawe, *that* hyme ouere lande folowes.
 Comande hym kenely wyth crewelle wordez,
 Cayre owte of my kyngryke *with* his kydd knyghtez ;
 In caase that he wille noghte, *that* cusede wreche,
 to bid him depart out of his kingdom, or meet him in battle. Come for his curtaisie, and countere me ones ! 1274
 [leaf 67] Thane salle we rekkene fulle rathe, *whatt* ryghte *that* he
 claymes,
 Thus to ryot *this* rewme and raunsone the pople !
 Thare salle it derely be delte *with* dynttez of handez :
 The Dryghttene at Domesdaye dele as hyme lykes !"
 The knights go on their errand glittering in gold upon great steeds. Now thei graythe theme to goo, theis galyarde knyghttez,
 Alle gleterande in golde, appone grete stedes, 1280
 To-warde *the* grene wode, *that* *with* growndene wapyne,

To grete wele the grett lorde, that wolde be grefede sone.

This hende houez on a hille by *the* holte eynes,
 Be-helde *the* howsyng full of hathene kynges—
 They herde in theire herbergage hundreth full many,
 Hornez of olyfantez full helych blawene—
 Palaisez proudliche pyghte, *that* palyd ware ryche,
 Of palle and of purple, wyth precyous stones; 1288
 Pensels and pomelle of ryche prynce armez,
 Fighte in *the* playne mede, *the* pople to schewe.

They see the lux-
 urious camp of
 the heathen
 kings,

And thane the Romayns so ryche had arayed their
 tentez, and the rich tents
 of the Romans.

On rawe by *the* ryuere, vndyr *the* round hillez, 1292
 The emperour for honour ewyne in the myddes,
 Wyth egles al ouer ennelled so faire :

And saw hyme and *the* sowdane, and senatours many,
 Seke to-warde a sale with sextene kynges, 1296
 Syland softly in, swettly by theme selfene,

The Roman em-
 peror and the
 sultan are going
 to banquet toge-
 ther.

To sowpe withe *that* soueraygne, full selcouthe metez.
 Nowe they wende ouer the watyre, *thise* wyrchipfulle
 knyghttez,

Thurgh *the* wode to *the* wone, there the wyese rystez;
 Reght as *they* hade weschene, and went to *the* table,
 Sir Wawayne *the* worthethy vn-wynly he spekes,—
 “The myghte *and* *the* maiestee, *that* menskes vs alle,
 That was merked and made thurgh *the* myghte of Hym
 seluene, 1304

The knights pre-
 sent themselves.
 Sir Gawaine de-
 livers the mes-
 sage,

Gyffe 3ow sytte in 3our sette, Sowdane and *other*,
 That here are semblede in sale, vn-sawghte mott 3e
 worthe !

And *the* fals heretyke, *that* emperour hym callez,
 That occupyes in erreure the empyre of Rome, 1308
 Sir Arthure herytage, *that* honourable kyng,
 That alle his auncestres aughte bot Vtere hyme one,
 That ilke cursyng *that* Cayme kaghte for his brothyre,
 Cleffe one *the*, cukewalde, with croune ther thow lengez,
 ffor the vnlordlyeste lede *that* I on lukede euer ! 1313

and upbraids with
 haughty words
 the Roman em-
 peror;

My lorde meruailles hym mekyll, mane, be my trouthe,

Why thow morthires his mene, *that* no mysse serues,
 Comouns of *the* countré, clergye and *other*, 1316
That are noghte coupable *ther*-in, ne knawes noght in
 armez.

bids him depart,
 or do battle with
 [leaf 67, back]
 the king.

ffor-thi the comelyche kyng, curtays and noble,
 Comandez *the* kenely to kaire of his landes,
 Ore elles for thy knyghthede encontre hyme ones ; 1320
 Sen *thow* couettes the coroune, latte it be declarede !
 I hafe dyschargide me here, chalange whoo lykez,
 Be-fore alle thy cheualrye, cheftaynes and *other*.

Then he asks for
 an answer.

Schape vs an ansuere, and schunte *thow* no lengere,
That we may schifte at *the* schorte, and schewe to my
 lorde." 1325

The emperor
 replies,

The emperour ansuerde wyth austeryne wordez,
 "Ze are *with* myne enemy, sir Arthure hyme seluene !
 It es none honour to me to owtray hys knyghttez,
Thoghe ze bee irous mene, *that* ayres one his nedez ;
 Bot say to thy soueraygne, I send hyme *thes* wordez,
 Ne ware it for reuerence of my ryche table,

threatening the
 knights for their
 audacity.

Thou sulde repent fulle rathe of *thi* ruyde wordez ! 1332
 Siche a rebawde as *thowe* rebuke any lordez,
 Wyth their retenuz arrayede, fulle realle *and* noble !

He will stay in
 Arthur's land as
 long as he pleases,

Here wille I suggourne, whilles me lefe thynkes,
 And sythene seke in by Sayne *with* solace *ther*-aftere ;
 Ensege all *tha* cetese be *the* salte strandez, 1337
 And seyne ryde in by Rone, *that* rynnez so faire,

and destroy his
 cities and castles.

And of alle his ryche castelles rusche doune *the* wallez ;
 I salle noghte lefe in Paresche, by processe of tyme,
 His parte of a pechelyne, proue whene hyme lykes !"

Whereupon Sir
 Gawaine desires
 himself to fight
 with him,

"Now, certez," sais *sir* Wawayne, "myche wondyre
 haue I, 1342

That syche an alfyne as *thow* dare speke syche wordez !
 I had leuer thene alle Fraunce, *that* heuede es of rewmes,
 ffyghte *with* the faythefully one felde be oure one."

but Sir Gayous,
 uncle to the
 Roman emperor,
 answers and
 charges the Brit-
 ish knights with
 being braggarts.

Thane answers *sir* Gayous fulle gobbede wordes,—
 Was eme to *the* emperour, and erle hyme selfene,—
 "Euere ware *thes* Bretouns braggers of olde ! 1348

Loo ! how he brawles hyme for hys bryghte wedes,
As he myghte bryttynne vs alle with his brande ryche !
3itt he berkes myche boste, 3one boy there he standes !”

Thane greuyde *sir* Gawayne at his grett wordes, 1352
Graythes to-warde *the* gome with grucchande herte ;
With hys stelyne brande he strykes of hys heuede,
And sterttes owtte to hys stede, and with his stale
wendes !

On this *Sir* Gawayne rushes at him and strikes off his head.

Thurghe *the* wacches *they* wente, thes wirchipulle
knyghtez, 1356

Then the British knights fly with all speed.

And fyndez in there fare-waye wondyrlyche many ;
Ouer *the* watyre *they* wente by wyghtnesse of horses,
And tuke wynde as *they* walde by *the* wodde hemmes.
Thane folous frekly one fote frekkes ynewe, 1360

And of *the* Romayns arrayed appone ryche stedes,
Chasade thurghe a champayne oure cheualrous knyghtez,
Tille a cheefe forest, one schalke whitte horses.

The Romans give chase.

Bot a freke alle in fyne golde, and fretted in salle, 1364
Come forthermaste on a fresone, in flawmande wedes ;
A faire floreschte spere in fewtyre he castes,
And folowes faste one owre folke, and freschely ascryez,

Thane *sir* Gawayne the gude appone a graye stede,
He gryppes hym a grete spere, and graythely hyme hittez ;
Thurghe *the* guttez in-to *the* gorre he gyrdes hyme ewyne,
That the groundene stele glydez to his herte ! 1371

[leaf 68]
The foremost of the pursuers is slain by *Sir* Gawayne.

The gome and *the* grette horse at *the* grounde lyggez,
fulle gryselychyche gronande, for grefe of his woundez.
Thane presez a preker ine, fulle proudly arayede,
That beres alle of *pourpour*, palyde with syluer :
Byggly on a broune stede he profers fulle large. 1376

He was a paynyme of Perse *that thus* hyme persuede.
Sir Boys vn-abaiste alle he buskes hyme a-gaynes,
With a bustous launce he berez hyme thurghe,
That *the* breme and *the* brade schelde appone *the* bente
lyggez ! 1380

Another knight, a paynim of Persia, is thrust through by *Sir* Bois.

And he bryngez furtthe the blade, and bownez to his
felowez.

Sir Feltemour
seeks to avenge
Si. Gayous,

Thane *sir Feltemour* of myghte, a man mekyll praysede,
Was mouede one his manere, and manacede fulle faste;
He graythes to *sir Gawayne* graythely to wyrche, 1384
ffor grefe of *sir Gayous*, that es one grounde leuede.

but Sir Gawayne
cleaves him
asunder.

Thane *sir Gawayne* was glade; agayne hyme he rydez,
Wyth Galuth his gude swerde graythely hyme hyttez;
The knyghte one *the coursere* he cleuede in sondyre, 1388
Clenlyche fro *the croune* his corse he dyuysyde,
And thus he killez *the knyghte* with his kydd wapene!

Then a rich man
of Rome suggests
a retreat.

Than a ryche mane of Rome relyede to his byerns,—
“It salle repent vs fulle sore and we ryde forthire!
3one are bolde bosturs, that syche bale wyrkez; 1393
It be-felle hym fulle foule, that thame so fyrste namede.”

The rich Romans
return,

Thane *the riche Romayns* retournes thaire brydilles
To thaire tentis in tene, telles theire lordez
How *sir Marschalle de Mowne* es on *the monte* lefede,
ffiore-justyde at that journee, for his grett japez.
Bot thare chalez one oure mene cheuallrous knyghtez,

but five thousand
horsemen still
pursue the
knights,

ffyfe thosande folke appone faire stedes, 1400
ffaste to a foreste ouer a felle watyr,
That fillez fro *the falow* see fyfty myle large.

and fall upon
an ambush of
Britons,

Thare ware Bretons enbuschide, and banarettez noble,
Of *the cheualrye cheefe* of *the kynges chambyre*, 1404
Seese theme chāse oure mene, and changene *theire* horsez,
And choppe doune cheftaynes, that they moste chargyde.

who break out
suddenly on
them,

Thane *the enbuschement* of Bretons brake owte at ones,
Brothely at banere, and Bedwyne knyghtez, 1408
Arrestede of *the Romayns*, that by *the fyrthe* rydez,
Alle *the realeste renkes* that to Rome lengez;

with shouts of
“Arthur.”

Thay iche on *the enmyse* and egerly strykkys,
Erles of Inglande, and “Arthur!” ascryes, 1412
Thrughe brenes and bryghte scheldez, brestez they thyrle,
Bretons of the boldeste with theire bryghte swerdez.

[leaf 68, back]

The Romans are
defeated and
driven back,

Thare was Romayns ouer-redyne, and ruydly wondyde,
Arrestede as rebawdez, with ryotous knyghttez! 1416
The Romaynes owte of araye remouede at ones,
And rydes awaye in a rowtte, for reddoure it semys!

To *the* *senatour* Petyr a sandes-mane es *commyne*,
 And saide, “*sir*, *sekyrly*, *your* *seggez* are *supprysside* !”
 Than tene thowsande mene he semblede at ones,
 And sett sodanly one oure *seggez*, by *the* *salte* *strandez* ;
 Than ware Bretons abaiste, and greuede a lyttille,
 Bot ȝit the banerettez bolde, and bachellers noble, 1424
 Brekes that *battailles*¹ *with* *brestez* of stedes ;
 Sir Boice and his bolde mene myche bale wyrkes !
 The Romaynes redyes *thane*, *arrayez* *thame* better,
 And al to-ruscheez oure mene *withe* *theire* *ryste* *horsez*,
 Arestede of the richeste of *the* *Rounde* *Table*,
 Ouer-rydez oure *rerewarde*, and *grette* *rewthe* *wyrkes* !

but the Senator
 Peter sends ten
 thousand men.

Thane the Bretons on *the* *bente* *habyddez* no lengere,
 Bot fleede to *the* *foreste*, and the *feelde* *leuede* ; 1432
 Sir Berylle es borne downe and *sir* Boice takene,
 The beste of oure bolde mene *vnblythely* *wondyde* ;
 Bot ȝitt oure stale one a strenghe stotais a lyttille,
 Alle to-stonayed *with* *the* *stokes*² of *tha* *steryne* *knyghtez* ;
 Made sorowe fore *theire* *soueraygne*, *that* *so* *thare* was
 nomene,

The Britons are
 repulsed, and
 fly to the forest.

Sir Beryll is borne
 down and Sir
 Boice taken,

but again they
 make a little
 stand,

grieving for the
 loss of their
 leader, and pray
 for succour.

Be-soughte Gode of socure, sende whene hym lykyde !

Than *commez* *sir* Idrus, *armede* *vp* at alle *ryghttez*,
 Wyth fyue hundrethe mene *appone* *faire* *stedes*, 1440
 ffraynez *faste* at oure folke *freschely* *thare*-*aftyre*,
 ȝif *ther* *frendez* ware *ferre*, *that* *one* *the* *felde* *foundide*.
 Thane sais *sir* Gawayne, “so me God helpe !

Sir Idrus comes
 to their aid with
 five hundred
 men.

We hafe bene chased to daye, and chullede as hares,
 Rebuyked *with* *Romaynes* *appone* *theire* *ryche* *stedez*,
 And we lurkede *vndyr* *lec* as lowrande wreches ! 1446
 I luke *neuer* *one* *my* *lorde* *the* *dayes* of *my* *lyfe*,
 And weso lytherly *hyme* *helpe*, *that* *hyme* *so* *wel* *elykede* !”

Sir Gawaine la-
 ments the check
 which Arthur's
 men had re-
 ceived.

Thane the Bretons *brothely* *brochez* *theire* *stedez*,
 And boldly in *batelle* *appone* *the* *bent* *rydes* ; 1450
 Alle *the* *ferse* *mene* *be*-*fore* *frekly* *ascryes*,
 fferkand in *the* *foreste*, to *freschene* *thame* *selfene*.
 The Romaynes *thane* *redyly* *arrayes* *theme* *bettyre*,

The British re-
 turn to the fray.

The Romans pre-
 pare themselves
 against them.

¹ MS. *baitailles*.

² ? strokes.

One rawe on a rowm felde, reghttez theire wapyns,
By *the* ryche reuare, and rewles *the* pople ;
And with reddour *sir* Boice es in areste haldene. 1456

Now thei semblede vnsaughte by *the* salte strandez ;
Saddly theis sekere menn settys *theire* dynttez,
With lufy launcez one lofte they luyshene to-gedyres,
In Lorayne so lordlye on leppande stedes. 1460

A fierce battle
ensues.

Thare ware gomes thurghe-girde with grundyne wapynes,
Grisely gayspande with grucchande lotes !

Grete lordes of Greke greffede so hye ;

[leaf 69]

Swyftly with swerdes, they swappene there-aftyre, 1464
Swappez doune fulls sweperlye sweltande knyghtez,¹
That alle swelttez one swarthe, that they ouer-swyngene,
So many sweys in swoghe swounande att ones !

Sir Gawaine does
mighty deeds of
valour.

Syr Gaweayne the gracyous fulls graythelye he wyrkkes,
The gretteste he gretez wyth grieslye wondēs ;

Wyth Galuth he gyrdez doune fulls galyarde knyghtez,
flore greefe of *the* grett lorde so grymlye he strykez !

He rydez furthe ryallye and redely there-aftyre, 1472

Thare this realle renke was in areste haldene ;

He ryfez *the* rannke stele, he ryghttez *theire* brenez,
And restethem *the* ryche mane, and rade to his strenghes.

The Senator Peter
comes against
him,

The senatour Peter thane persewede hyme aftyre, 1476

Thurghe *the* presse of *the* pople, wyth his pryce knyghttes ;

Appertly fore *the* prysonere proues his strenghes,

Wyth prekers the proudeste that to *the* presse lengez ;

Wrothely one the wrange hande *sir* Gawayne he stryckes,

Wyth a wapene of were vnwynnly hyme hittez ; 1481

but in spite of
him Sir Gawaine
rescues Sir Boice.

The breny one *the* bakhalfe he brystez in sondyre !

Bot zit he broghte forthe *sir* Boyce, for alle *theire* bale
biernez !

Rejoiced at this
the British press
on more boldly.

Thane *the* Bretones boldely braggene *theire* tromppez,

And fore blysse of *sir* Boyce was broghte owtte of bandez,

Boldely in batelle they bere doune knyghtes ; 1486

With brandes of broune stele they brettene maylez ;

Thay stekede stedys in stoure with stelene wapynes,

¹ MS. knynghtez.

And alle stewe de wyth strenghe, *that stode theme agaynes!*

Sir Idrus fitz Ewayne thane "Arthure!" ascryeez,
 Assemblez one the senatour wyth sextene knyghttez,
 Of the sekereste mene *that to oure syde lengede.* 1492
 Sodanly in a soppe they sett in att ones,
 ffoynes faste att the fore breste with flawmande swerdez,
 And feghttes faste att the fronte freschely thare-aftyre;
 ffelles fele on the felde appone the ferrere syde, 1496
 ffey on the faire felde by tha fresche strandez.

Sir Idrus, with sixteen knights, attacks the senator,

Bot sir Idrus fytz Ewayne anters hyme seluene,
 And enters in anly, and egyrly strykez,
 Sekez to the senatour and sesez his brydille, 1500
 Vnsaughtely he saide hyme these sittande wordez,—
 "Zelde the, sir, zapely, zife thou thi lyfe zernez,
 fforegyftez that thou gyffe may, thou zeme now the selfene;
 ffore dredlez dreche thow, or droppe any wylez, 1504
 Thow salle dy this daye thorowe dyntt of my handez!"

and takes him prisoner.

"I ascente," quod the senatour, "so me Criste helpe!
 So that I be safe broghte be-fore the kyng seluene;
 Raunson me resonabillye, as I may ouer-reche, 1508
 Aftyre my renttez in Rome may redyly forthire."

The senator desires to be brought to the king.

Thane answers sir Idrus with austeryne wordez,
 "Thow salle hafe condycyone, as the kyng lykes,
 Whene thow comes to the kyth there the courte haldez;
 In caase his concelle bee to kepe the no langere, 1513
 To be killyde at his commandment his knyghttez be-fore."
 Thay ledde hyme furthe in the rowte, and lached ofe
 his wedes,

Sir Idrus answers him roughly.

[leaf 69, back]

Lefte hym wyth Lyonelle and Lowelle hys brothire.

He gives the senator into the charge of Sir Lionel and Sir Lowell.

O-lawe in the launde thane, by the lythe strandez,
 Sir Lucius lygge-mene¹ loste are fore euer!
 The senatour Peter es prysoner takyne! 1519
 Of Perce and of Porte Iaffe fulle many price knyghttez,
 And myche pople wyth alle perischede thame selfene!
 ffor presse of the passage, they plungeded² at onez!
 Thare myghte mene see Romayne rewfully wondyde,

Many of the Romans are slain.

¹ Or legge-mene.

² MS. repeats they plungeded.

Ouer-redyne with renkes of the Round Table! 1524

In *the raike of the furthe* they rightene *theire* brenys,
That rane alle one reede blode redylye alle ouer ;
 They raughte in *the rereuarde fulle ryotous knyghtez*,
 ffor raunsone¹ of rede golde and realle stedys ; 1528
 Radly relayes, and restez *theire* horsez,

The knights ride
back towards the
king, and send
him the news of
their success.

In rowtte to *the ryche kynge* they rade al at onez,

A knyghte cayrez be-fore, and to *the kynge* telles,—
 “ Sir, here *commez* thy messangerez with myrthez fro
the mountez, 1532

Thay hafe bene machede to daye with mene of *the* marchez,
 ffore-maglede in *the marras* with meruailous knyghtez !
 We hafe foughtene in faithe, by 3one fresche strandez,
 With *the frekkeste folke* that to *thi* foo langez ; 1536
 ffyfty thosannde one felde of ferse mene of armez,
 Wyth-in a furlange of waye, fay ere by-lesede !
 We hafe eschewede *this* chekke, thurgh the chance of oure

They tell him
that they have
slain ffyfy thou-
sand men,

Lorde,

Of *tha cheualrous* mene that chargede thy pople ! 1540

and taken pri-
soners the chief
chancellor and
the senator Pe-
ter, as well as
many paynims.

The cheefe chaunchelere of Rome, a cheftayne fulle noble,
 Wille aske *the* chartyre of pesse for charitee hym selfene ;
 And the *senatour* Petire to presoner es takyne.

Of Perse and of Porte Iaffe paynymmez ynewe 1544
Commez prekande in the presse, with thy prysse knyghttez,
 With pouerte in *thi* presone *theire* paynez to drye.

I be-seke 3ow, sir, say whate 3owe lykys,

Whethire 3e suffyre *thame* saughte, or sone delyuerde.

Arthur may de-
mand sixty
horse-loads of
silver for the
senator,
and for the chan-
cellor, chariots
full of gold.

3e may haue fore *the* *senatour* sextie horse chargede
 Of siluer be Seterdaye, fulle sekyrly payede,
 And for *the* cheefe chaunchelere, *the* cheualere noble,
 Charottes chokkefulle charegyde with golde ; 1552

The other pri-
soners may be
kept until their
rents are known.

The remenaunt of *the* Romayne be in areste haldene,
 Tille *thiere* renttez in Rome be rightewissly knawene.

I be-seke 3ow, sir, certyfye 3one lordez,

3if 3e wille send *thame* ouer *the* see, or kepe *thame* 3our
 selfene. 1556

¹ MS. raunsone.

Alle *your* sekyre mene for sothe sounde are by-leuyde,
 Saue *sir* Ewayne fytz Henry es in *the* side wonddede."

All Arthur's men
 have escaped,
 save Sir Ewayne,
 who is wounded.

"Crist be thankyde," *quod* the kyng, "and hys clere
 modyre,

[leaf 70]
 The king rejoices.

That *zowe* comforthede and helpede be crafte of hyme
 selfene ; 1560

Skilfulle skomfyture he skitez as hym lykez,
 Is none so skathlye may skape, ne skewe fro his handez ;

The fate of battle,
 he says, is in the
 hands of God.

Desteny and doughtynes of dedys of armes,
 Alle es demyd and delte at Dryghtynez wille ! 1564

I kwne the thanke for thy come, it comfortes vs alle !
 Sir knyghte," sais *the* conquerour, "so me Criste helpe !

He thanks the
 knight for his
 tidings, and gives
 him for reward
 the city of To-
 louse.

I *zif* the for thy thyzandez Tolouse *the* riche,
 The tolle and *the* tachmentez, *tauernez* and *other*, 1568

The towne and *the* tenementez with towrez so hye,
 That towchez to *the* temporaltee, whilles my tyme lastez.

Bot say to *the* senatour I sende hyme *thes* wordez,
 Thare salle no siluer hym saue, bot Ewayne recouere ;

The senator shall
 not be ransomed
 save Sir Ewayne
 recovers.

I had leuer see hym synke one the salte strandez,
 Than the seegge ware seke, *that* es so sore woundede ;

I salle disseuere that sorte, so me Criste helpe ! 1575
 And sett theme fulle solytarie, in sere kynggez landez ;

The others shall
 be divided into
 different coun-
 tries.

Salle he neuer sownde see his seynowres in Rome,
 Ne sitt in *the* assemblé, in syghte wyth his feris ;

ffor it comes to no kyng *that* conquerour es holdene,
 To comone with his captifis fore couatys of siluer : 1580

Arthur holds that
 to accept ransom
 becomes not a
 king.

It come neuer of knyghthede, knawe it *zif* hyme lyke,
 To carpe of coseri, whene captyfis ere takyne ;

It aughte to no presoners to prese no lordez,
 Ne come in *presens* of pryneez, whene *partyes* are mouede.

Comaunde *zone* constable, *the* castelle *that* *zemes*,
 That he be clenlyche kepede, and in close haldene ;

They are to take
 the senator to
 the constable and
 bid him keep him
 safe.

He salle haue maundement to-morme or myddaye be
 rounge, 1587

To what *marche* *thay* salle merke, with mangere to lengene."

Thay conuaye this captyfe with clene mene of armez,

And kend hyme to *the* constable, as *the* kyng byddez ;

The knights
 obey, and then

return to Arthur to give him the emperor's message.

Arthur greatly commends his knights for their boldness, and promises them rewards.

In the morning Sir Cadore and his knights are bid to take the prisoners

[leaf 70, back] to Paris, and to give them into the care of the provost.

The British knights depart towards Chartres.

But the emperor had dispatched a chosen band to intercept them.

And seyne to Arthure *they* ayre, and egerly hym towchez
The answeere of *the* emperour, irows of dedez. 1592

Thane *sir* Arthure, one erthe atheliste of *othere*,
At euene at his awene borde auantid his lordez,—

“Me aughte to honour theme in erthe ouer alle *other*
thynges,

That thus in myne absens awnters *theme* selfene ; 1596

I salle theme luffe whylez I lyffe, so me our Lorde helpe !

And gyfe *them* landys fulle large, whare *them* beste lykes ;

Thay salle noghte losse, one *this* layke, zif me lyfe happene,

That thus are lamede for my lufe be *this* lythe strandez.”

Bot in *the* clere daweyng, *the* dere kynge hym selfene

Comaundyd *sir* Cadore with his dere knyghttes,

Sir Cleremus, *sir* Cleremonde, with clene mene of armez,

Sir Clowdmur, *sir* Clegis, to conuaye theis lordez ; 1604

Sir Boyce and *sir* Berelle with baners displayede,

Sir Bawdwyne, *sir* Bryane, and *sir* Bedwere *the* ryche,

Sir Raynalde and *sir* Richere, Rawlaunde chilydre,

To ryde with *the* Romaynes in rowtwe wyth theire feres.

“Prekez now preualye to Parys *the* ryche,

Wyth Petir the pryssonere and his price knyghttez ;

Be-teche *tham* *the* proueste, in presens of lordez,

O payne and o perelle *that* pendes there-too, 1612

That they be weisely wachede and in warde holdene,

Wardede of warantizez with wyrchipfulle knyghttez ;

Wagge hyme wyghte mene, and woonde for no siluyre ;

I haffe warnede *that* wy, be ware zife hyme lykes !”

Now bownes *the* Bretones, als *the* kynge byddez, 1617

Buskez theire batelles, theire baners displayez ;

To-wardez Chartris they chese, thes cheualrous knyghttez,

And in the champayne lande fulle faire *thay* eschewede :

ffor *the* emperour of myghte had ordande hym selfene

Sir Vtolfe and *sir* Ewandyre, two honourable kyngez,

Erles of *the* Oriente, with austeryne knyghttez,

Of *the* awntrouseste mene *that* to his oste lengede, 1624

Sir Sextynour of Lyby and senatours many,

The kyng of Surrye hym selfe with Sarzynes ynowe,
 The senatour of Sutare wyth sowmes fulle huge, 1627
 Whas assygnede to *that* courte be sent of his peres,
 Traise to-warde Troys *the tresone*¹ to wyrke,
 To hafe be-trappede with a trayneoure *trauelande*
 knyghttez,

That hade persayfede *that* Peter at Parys sulde lenge,
 In *presonne* with *the* prouoste, his paynez to drye. 1632
 ffor-thi they buskede theme bownne with baners dis-
 playede,

In the buskayle of his waye, on blonkkes fulle hugge ;
 Planttez theme in the pathe with powere arrayede,
 To pyke vp *the* presoners fro oure pryse knyghttez.

They take up a
 position in the
 path of Arthur's
 men.

Syr Cadore of Cornewalle comaundez his peris, 1637
 Sir Clegis, *sir Cleremus, sir Cleremownde* *the* noble,
 "Here es *the* close of Clyme with clewes so hye ;
 Lokez the contree be clere, the corners are large ; 1640
 Discoueres now sekerly skrogges and *other*,

Sir Cadore keeps
 a sharp look out,

That no skathelle in *the* skroggez skorne vs here-aftyre ;
 Loke 3e skyfte it so *that* vs no skathe lympe,
 ffor na skomfitoure in skoulkery is skomfite euer." 1644

Now *they* hye to *the* holte, thes harageous knyghttez,
 N To herkene of *the* hye mene to helpene theis lordes ;
 ffyndez theme helmede hole and horsesyde on stedys,
 Houande one *the* hye waye by *the* holte hemmes. 1648

and discovers the
 enemy, armed
 and mounted,
 waiting by the
 skirts of a wood.

With knyghttly contenance Sir Clegis hym selfene
 Kryes to *the* companye, and carpes thees wordez,—

"Es there any kyde knyghte, kaysere or *other*,
 Wille kyth for his kyng lufe craftes of armes ? 1652

Sir Clegis chal-
 lenges any knight
 among them to
 the combat.

We are comene fro *the* kyng of *this* lythe ryche,
 That knawene es for conquerour, corownde in erthe,
 His ryche retenuz here alle of his Round Table,
 To ryde with *that* realle in rowtt where hyme lykes ;
 We seke justynge of werre, 3if any wille happyne, 1657
 Of *the* jolyeste mene ajuggede be lordes ;

¹ MS. *the tresone* the tresone.

[leaf 71]

An earl of the Roman party upbraids Arthur and his knights.

If here be any hathelle mane, erle or *other*,
That for *the* emperour lufe wille awntere hym selfene."
And ane erle *thane* in angere answeres hym sone,—
"Me angers at Arthure, and att his hathelle bierns,
That thus in his errorr occupyes theis rewmes;
And owtrayes *the* emperour, his erthely lorde! 1664
The araye and *the* ryalltez of *the* Rounde Table
Es wyth rankour rehersed in rewmes fulle many;
Of oure renttez of Rome syche reuelle he haldys,
He¹ salle 3ife resoune fulle rathe, 3if vs reghte happene,
That many salle repente that in his rowtte rydez, 1669
ffor the reklesse roy so rewlez hym selfene!"

Sir Clegis answers him,

"A!" sais *sir* Clegis *thane*, "so me Criste helpe!
I knawe be thi carpynge a cowntere *the* semes!
Bot be *thou* auditoure, or erle, or emperour thi selfene,
Appone *Arthurez* by-halue I answer the sone: 1674
The renke so realle, *that* rewlez vs alle,
The ryotous mene and *the* ryche of *the* Rounde Table,
He has araysede his accownte, and redde alle his rollez,
ffor he wyll gyfe a rekenyng that rewe salle aftyre,
That alle *the* ryche salle repeinte *that* to Rome langez,
Or *the* rereage be requit² of renttez *that* he claymez!
We crafe of *3our* curtaisie three coursez of werre, 1681
And claymez of knyghthode, take kepe to *3our* selfene!
3e do bott trayne vs to daye wyth trefelande wordez!
Of syche *trauaylande* mene trecherye me thynkes! 1684
Sende owte sadly certayne knyghttez,
Or say me sekerly sothe, for-sake 3if 3owe lykes."

and boasts that he will punish well the Romans.

He desires three courses of war with any knights whom they will send.

The king of Syria insinuates that Sir Clegis may not be of noble ancestry.

Tthane sais *the* kyng of Surry, "Alls saue me oure
Lorde!
3if *thow* hufe alle *the* daye, *thou* bees noghte delyuere,
Bot *thow* sekerly ensure wyth certeyne knyghttez, 1689
That *thi* cote and *thi* breste be knawene with lordez,
Of armes of ancestry, entyrde with londez."

Sir Clegis replies scornfully

"Sir kyng," sais *sir* Clegys, "fulle knyghttly *thow* askez:
I trowe it be for cowardys *thow* carpes *thes* wordez:

¹ MS. Ne.

² Looks like requiter in MS.

Myne armez are of ancestrye enueryde with lordez,
 And has in banere bene borne sene *sir Brut* tyme ;
 At the cité of Troye *that tyme* was ensegede, 1696
 Ofte scene in asawtte with certayne knyghttez,
 ffor *the* Borighte broghte vs and alle oure boldé elders,
 To Bretayne *the* braddere, with-in chippe-burdez."

that his ancestors
 were at the siege
 of Troy.

"Sir," sais *sir Sextenour*, "saye what *the* lykez,
 And we salle suffyre the, als vs beste semes ; 1701
 Luke thi troumppez be trussede, and trofulle no lengere,
 ffor *thoghe thou* tarye alle *the* daye, the tyddes no bettyr !
 ffor there salle neuer Romaine, *that* in my rowtt rydez,
 Be with rebawdez rebuykyde, whills I in werlde regne !"

Sir Sextenour
 declares that the
 Romans are
 ready for the
 fray.

Thane *sir Clegis* to *the* kyng a lyttille enclinede,
 Kayres to *sir Cadore*, and knyghtly hym tellez,— 1707
 "We hafe foundene in 3one firtle, floreschede with leues,
The flour of *the* faireste folke *that* to *thi* foo langez,
 fifty thosandez of folke of ferse mene of armez,
That faire are fewteride on frounte vndyr 3one fre bowes ;
 They are enbuschede one blonkkes, with baners dis-
 playede, 1712

Sir Clegis tells
 Sir Cador that a
 vast number of
 the enemy are
 drawn up in the
 wood,

[leaf 71, back]

In 3one bechene wode appone the waye sydes.
 They hafe the furthe for-sette alle of *the* faire watyre,
 That fayfully of force feghte vs byhowys ;
 ffor thus vs schappes to daye, schortly to telle, 1716
 Whedyre we schone or schewe, schyft as *the* lykes."

and suggests a
 retreat.

"Nay," *quod* Cador, "so me Criste helpe !
 It ware schame *that* we scholde schone for so lytylle !

Sir Cador scorns
 to retreat.

Sir Lancelott salle neuer laughe, *that* with *the* kyng
 lengez, 1720

Never shall Sir
 Lancelot laugh
 at him.

That I sulde lette my waye for lede appone erthe ;
 I salle be dede and vndone ar I here dreche,
 ffor drede of any doggesone in 3one dyme schawes !"

He will die be-
 fore he turn back
 for any dog's son
 of them all.

Syr Cador thane knyghtly comforthes his pople, 1724
 And with corage kene he karpes *thes* wordes,—

Sir Cador exhorts
 his men, and tells
 them of the good
 deeds of Arthur.

"Thynk one *the* valyaunt prynce *that* vesettez vs euer,
 With landez and lordcheppez, whare vs beste lykes ;
 That has vs ducherés delte, and dubbyde vs knyghttez,

Gifene vs gersoms and golde, and gardwynes many,
 Grewhoundez and grett horse, and alkyne gamnes,
 That gaynez till any gome, that vndyre God leuez ;
 Thynke one riche renoune of *the* Rounde Table, 1732
 And late it neuer be refte vs fore Romaine in erthe ;
 ffeyne 3ow noghte feyntly, ne frythes no wapyns,
 Bot luke 3e fyghte faythefully, frekes 3our selfene ;
 I walde be wellyde alle qwyke, and quarterde in sondre,
 Bot I wyrke my dede, whils I in wrethe lenge." 1737

He dubs some of
 them knights.

Than this doughtty duke dubbyd his knyghttez,
 Ioneke and Askanere, Aladuke and *other*,
 That ayerez were of *Esexe*, and alle *thase* este marchez ;
 Howelle and Hardelfe, happy in armez, 1741
 Sir Herylle and sir Herygalle, *thise* harageouse knyghttez.
 Than the souerayne assignede certayne lordez,
 Sir Wawayne, *sir* Vryelle, sir Bedwere *the* ryche, 1744
 Raynallde and Richeere, and Rowlandez chilydre,—

To certain of
 them he gives
 the prisoner in
 charge.

If he is defeated,
 they are to con-
 vey him to some
 castle, or to Ar-
 thur.

"Takez kepe one this prynce *with* 3oure price knyghtez,
 And 3ife we in *the* stour withstondene the better,
 Standez here in this stede, and stirrez no forthire ; 1748
 And 3if *the* chaunce falle *that* we bee ouer-charggede,
 Eschewes to some castelle, and chewyse 3our selfene ;
 Or ryde to *the* riche kyng 3if 3ow roo happyne, 1751
 And bidde hym come redily to rescewe hys biernez."

The British pre-
 pare for the fight.

And than the Bretons brothely enbrassez *theire*
 scheldez,

Braydez one bacenetez, and buskes *theire* launcez.
 Thus he fitez his folke, and to *the* felde rydez,
 ffif hundreth one a frounte fewtrede at onez ! 1756

[leaf 72]

With trompes *thay* trine, and trappede stedes,
 With cornettes and clarions, and clergialle notes ;

The fight begins.

Schokkes in *with* a schakke, and schontez no langere,
 There schawes ware scheene vndyr *the* schire eynez.
 And thane the Romainez rowtte remowes a lyttille,
 Raykes *with* a rerewarde *thas* realle knyghttez ; 1762
 So raply *thay* ryde thare, that alle *the* rowte rynges,
 Of ryues and rannke stele, and ryche golde maylez.

- Thane schotte owtte of *the* schawe schilttrounis many,
 With scharpe wapyms of were schotande at ones :
- The kynge of Lebe be-fore the wawarde he ledez,
 And alle his lele lige mene o laundone ascriez. 1768 The king of Lebe leads on the enemy.
- Thane this cruelle kynge castis in fewtire,
 Kaghte hym a couerde horse, and his course haldez,
 Beris to *sir* Berille, and brathely hym hittes,
 Throwghe golet and gorgere he hurtez hym ewyne ! He attacks Sir Berill and slays him.
- The gome and *the* grette horse at *the* grounde liggez,
 And gretez graythely to Gode, and gyffes hym *the* saule !
 Thus es Berelle the bolde broghte owtte of lyue,
 And byddez aftyre beryelle, *that* hym beste lykez. 1776
- And thane *sir* Cador of Cornewayle es carefulle in herte,
 Be-cause of his kynyse-mane, *that thus* es myscaryede ; Sir Cador is overwhelmed with grief for his loss.
- Vmbeclappes the cors, and kyssez hyme ofte,
 Gerte kepe hym couerte with his clere knyghttez. 1780
- Thane laughs the Lebe kynge, and alle on lowde meles, — The king of Lebe ridicules him.
 “*3*one lorde es lyghttede ! me lykes the bettyre !
 He salle noghte dere vs to daye, the deuylle haue [his]
 bones !”
- “*3*one kynge,” said Cador, “karpes fulle large, 1784
 Be-cause he killyd *this* kene ; Criste hafe *thi* saule !
 He salle hafe corne hote, so me Criste helpe !
 Or I kaire of *this* coste, we salle encontre ones ! Sir Cador vows vengeance.
 So may *the* wynde weile turnne, I quytte hym or ewyne,
 Sothely hym selfene, or summ of his ferez !” 1789
- Thane *sir* Cador *the* kene knyghttly he wyrkez,
 Cryez, “A ! Cornewale,” and castez in fewtere,
 Girdez streke thourghe *the* stour on a stede ryche ! He performs great deeds of valour.
 Many steryne mane he steride by strenghe of hyme one !
 Whene his spere was sprongene, he spede hym fulle *3*erne,
 Swappede owtte with a swerde, that swykede hym neuer, When his lance is broken he fights with his sword.
 Wroghte wayes fulle wyde, and wounded knyghttez ;
 Wyrkez his ine wayfare fulle werkand sydez, 1797
 And hewes of *the* hardieste halsez in sondyre,
 That alle blendez with blode thare his blanke rynnez !
 So many biernez the bolde broghte owt of lyfe, 1800

- Tittez tirauntez doune, and temez¹ theire sadilles,
And turnez owte of *the* toile, whene hym tymethynkkez !
Then the king of Lebe ironically praises his deeds. Thane the Lebe kynge criez fulle lowde
One *sir* Cador the kene, with cruelle wordez, 1804
[leaf 72, back] "Thowe hase wyrchipe wonne, and wondyde knyghttez !
Thowe wenes fore thi wightenez the werlde es thy
nowene !
I salle wayte at thyne honnde, wy, be my trowthe !
I haue warnede *the* wele, be ware ȝif the lykez !" 1808
The new-made knights, with sound of trumpets and spears in rest, rush to the fray. With cornuse and clariones *theis* newe made knyghttez
Lythes vn-to *the* crye, and castez in fewtire ;
fferkes in one a ffrounte one fferaunte stedez,
fellede at *the* fyrste come fyfty att ones ! 1812
Schotte thorowe the schiltrouns, and scheuere de launcez,
Laid doune in *the* lumppe lordly biernez !
And thus nobilly oure newe mene notez *theire* strenghez.
Bot new notte es onone *that* noyes me sore. 1816
The king of Lebe comes against them. The kynge of Lebe has laughte a stede *that* hym lykede,
And comes in lordely in lyonez of siluere,
Vmbelapez *the* lumpe, and lattes in sondre ;
Many lede with his launce *the* liffe has he refede ! 1820
He makes great havoc among the new men. Thus he chaces *the* childire of *the* kyngez chambire,
And killez in *the* champanyse cheualrous knyghttez !
With a chasyngge spere he choppes doune many ! 1823
There was *sir* Alyduke slayne, and Achinour wondyde,
Sir Origge and *sir* Ermyngalle hewene al to pecez !
And ther was Lewlyne laughte, and Lewlyns brothire,
With lordez of Lebe, and lede to *theire* strenghez :
Ne hade *sir* Clegis comene, and Clemente *the* noble,
Oure newe mene hade gone to noghte, and many ma
other.
Had not Sir Clegis and Sir Clement come, the new men had gone to nought. Then Sir Cador puts his lance in rest, and strikes the king of Lebe fair on the helmet. **T**hane *sir* Cador *the* kene castez in fewtire 1830
A cruelle launce and a kene, and to *the* kynge rydez,
Hittez hym heghe one *the* helme with his harde wapene,
That alle *the* hotte blode of hym to his hande rynnez !
The heathen king fails to the The hethene harageous kynge appone *the* hethe lyggez,

¹ MS. repeats and temez.

- And of his hertly hurte helyde he neuer !
 Thane *sir Cador the* kene cryez fulle lowde,— 1836
 “Thow has corne botte, *sir* kynge, *thare* God gyfe *the*
 sorowe,
 Thow killyde my cosyne, my kare es the lesse !
 Kele the nowe in the claye, and comforthe thi selfene !
 Thow skornede vs lang ere *with* thi skornefulle wordez,
 And nowe has *thow* cheuede soo ; it es thyne awene
 skateh !
 Holde at *thow* hente has, it harmez bot lyttille,
 ffor hethynge es hame holde, vse it who so wille.”
- The kyng of Surry *thane* es sorowfulle in herte, 1844
 T ffor sake of this soueraygne, *that thus* was supprisede ;
 Semblede his Sarazenes, and *senatours* manye :
 Vnsaughtly *they* sette *thane* appone oure sere knyghttez ;
 Sir Cador of Cornewaile he cownterez theme sone, 1848
 With his kydde companye clenlyche arrayede ;
 In the frount of *the* fyrthe, as *the* waye forthis,
 ffyfty thosande of folke was fellide at ones !
 There was at *the* assemblé certayne knyghttez, 1852
 Sore wondede sone appone sere halfes ;
 The sekereste Sarzanez that to *that* sorte lengede,
 Be-hynde the sadylles ware sette sex fotte large ;
 They scherde in the schiltrone scheldyde knyghttez,
 Schalkes they schotte thrughe schrenkande maylez,
 Thunghe brenys browdene brestez they thirlede,
 Brasers burnyste bristez in sondyre ;
 Blasons blode and blankes they hewene, 1860
 With brandez of browne stele brankkand stedez !
 The Bretones brothely brittenez so many,
 The bente and *the* brode felde alle one blode rynnys !
 Be *thane* *sir* Cayous *the* kene a capitayne has wonnene,
 Sir Clegis clynges in, and clekes another ; 1865
 The capitayne of Cordewa, vndire *the* kynge selfene,
 That was keye of *the* kythe of alle *that* coste ryche,
 Vtolfe and Ewandre, Ioneke had nommene, 1868
 With *the* erle of Affryke and *other* grette lordes.

ground mortally wounded.

Sir Cador triumphs over him.

The king of Syria, full of grief, assembles his Saracens for vengeance.

Sir Cador and his men slay fifty thousand of them at once.

Certain knights are sorely wounded [leaf 73] ed by the Saracens.

The fight rages furiously.

The field runs blood.

Sir Clegis takes prisoner the captain of Cordova.

Sir Cador takes
the king of Syria.

The kynge of Surry the kene to *sir* Cador es zeldene,¹
The synechalle of Sotere to Segramoure hym selfene.

The Romans fly
into the forest.

When *the* cheualrye saw theire cheftanes were nommene,
To a cheefe foreste they chesene theire wayes, 1873
And felede theme so feynthe, they falle in *the* greues,
In the ferynne of *the* fyrthe, fore ferde of oure pople.

Arthur's men
slay many of
them there.

Thare myght mene see the ryche ryde in the schawes,
To rype vpe the Romaynez ruydlyche wondyde, 1877
Schowttes aftyre mene, harageous knyghttez,
Be hundrethez they hewede doune be *the* holte eynys!

A few escape to
a castle.

Thus oure cheualrous mene chasesz *the* pople; 1880
To a castelle they eschewede a fewe *that* eschappede.

Arthur's knights
seek for their
companions who
are slain.

Thane relyez *the* renkez of *the* Rounde Table,
ffor to ryotte *the* wode, *ther* the duke restez;
Ransakes the ryndez alle, raughte vp thaire feres, 1884
That in *the* fightynge be-fore fay ware by-leuyde.

Sir Cador bids
them carry them
to the king.

Sir Cador garte chate theym, and couere theme faire,
Kariede theme to *the* kynge with his beste knyghttez;
And passez vn-to Paresche with presoners hym selfene,
Be-toke theyme the proueste, pryncez and *other*; 1889
Tase a sope in the toure, and taryez no langere,
Bot tournes tytte to *the* kynge, and hym wyth tunge telles.

Then he tells him
of the case that
has befallen.

“Syr,” sais *sir* Cador, “a caas es be-fallene; 1892

We hafe cownterede to day, in zone coste ryche
With kyngez and kayseres, krouelle and noble,
And knyghtes and kene men clenlych arayed!

They have fought
and slain many.

Thay hade at zone foreste forsette vs *the* wayes, 1896
At the furthe in *the* fyrthe, with ferse mene of armes;
Thare faughtte we in faythe, and foynede with sperys,
One felde with thy foo-mene, and fellyd theme on lyfe.

[leaf 73, back]

The kynge of Lebe es laide, and in *the* felde leuyde,
And manye of his lege mene *that* yare to hym langede!
Other lordez are laughte of vncouthe ledes; 1902
We hafe lede them at lenge, to lyf whittes *the* lykez.

Divers of their
best knights are
faken prisoners,

Sir Vtere and *sir* Ewaynedyre, theis honourable
knyghttez,

¹ zeldene.

Be a nawntere of armes Ioneke has *nommene*,
 With erlez of *the Oryentte*, and *austerene knyghttez*,
 Of awncestrye *the beste mene that to the oste langede* ;
 The *senatour Barouns* es kaughte with a *knyghtte*,
 The *capitayne of Cornette*, that *crewelle es haldene*,
 The *syneschalle of Sutare vnsaughte wyth thes other*,
 The *kyng of Surry hym selfene*, and *Sarazenes*. 1911

the senator
Barouns, the
king of Syria, the
seneschal of
Suter.

Bot fay of ours in *the felde a fourtene knyghttez*,
 I willenoghte feynene forbere, bot faythfully tellene ;

But of Arthur's
knights fourteen
are slain.

Sir Berelle es one, a *banerette noble*,
 Was killyde at *the fyrste come with a kyng ryche* ;
 Sir Alidoyke of *Towelle*, with his *tende knyghtez*, 1916
Emange the Turkys was tynte, and in tyme *fondene* ;
 Gude sir *Mawrelle of Mauncez*, and *Mawrene his brother*,
 Sir *Meneduke of Mentoche*, with *meruailous knyghttez*."

Sir Berill was
killed at the
beginning of the
fray.

Thane the worthy kyng wythes, and wepede with
 his eghne¹, 1920

Then Arthur is
grieved,

Karpes to his cosyne *sir Cador* theis wordez,—

"Sir Cador, thi corage confunde vs alle !

and speaks to his
cousin Sir Cador
bitter words.

Kowardely thow castez owtte alle my beste knyghttez !
 To putte mene in *perille*, it es no pryce holdene, 1924
 Bot *the partyes* ware *puruayede*, and *powere arayed* ;
 When they ware stade on a *strenghe*, *thou sulde hafe*
with-stondene,

Bot *3if thowe wolde alle my steryne stroye fore thenonys* !"

"Sir," sais *sir Cador*, "*3e knowe wele 3our selfene* ;
 3e are kyng in *this kytte*, karpe whatte 3ow lykys !
 Salle *neuer vpbrayde me*, *that to thi burde langes*, 1930
 That I sulde blyne fore their boste, thi byddyng to
 wyrche ;

Sir Cador replies
with dignity.

Whene any stirttez to stale, stuffe *thame the bettere*,
 Ore thei wille be *stonayede*, and *stroyede in 3one strayte*
londez. 1933

I dide my delygens to daye, I doo me one lordez,
 And in daungere of dede fore *dyuerse knyghttez*,
 I hafe no *grace to thi gree*, bot syche grett wordez ; 1936

He has only done
his duty,

but is ill repaid
by such hard
words.

¹ MS. eughne.

3if I heuen my herte, my hape es no bettyre."

Then Arthur re-
tracts.
He acknowledges
Caïor has done
his duty.

3ose *sir* Arthure ware angerde, he ansuers faire,
"Thow has doughttily donne, *sir* duke, with thi handez,
And has donne thy deuer with my dere knyghttez ;
ffor-thy thow arte demyde, with dukes and erlez, 1941
ffor one of *the* doughtyeste that dubbede was euer !

He is one of the
bravest of the
brave,
and heir apparent
to the throne.

[leaf 74]

Then he makes a
noble feast in his
own tent for the
knights who
were engaged in
the fight.

Thare es none ischewe of vs, on this erthe sprongene ;
Thow arte apparant to be ayere, are one of thi childyre ;
Thow arte my sister sone, for-sake salle I neuer !" 1945

Thane gerte he in his awene tente a table he sette,
And tryede in with trompez trauaillede biernez ;
Serfede them solempnely with selkouthe metez, 1948
Swythe semly in syghte with syluerene dischees.

But the senators
of Rome tell the
emperor of the
defeat of his men.

Whene the *senatours* harde saye that it so happenede,
They saide to *the emperour*, "thi seggez are suppryssede !
Sir Arthure, thyne enmy has owterayed *thi* lordez,
That rode for *the* rescowe of 3one riche knyghttez ! 1953
Thow dosse bot tynnez *thi* tyme, and turmenttez *thi* pople ;

He has been be-
trayed by those
he trusted most.

Thow arte be-trayed of *thi* mene, that moste thow on
traystede.

Then the em-
peror is very
wroth.

That schalle turne the to tene and torfere for euer." 1956
Than the *emperour* irus was angerde at his herte,
ffor oure valyant biernez siche prowesche had wonnene.
With kyngge and with kaysere to consayle they wende,
Souerayngez of *Sarazenez*, and *senatours* manye ; 1960

He assembles a
council of war.

Thus he semblez fulle sone certayne lordez,
And in the assemble thane he sais them theis wordez,—

He tells them his
purpose to go
into Saxony,

" My herte sothely es sette, assente 3if 3owe lykes,
To seke in-to *Sexone*, with my sekyre knyghttez, 1964
To fyghte with my foo-mene, if fortune me happene,
3if I may fynde the freke with-in the fourz haluez ;

and enter into
Augusta,

Or entire in-to *Awguste* awnters to seke, 1967
And byde with my balde mene with-in *the* burghes ryche ;

to riot and revel
till the arrival of
Sir Leo and the
lords of Lom-
bardy.

Riste vs and reuelle, and ryotte oure selfene,
Lende thare in delytte in *lordechippe*z ynewe,
To *sir* Leo be comene with alle his lele knyghttez, 1971
With lordez of *Lumberdye*, to lette hyme *the* wayes."

- B**ot owre wyese kyng es warre to wayttene his renkes,
 And wyesly by *the* woddez voydez his oste ;
 Gerte felschene his fyrez, flawmande fulle heghe,
 Trussene fulle traystely, and treunt there-aftyre. 1976
Sethene in-to Sessoyne, he soughte at the gayneste,
 And at the surs of *the* sonne disseuerez his knyghttez :
 fforsette theme the cité appone sere halfez,
 So-daynly on iche halfe, with seuene grett stales. 1980
 Anely in the vale a vawewarde enbusches ;
 Sir Valyant of Vyleris, with valyant knyghttez,
 Be-fore *the* kynggez visage made siche avowez,
 To venquyse by victorie the vescuownte of Rome ! 1984
 ffor-thi the kyngge chargez hym, what chaunce so be-falle,
 Cheftayne of *the* cheekke, with cheualrous knyghttez,
 And sythyne meles with mouthe, *that* he moste traistez ;
 Demenys the medylwarde menskfully hym selfene,
 ffittes his fote-mene, affs hym faire thynkkes ; 1989
 On frounte in the fore breste, the flour of his knyghtez,
 His archers on aythere halfe he ordaynede *ther*-aftyre
 To schake in a sheltroñe, to schotte whene *thame* lykez ;
 He arrayed in *the* rerewarde fulle rialle knyghtez,
 With renkkes renownnd of *the* Rounde Table,
 Sir Raynalde, sir Richere, that rade was neuer,
 The riche duke of Rowne wyt[h] ryders ynewe ; 1996
 Sir Cayous, sir Clegis, and clene mene of armes,
 The kyng castes to kepe be *thaa* clere strands.
 Sir Lott and *sir* Launcelotte, *thise* lordly knyghttez,
 Salle lenge on his lefte hande, wyth legyones ynewe,
 To meue in *the* morne-while, 3if *the* myste happynne ;
 Sir Cador of Cornewaile, and his kene knyghtez,
 To kepe at *the* karfuke, to close in *ther* *othere* :
 He plantez in siche placez pryncez and erlez, 2004
 That no powere sulde passe be no *preué* wayes.
- B**ot the emperour onone, with honourable knyghtez
 And erlez, enteres the vale, awnters to seke,
 And fyndez sir Arthure with hostez arayede ; 2008
 And at his in-come, to ekkene his sorowe,

King Arthur, getting intelligence of this, withdraws his men secretly by the woods ;

takes the shortest road into Saxony ;

suddenly besets the city with seven bands.

Sir Valiant makes a vow to vanquish the viscount of Rome.

The king gives him command of the vanguard ;

he himself directs the centre.

He arranges the archers on either flank ;
 [leaf 74, back]

places renowned knights for a rearguard.

Sir Lott and Sir Lancelot command a band on the left hand, which is to move in the mist of early morning. Sir Cador and his men are to keep guard over the passes.

The emperor and his knights quickly enter the vale in search of adventures. He finds Arthur's host drawn up in battle array,

Oure burlyche bolde kynge appone the bente howes,
 With his bataile one brede, and baners displayede.
 He hade *the* ceté for-sett appone sere halfes, 2012
 Bothe the clewez and *the* clyfez with clene mene of armez!
 The mosse and *the* marrasse, the mounttez so hye,
 With gret multytude of mene, to marre hym in *the*
 wayes.

and all the posi-
 tions occupied.

Whene *sir* Lucius sees, he sais to his lordez, 2016

Then Sir Lucius
 declares with
 wrath that there
 is no way else but
 to fight, for fly
 he may not.

"This traytour has treunt this tresone to wyrche!
 He has the ceté forsett appone sere halfez,
 Alle *the* clewez and the cleyffez with clene mene of armez!
 Here es no waye i-wys, ne no wytt elles, 2020
 Bot feghte with oure foo-mene, for flee may we neuer!

He arrays his
 rich Romans.

Thane this ryche mane rathe arayes his byernez,
 Rewlede his Romayne, and realle knyghtez;
 Buschez in the awawmewarde the vescuonte of Rome,
 ffro Viterbe to Venyse, theis valyante knyghtez: 2025

The viscount is
 in the van.

He hoists his
 standard, the
 golden dragon
 enamelled with
 eagles.
 They drink and
 make merry.

Dresses vp dredfully the dragone of golde,
 With egles alouer, enamelede of sable;
 Drawene dreghely the wyne, and drynkynne thare-aftyre,
 Dukkez and dusseperez, dubbede knyghtez, 2029
 ffor dauncesyng of Duche-mene, and dynnyng of pypez,
 Alle dynned fore dyne that in *the* dale houede.

Sir Lucius ex-
 horts them to
 think on the
 great renown of
 Rome—how it
 had conquered all
 Christendom,

And thane *sir* Lucius on lowde said lordlyche wordez,
 "Thynke one the myche renownne of *your* ryche
 fadyrs; 2033

[leaf 75]

and all the land
 of the Saracens,
 from Jaffa to the
 gates of Paradise.

And the riatours of Rome, *that* regnede with lordez;
 And the renkez ouer-rane alle *that* regnede in erthe,
 Encrochede alle Cristyndome be craftes of armes;
 In eueriche a viage the victorie was haldene; 2037
 In sette alle *the* Sarazenes with-in seuene wyntter,
 The parte ffro the porte Iaffe to Paradyse zatez!
 Thoghe a rewme be rebelle, we rekke it bot lyttille!

Without doubt
 they will quickly
 reduce these
 rebels.

It es resone and righte the renke be restreynede! 2041
 Do dresse we thare-fore, and byde we no langere,
 ffore dredlesse with-owttynne dowtte, the daye schalle be
 ourez!"

Whene *theise* wordez was saide, the Walsche kyng
hym selfene 2044

Whas warre of this wyderwyne, *that* werrayed his
knyghttez :

Brothely in the vale *with* voyce he ascreyez,—

“Viscownte of Valewnce, enuyous of dedys,

The vassallage of Viterbe to daye schalle be reuengede !

Vnnenquiste for *this* place voyde schalle I neuer !”

Arthur calls upon
the viscount of
Valence, and
threatens him
with vengeance.

Thane the vycownte valiante, *with* a uoyse noble,

Auoyeddyde the awawewarde, enuerounde his horse ;

He drissede in a derfe schelde, endentyd *with* sable,

With a dragone engowschede, dredfulle to schewe, 2053

Deuorande a dolphyne *with* dolefulle lates,

In seyne that oure soueraygne sulde be distroyede,

And alle done of dawez *with* dynttez of swerddez ;¹

ffor thare es noghte bot dede thare the dragone es raissede !

The viscount
boldly prepares
for the fray.

His device is a
dragon devour-
ing a dolphin.

Thane the comlyche kyng castez in fewtyre, 2058

With a crewelle launce cowpez fulle euene

A-bowne *thespayre*² aspanne, emange *theschortte* rybbys,

That the splent and the spleene on the spere lengez !

The blode sprete owtte and sprede as *the* horse sprynggez,

And he sproulez fulle spakely, bot spekes he no more !

And thus has *sir* Valyant haldene his a-vowez, 2064

And venqwyste *the* viscownte, *thate* victor was haldene !

The king lays
his lance in rest,
and pierces him
through the short
ribs.

And thus has *Sir*
Valiant kept his
vow.

Thane *sir* Ewayne *sir* Fytz Vrieneffulle enkerlye rydez

Onone to the emperour his egle to towche ;

Thrughe his brode bataile he buskes be-lyfe, 2068

Braydez owt his brande *with* a blyth chere,

Reuerssede it redelye, and awaye rydys ;

fferkez in *with* the fewle in his faire handez,

And ffittez in freely one frounte *with* his feris. 2072

Sir Ewain makes
a bold attempt to
reach the em-
peror.

Now buskez *sir* Launcelot, and braydez fulle euene

To *sir* Lucius the lorde, and lothelye hyme hyttez ;

Thurghe pawnce *and* platez he percede the maylez,

That the prowde penselle in his pawnche lengez ! 2076

The hede haylede owtt be-hynde ane halfe fote large,

Sir Lancelot slays
the lord Lucius.

¹ MS. swreddez.

² MS. *thespayre* the spayere.

Thurghe hawberke and hanche, with *the* harde wapyne !
 The stede and the steryne mane strykes to *the* grownde,
 Strake downe a standerde, and to his stale wendez !

Sir Lott rejoices
 that his turn is
 now come.

“Me lykez wele,” sais *sir* Lotſ, “zone lordez are
 delyuerede ! 2081

The lott lengez nowe on me, with leue of my lorde :
 To day salle my name be laide, and my life aftyre,
 Bot some leppe fro the lyfe, that one zone lawnde houez !”
 Thane strekez the steryne, and streynys his brydylle,
 Strykez in-to the stowre on a stede ryche,

[leaf 75, back]

He slays a giant,

Enjoyneſte with a geaunt, and jaggede hym thorowe !
 Jolyly this gentille for-justede a-nother, 2088

and many war-
 riors beside.

Wroghte wayes fullē wyde, werrayande knyghtez,
 And wondes alle wathely, that in *the* waye stondez !
 ffyghttez with alle the ffrappe a furlange of waye,
 ffelled fele appone felde with his faire wapene, 2092
 Venqwiste and has the victorie of valyaunt knyghtez,
 And alle enverounde the vale, and voyde whene hym
 likede !

The British bow-
 men discharge
 their arrows.

Thane bowmene of Bretayne brothely ther-aftyre
 Bekerde with bregaundeſ of ferre in tha laundeſ,
 With flonez fieterede thay fiitt fullē frescly ther frekez,
 ffichene with fetheris thurghe *the* fyne maylez :
 Siche flyttinge es foule that so *the* flesche derys,
 That flowe o ferrome in flawnkkes of stedeſ ; 2100

The Dutchmen
 throw darts.

Dartes the Duche-mene daltene azaynes,
 With derfe dynttez of dede, dagges thurghe scheldeſ ;
 Qwarelles qwayntly swappiez thorowe knyghtez,
 With iryne so wekyrly, that wynche they neuer. 2104

Many are slain
 by the sharp
 arrows.

So they scherenkene fore schotte of *the* scharppe arowes,
 That alle the scheltrone schonte, and schoderide at ones !
 Thane riche stedes rependez, and rasches one armes ;
 The hale howndrethe one hye appone heyghe lygges,
 Bott zitte *the* hathelieste on hy, haythene and other ;
 Alle hoursches ouer hede harmes to wyrke. 2110

But the giants
 make a terrible
 charge,

And alle theis geaunteſ be-fore, engenderide with fendez,
 Ioynez on sir Ienitalle, and gentille knyghtez,

With clubbez of clene stele clenkkede in helmes,
 Craschede doune crestez, and craschede brayne; z;
 Kyllede cou[r]sers and couerde stedes, 2115
 Choppode thurgh cheualers one chalke-whytte stedez.

and with their
 steel clubs destroy
 many knights
 on white steeds.

Was neuer stele ne stede myghte stande them a-zayne; z;
 Bot stonays and strykez doune, that in the stale houys.

Nothing can
 stand against
 them until Ar-
 thur comes.

Tille the conquerour come with his kene knyghttez,
 With crewelle contenance he cryede fulle lowde,—
 “I wende no Bretones walde bee basschede for so lyttille,
 And fore bare-legyde boyes, that one the bente houys !”

He despises
 them,

He clekys owtte Colbrande fulle clenlyche burneschte,
 Graythes hyme to Golapas, that greuyde moste; z;
 Kutttes hyme euene by the knees clenly in sondyre.

and plucking out
 Colbrand, quickly
 cuts the giant
 Golapas in two
 at the knees,

“Come downe,” quod the kyng, “and karpe to thy ferys !
 Thowe arte to hye by the halfe, I hete the in trouthe !
 Thow salle be handsomere in hye, with the helpe of my
 Lorde !” 2128

telling him he is
 too high by half.

With that stelene brande he strake ofe his hede.
 Sterynly in that stoure he strykes a-nother.

Then he strikes
 off his head.

Thus he settez on seuene with his sekyre knyghttez :
 Whylles sixty ware seruede soo, ne sessede they neuer !
 And thus at the joynenyge the geauntez are distroyede,
 And at that journey for-justede with gentille lordez.

[leaf 76]
 He and his
 knights slay sixty
 giants.

Than the Romaynes, and the rennkkez of the Rounde
 Table,

The Romans
 rally and make
 a fierce
 resistance.

Rewles theme in arraye, rerewarde ande other, 2136
 With wyghte wapynez of werre, thay wroghtene one
 helmes,

Rittez with rannke stele fulle ryalle maylez ;
 Bot they fitt¹ theme fayre, thes frekk byerne; z;
 ffewters in freely one fferauente stedes, 2140
 ffoynes fulle felly with flyschande speris,
 ffretene of orfrayes feste appone scheldez.

So fele fay es in fyghte appone the felde leuyde, 2143
 That iche a furthe in the firthe of rede blode rynnys !
 By that swyftely one swarthe the swett es by-leuede,

So many are left
 dead on the field,
 that each path
 in the forest runs
 with red blood.

¹ Or fut.

Swerdez swangene in two, sweltand knyghtez
 Lyes wyde opyne welterande one walopande stedez ;
 Wondes of wale mene werkande sydys, 2148
 ffacez feteled vn-faire in filterede lakes,
 Alle craysed for-trodyne with trappede stedez,
 The faireste figured folde¹ that fygurede was euer,
 Alls ferre alls a furlange, a thosande at ones ! 2152
 Be than the Romaynez ware rebuykyde a lyttille,
 With-drawes theyme drerely, and dreches no lengare ;
 Oure prynce with his powere persewes theyme aftyre,
 Prekez one² the proudeste with his price knyghttez.
 Sir Kayous, sir Clegis, with clene mene of armez, 2157
 Enconters theme at the clyffe with clene mene of armes ;
 ffyghttes faste in the fyrth, frythes no wapene,
 ffelled at the firste come fyfe hundrethe at ones !
 And when they fande theym foresett with oure fers
 knyghtez, 2161
 ffewe mene agayne fele mot fyche theme bettyre ;
 ffeghttez with alle the frappe, foynes with speres,
 And faughte with the frekkeste that to Fraunce langez.
 Bot sir Kayous the kene castis in fewtyre,
 Chasez one a coursere, and to a kynge rydys ; 2166
 With a launce of Lettowe he thirleth his sydez,
 That the lyuer and the lunggez on the launce lengez.
 The schafte sc[h]odyrde and schott in the schire byerne,
 And soughte thorowowte the schelde, and in the schalke
 rystez.
 Bot Kayous at the in-come was keypd vn-fayre
 With a cowarde knyghte of the kythe ryche ; 2172
 At the turnynge that tym the traytoure hym hitte
 In thorowe the felettes, and in the flawnke aftyre,
 That the boustous launce the bewells attamede,
 That braste at the brawlynge, and brake in the myddys.
 Sir Kayous knewe wele, be that kyde wounde, 2177
 That he was dede of the dynte, and done owte of lyfe.

The Romans
begin to retreat,
and Arthur
presses on them.

Sir Cayous, Sir
Clegis, and their
men slay fyve
hundred.

Sir Cayous rides
to a king and
thrusts him
through with his
lance,

but is sorely
wounded by a
coward knight.

[leaf 76, back]

¹ Or felde.

² Or over.

Than he raykes in arraye and one rawe rydez,
One this ryalle his dede to reuenge ; 2180

“Kepe the, cowarde,” and calles hym sone,
Cleues hym wyth his clere brande clenliche in sondire !
“Hadde thow wele delte thy dynt wyth thi handes,
I hade for-geffene *the* my dede, be Crist now of hewyne !”

He weyndes to *the* wyese kyng, and wynly hym gretes,
“I am wathely woundide, waresche mone I neuer !

He goes to the king, tells him he is mortally wounded, and bids him greet well the queen, the ladies of the court, and his wife.

Wirke nowe thi wirchipe, as *the* worlde asks,
And brynge me to beryelle, byd I no more ! 2188

Grete wele my ladye *the* qwene, zife *the* werlde happyne,
And alle *the* burliche birdes *that* to hir boure lengez,
And my worthily weife, *that* wrethide me neuer,
Bid hire fore hir wyrchipe wirke for my saulle !” 2192

The kynges confessour come, *with* Criste in his handes,
ffor to comforthe the knyghte, kende hym *the* wordes.
The knyghte coueride on his knees *with* a kaunt herte,
And caughte his Creatoure *that* comfurthes vs alle !

Then comes the king's confessor to comfort the knight.

Thane remmes *the* riche kyng fore rewthe at his herte,
Rydes in-to rowte his dede to reuenge ;

Then Arthur, full of grief, rushes into the fray to avenge him.

Presede in-to *the* plumpe, and with a prynce metes,
That was ayere of Egipt in thos este marches ; 2200

Cleues hym with Collbrande clenlyche in sondyre !
He broches euene thorowe *the* byerne, and *the* sadille
bristes,

He cleaves an Egyptian prince asunder.

And at *the* bake of *the* blonke *the* bewelles entamede !

Manly in his maly[n]coly he metes a-nother, 2204

Another he chops in half.

The medille of *that* myghtty, *that* hym myche greuede ;
He merkes thurghe the maylez the myddes in sondyre,
That the myddys of *the* mane on *the* mounte fallez,
The tother halfe of *the* haunche on *the* horse leuyde.

Of *that* hurte, ahs I hope, heles he neuer ! 2209

He schotte thorowe *the* schiltrouns *with* his scharpe
wapene,

He speeds his way through the battle, cutting men in sunder, bearing down banners,

Schalkez he schrede thurghe, and schrenkede maylez ;
Baneres he bare downe, bryttenede scheldes, 2212

and fiercely
wreaking his
wrath on his foes.

Brothely with browne stele his brethe he *thare* wrekes ;
Wrothely he wryththis by wyghtnesse of strenghe,
Woundes *these* whydyrewyns, werrayede knyghttes,
Threppede thorowe *the* thykkys thryttene sythis, 2216
Thryngez throly in the thrange, and chis euene aftyre !

Sir Gawaine goes
forward and meets
with the emperour.

Thane sir Gawayne the gude, with wyrechipfulle
knyghttez,

Wendez in the a-vawewarde be tha wodde hemmys ;
Was warre of *sir* Lucius, one launde there he houys,
With lordez and ligge mene, that to hyme selfe lengede.
Thane the emperour enkerly askes hym sonne, 2222
“ What wille thou, Gawayne, wyrke with thi wapyne ?

[leaf 77]

I watte be thi wauerynge, thou willnez aftyre sorowe ;
I salle be wrokyne on thi wrethe, fore alle thi grete
wordez ? ”

Lucius with his
long sword
wounds Sir
Lionel,

He laughte owtte a lange swerde, and luyschede one
ffaste,

And *sir* Lyonelle in the launde, lordely hym strykes,
Hittes hym on *the* hede, *that the* helme bristis ; 2228
Hurttes his herne-pane an hannde-brede large !

and many wor-
shipful knights.

Thus he layes one *the* lumppe, and lordlye *theme* seruede,
Wondide worthily wirchipfulle knyghttez !
fighttez with Florent that beste es of swerdez, 2232
Tille *the* fomande blode till his fyste rynnes !

The Romans, ex-
cited by his
bravery, get the
better of Arthur's
men.
Sir Bedwere is
slain.

Thane *the* Romayns releuyde, *that* are ware rebuykkyde,
And alle to-rattysoure mene with their riste horses ;
ffore they see *thaire* cheftayne be chauffede so sore,
They chasse and choppe douneoure cheualrous knyghttes !
Sir Bedwere was borne thurghe, and his breste thyrllede,
With a burlyche brannde, brode at *the* hiltes ;
The ryalle rannke stele to his herte rynmys, 2240
And he rusches to *the* erthe, rewthe es the more !

Then Arthur
comes to the
rescue.

Thane *the* conquerour tuke kepe, and come with his
strengthes

To reschewe *the* ryche mene of *the* Rounde Table,
To owtraye *the* emperour, 3if auntire it schewe, 2244
Ewyne to *the* egle, and “ Arthur ! ” askryes.

The emperour thane egerly at Arthure he strykez,
Awkwarde on *the* vmbre, and egerly hym hittez !

The emperour
strikes Arthur on
the visor, and
wounds his nose.

The nakyde swerde at *the* nese noyes hym sare, 2248

The blode of [the] bolde kyng euer *the* breste rynnys,

Beblede at *the* brode schelde and *the* bryghte mayles !

Oure bolde kyng bowes *the* blonke be *the* bryghte brydylle,

With his burlyche brande a buffette hym rechis, 2252

Arthur gives him
a buffet that cuts
through his
cuirass and his
breast.

Thourgh *the* brene and *the* breste with his bryghte wapayne,

O-slante doune fro *the* slote he slyttes at ones !

Thus endys *the* emperour of Arthure hondes,

Sir Lucius dies,
and the Romans
fly.

And alle his austeryne oste *thare-ofe* ware affrayed !

Now they ferke to *the* fyrthe, a fewe *that* are leuede,

ffor ferdnesse of oure folke, by *the* fresche strandez !

The floure of oure ferse mene one fierant stedez

ffolowes frekly on *the* frekes, thate ffrayed was neuer.

Arthur's men
pursue them.

Thane *the* kyde conquerour cryes fulle lowde,— 2261

“Cosyne of Cornewaile, take kepe to *thi* selfene,

That no captayne be keypyde for none siluer,

Or *sir* Kayous dede be cruelly vengede !” 2264

The king bids
them take venge-
ance for Sir
Cayous.

“Nay,” sais *sir* Cador, “so me Cryste helpe !

Thare ne es kaysere ne kyng, *that* vndire Criste ryngnes,

That I ne schalle kille colde dede be crafte of my handez !”

Sir Cador de-
clares that he
will spare neither
king nor kaiser.

Thare myghte menesee chiftaynes, on chalke whittestedez,

Choppe doune in the chaas cheualrye noble ; 2269

Romaynes *the* rycheeste and ryalle kynges,

Braste with ranke stele their rybbys in sondyre !

Braynes fore-brustene thurgh burneste helmes, 2272

[leaf 77, back]
A fearful carnage
follows.

With brandez for-brittene one brede in *the* launde.

They hewed doune haythen mene with hilted swerdez,

Heathen men are
hewn down by
hundreds.

Be hole hundreth on hye, by *the* holte eynyes !

Thare myghte no siluer thaym saue, ne socoure their

lyues, 2276

Sowdane, ne Sarazene, ne senatour of Rome !

Thane releuis *the* renkes of the Rounde Table,

Be *the* riche reuare that rynnys so faire ;

Lugegez thaym lufye by *tha* lyghte strandez, 2280

Alle on lawe in *the* lawnde, thas lordlyche byernes.

Arthur's men
plunder the rich
camp of the
Romans.

They kaire to *the* karyage, and tuke whate them likes,
Kamelles and sekadrisses, and cofirs fulle riche,
Hekes, and hakkenays, and horses of armes, 2284

Horses, camels,
dromedaries,
milk-white mules,
and many mar-
vellous beasts are
captured.

Howsynge and herbergage of heythene kynges ;
They drewe owt of dromondaries dyuerse lordes,
Moyllez mylke whitte, and *meruayllous* bestez,
Elfaydes, and arrabys, and olyfauntez noble, 2288
Ther are of *the* Oryent, with honourable kynges.

Bot *sir* Arthure onone ayeres *ther*-aftyre
Ewyne to *the* emperour, with honourable kyngis ;
Laughte hym vpe fulle louelyly with lordlyche knyghttez,
And ledde hym to *the* layere, thare the kyng lygges.
Thane harawdez heghely, at heste of the lordes,
Hunttes vpe the haythemene, that on heghte lygges,
The Sowdane of *Surry*, and certayne kynges, 2296
Sexty of *the* cheefe *senatours* of Rome.

The bodies of the
emperour and
the chief men of
Rome are em-
balmed and
wrapped in lead,

Thane they bussches and bawmede *thaire* honourliche
kyngis,

Sewed theme in sendelle sexti-faulde aftire,
Lappede them in lede, lesse that they schulde 2300
Chawnge or chawffe, 3if *thay* myghte escheffe ;

enclosed in
chests, and sent
to Rome with
their banners
over them.

Closed in kystys clene vn-to Rome,
With theire baners a-bowne, theire bagis there-vndyre,
In whate countré *thay* kaire that knyghttes myghte knawe
Iche kyng be his colours, in kyth whare [he] lengede.
Onone one *the* secounde daye, sone by *the* morne,

Two senators
come barefoot
and kneel before
the conqueror.

Twa *senatours* ther come, and certayne knyghttez,
Hodles fro *the* hethe, ouer *the* holte eynes, 2308
Barefote ouer *the* bente, with brondes so ryche,
Bowes to *the* bolde kyng, and biddis hym *the* hiltes,
Whethire he wille hang theym or hedde, or halde
theyme on lyfe ; 2311

Knelyde be-fore *the* conquerour in kyrtilles allone ;
With carefull *contenance* *thay* karpide these wordes,—

“Twa *senatours* we are, thi subgettez of Rome,
That has sauede oure lyfe by *theise* salte strandys ;
Hyd vsin *the* heghe wode, thurghe *the* helpynge of Criste ;

Be-sekes the of socoure, as soueraygne and lorde ; 2317

Grante vs lyffe and lyme with leberalle herte,

[leaf 78]

ffor his luffe that the lente this lordchipe in erthe !”

“ I graunte,” *quod* [the] gude kyng, “ thurghe grace of
my selfene, 2320

The king grants them their lives on condition of their carrying a message for him to Rome.

I giffe 3owe lyffe and lyme, and leue for to passe,

So 3e doo my message menskefully at Rome,

That ilke charge *that* I 3ow 3iffe here be-fore my cheeffe
knyghtez.”

“ 3is,” sais the senatours, “ that salle we ensure, 2324

Sekerly be oure trowhes thi sayenges to fullfille ;

We salle lett for no lede *that* lyffes in erthe,

ffore pape, ne for potestate, ne prynce so noble,

That ne salle lelely in lande thi letteres pronounce, 2328

ffor duke ne fore dussepere, to dye in *the* payne !”

Thane the banerettez of Bretayne broghte *theme* to
tentes ;

The Britons cause barbers to shave them, in token of their submission.

There barbours ware bownne, with basyns one lofte,

With warme watire¹ i-wys they wette *theme* fulle sone ;

They schouene thes schalkes schappely ther-aftyre,

To rekkene theis Romaynes recreaunt and 3oldene ;

ffor-thy schoue they *theme* to schewe, for skomfite of
Rome.

They coupylde *the* kystys on kameles be-lyue, 2336

They fasten the chests on camels.

On asses and arrabyes, theis honourable kynges ;

The emperoure for honoure, alle by hym one,

Euene appone ane olyfaunte, hys egle owtt ouere ;

The emperor's body, for honour, is by itself on an elephant.

Be-kende *theme* the captyfis, the kyngedide hyme selfene,

And alle by-fore his kene mene karpede thees wordes,—

“ **H**ere are the kystis,” *quod* the kyng, “ kaire ouer
the mownttez ;

Arthur charges them to say that they have brought the arrears of tribute due from him to Rome.

Mette fulle monee *that* 3e haue mekyll 3ernede,

The taxe and *the* trebutte of tene schore wynteres, 2344

That was tenefully tynte in tyme of oure elders.

Saye to *the* senatoure, *the* ceté *that* 3emes,

That I sende hyme *the* somme, assaye how hyme likes !

¹ MS. wartire.

This is the only tribute they will ever get from him.

Bott byde theme neuere be so bolde, whylles my blode
regnes, 2348

Efte for to brawlle *theme* for my brode landez,
Ne to aske trybut ne taxe be nakyne tytlye,
Bot syche tresoure as this, whilles my tyme lastez."

They hasten to Rome and summon the people to the Capitol.

Nowe they raike to Rome the redyeste wayes, 2352

Knylles in the Capatoylle, and comowns assembles,
Souerayngez and senatours, the ceté *that* zemes ;

Be-kende theme the caryage, kystis and *other*, 2355

They perform Arthur's message as he directed.

Alls *the* conquerour comaunde with cruelle wordes.

" We hafe trystily trayuelled *this* tribute to feche,

They have brought the taxes from England and Ireland, and all the west.

The taxe and *the* trewage of fowre score wynteris,

Of I[n]glande, of Irelande and alle *thir* owtt illes,

That Arthure in the Occedente occupyes att ones. 2360

He byddis zow neuere be so bolde, whills his blode regnes,

To brawle zowe fore Bretayne ne his brode landes,

Ne aske hyme tribute ne taxe be nonkyns title,

Bot syche tresoure as this, whills his tyme lastis. 2364

[leaf 78, back] They declare that they have suffered defeat and great loss,

We haffe foughttene in france, and vs es foule happenede,

And alle oure myche faire folke faye are by-leuede !

Eschappide there ne cheuallrye, ne cheftaynes *nother*,

Bott choppede downne in the chasse, syche chawns es

be-fallene ! 2368

We rede ze store zowe of stone, and stuffene zour walles :

and bid the Romans beware.

zow wakkens wandrethe and werre ; be ware, zif zow

lykes !"

This great battle between Arthur and the Romans was fought in the calends of May.

In the kalendez of Maye this caas es be-fallene : 2371

The roy ryaffe renownde, with his Rownde Table,

One the coste of Costantyne by *the* clere strandez,

Has *the* Romaynes ryche rebuykede for euer !

Whene he hade foughttene in Fraunce, and the felde

wonnene,

And fersely his foomene felde owtte of lyfe, 2376

Arthur buries his knights,

He bydes for *the* beryenge of his bolde knyghtez,

That in batelle with brandez ware broughte owte of lyfe.

Sir Redwere at Bayonne,
Sir Cayous at Came.

He beryes at Bayone *sir* Bedwere *the* ryche ;

The cors of Kayone *the* kene at Came es be-leuefede,

- Koueride *with* a crystalle clenly alle ouer ; 2381
 His fadyre *conqueride that* kyth knyghtly *with* hondes.
 Seyne in Burgoyne he bade to bery mo knyghttez,
 Sir Berade and Bawdwyne, sir Bedwar *the* ryche,
 Gud *sir* Cador at Came, as his kynde askes.
- Thane *sir* Arthure onone, in *the* Auguste *ther*-aftyre, In the August
 Enteres to Almayne wyth ostez arrayed ; 2387 after Arthur en-
 Lengez at Lusscheburghe, to lechene hys knyghttez, ters into Ger-
 With his lele ligge mene, as lorde in his awene. many,
 and tarries at
 Luxenburg to
 heal his knights.
- And on *Christofre* daye a concelle he haldez,
 Withe kynges and kaysers, clerkkes and *other*,
 Comandez them kenely to caste alle *theire* wittys, 2392
 How he may *conquere* by crafte the kythe *that* he claymes.
 Bot the *conquerour* kene, curtais and noble,
 Karpes in the concelle theys knyghtly wordez,—
 “Here es a knyghte in theis kleuys, enclesside with hilles,
 That I haue cowayte to knawe, be-cause of his wordez,
 That es Lorayne *the* lele, I kepe noghte to layne ;
 The lordchipe es louely, as ledes me telles. 2399
 I wille that ducherye devyse, and dele as me lykes,
 And seyne dresse wyth *the* duke, if destynny suffre :
 The renke rebelle has bene vn-to my Rownde Table,
 Redy aye with Romaynes, and ryotte my landes !
 We salle rekkene fullle rathe, if resone so happene, 2404
 Who has ryghte to *that* rente, by ryche Gode of heuene !
 Thane wille I by Lumbardye lykande to schawe,
 Sett lawe in *the* lande, *that* laste salle euer ;
 The tyrauntez of Turkayne tempeste a littyllle, 2408
 Talke with *the* temperalle, whilles my tyme lastez ;
 I gyffe my protteccioñe to alle *the* pope landez,
 My ryche penselle of pes my pople to schewe.
 It es a foly to offende oure fadyr vndire Gode, 2412
 Owther Peter or Paule, *tha* postles of Rome.
 3if we spare the *spirituelle*, we spede bot the bettire ;
 Whills we haue for to speke, spille salle it neuer !”
 Now they spede at *the* spurres, *with*-owttyne speche
 more, 2416
- He holds a coun-
 cil to devise how
 he may conquer
 all the territory
 that he claims.
- He makes a
 speech in the
 council, saying
 that he much de-
 sires the posses-
 sions of the duke
 of Lorraine,
- who has long been
 a rebel to his
 Round Table.
- Full soon will he
 reckon who has
 right to the rent.
- Afterwards he
 will go to Lom-
 bardy and then
 visit the tyrants
 of Turkey,
- but he will give
 protection to all
 the lands of the
 [leaf 79]
 Pope, for it is
 folly to offend
 our father under
 God.
- If we spare the
 goods of the
 spirituality we
 shall speed the
 better.

To *the* marche of Meyes, theis manliche knyghtez,
That es Lorryne alofede, as Londone es here ;
Ceté¹ of *that* seynzowre, that soueraynge es holdene.

Arthur straight-
way leads his
knights to lay
siege to Metz.

The kyng ferkes furthe on a faire stede, 2420
With Ferrer and ² Ferawnte, and *other* foure knyghtez ;
A-bowte the ceté *tha* seuene, they soughte at *the* nextte,

They seek a place
to fix the engines.

To seke theme a sekyre place to sett withe engeynes ;
Thane they beneyde in burghe bowes of vyse, 2424

The bowmen
shoot at them.

Bekyrs at *the* bolde kyng with boustouse lates,
Allblawsters at Arthure egerly schottes,
ffor to hurte hym or his horse with *that* hard wapene.

The king, with-
out his shield,
remains close to
the walls within
range of the
arrows.

The kyng schonte for no schotte, ne no schelde askys,
Bot schewes hym scharpely in his schene wedys ; 2429

Lenges alle at laysere, and lokes one the wallys,
Whare *they* ware laweste the ledes to assaille.

Sir Ferrere re-
monstrates with
him for exposing
himself to such
danger.

“ Sir,” said *sir* ferrere, “ a ffoly thowe wirkkes,
Thus nakede in thy noblaye to neghe to *the* walles,
Sengely in thy surcotte, this ceté to reche, 2434
And schewe *the* with-ine, there to schende vs alle.

Hye vs hastylve heynne, or we mone fulle happene,
ffor hitt they the or thy horse, it harmes for euer !”

Arthur scorns
him, and tells
him

“ Ife thow be ferde,” quod the kyng, “ I rede thow
ryde vttere, 2438

Lesse *that they* rywe the with their rownnd wapyne !
Thow arte bot a fawntkyne, no ferly me thynkkys !

that he would be
afraid of a fly
that lighted on
him.

Thou wille be flayed for a flye *that* onethy fleschelyghttes !
I ame nothyng agaste, so me Gode helpe ! 2442

Thof siche gadlynges be greuede, it greues me botlyttille !
Thay wyne no wirchipe of me, bot wastys their takle !
They salle wante or I weende, I wagene myne hevede !

Never knave will
be allowed to kill
a crowned king.

Salle neuer harlotte haue happe, thorowe helpe of my
Lorde,

To kylle a corownde kyng with³ krysome enoyntede !”

Then come the
gallant troops of
Arthur,

Thane come *the* herbariours, harageous knyghtez, 2448
The hale batelles one hye harrawnte ther-aftyre ;
And oure forreours ferse, appone fele halves,

¹ MS. Pety. ² MS. ferrerande. ³ MS. with with.

- Come flyeande be-fore one ferawnt stedes ;
 fferkande in arraye their ryalle knyghttez, 2452
 The renkez renownde of *the Rownd Table*.
 Alle *the frekke mene* of Fraunce folowede thare-aftyre,
 ffaire fittyde one frownte, and one the felde houys.
 Thane the schalkes scharpelye scheftys their horsez,
 To schewene them semly in their scheene wedes ; 2457
 Buskes in batayle with baners displayede,
 With brode scheldes enbrassede, and burlyche helmys,
 With penouns and penselles of ylke prynce armes, 2460
 AppayreHde with perrye and *precious stones*.
 The lawnces with loraynes, and lemande scheldes,
 Lyghtenande as *the leuenyng*, and lemand al ouer.
 Thane the price mene prekes, and proues *their horsez*,
 Satilles to *the ceté*, appone sere halfes ; 2465
 Enserches the subbarbes sadly thare-aftyre,
 Discoueris of schotte-mene, and skyrmys a lyttill ;
 Skayres *thaire skottefers*, and their skowtte-waches,
 Brittenes their barrers with their bryghte wapyns ;
 Bett downe a barbycane, and *the brygge wynnys*. 2470
 Ne hade the garnysone bene gude at *the grete zates*,
 Thay hade wonne that wone be their awene strenghe !
 Thane with-drawesoure mene, and drisses theme bettyre,
 ffor dred of *the drawe-bridg*e dasschede in sondre ;
 Hyes to *the harbergage*, thare the kyng houys
 With his batelle one heghe, horsyde on stedys ; 2476
 Thane was *the prynce puruayede*, and *their places*
 nommene,
 Pyghte paulylyons of *paße*, and *plattes* in seegge.
 Thane lenge they lordly, as *theme leefe thoghte*,
 Waches in ylke warde, as to *the werre falles*, 2480
 Settes vp sodaynly certayne engynes.
 One Sonondaye be *the Soone* has a flethe zoldene.
 The kyng calles one Florente, *that flour* was of
 knyghttez,—
 “The Fraunche-meñe enfeblesches, ne farly me thynkkys !
 They are vn-fondyde folke in *tha faire marches*, 2485

and the renowned
 champions of the
 Round Table ;
 and all the bold
 men of France
 following them.

[leaf 79, back]

They proceed in
 battle-array with
 banners and broad
 shields, and
 pennons adorned
 with precious
 stones.

The lances gleam
 like lightning.

They encompass
 the city on divers
 sides,

skirmish with the
 garrison,
 and break down
 their defences.

But the garrison
 at the great gates
 checks them.

Arthur's men
 withdraw to
 where the king
 is waiting.

They pitch their
 tents, and pre-
 pare for a regular
 siege.

Arthur calls Sir
 Florent,

ffor theme wantes *the* flesche and fude that theme lykcs.
Here are fforestcz faire appone fele halues, 2487

and sends him to
forage for cattle.

And thedyre feemene are flede with freliche bestes !
Thow salle foonde to *the* felle, and forraye the moun^tes ;
Sir fforawnt and *sir* Florydas salle folowe thi brydylle ;
Vs moste with some fresche mette refresche oure pople,
That are feedde in *the* fyrthe with *the* froyte of *the* erthe.

Sir Gawaine him-
self, the wor-
shipful warden,
shall accompany
them,

Thare salle weende to *this* viage *sir* Gawayne hymselfene,
Wardayne fulle wyrchipfulle, and so hym wele semes ;
Sir Wecharde, *sir* Waltyre, theis wyrchipfulle knyghtes,
With alle wyseste mene of *the* weste marches ; 2496
Sir Clegis, *sir* Clarybalde, *sir* Clarymownde *the* noble,
The capytayne of ¹ Cardyfe clenlyche arrayede.

and many other
knights of re-
nown.

Goo now, warne alle *the* wache, Gawayne and *other*,
And weendes furthe on *your* waye withowttyne moo
wordes." 2500

These fresh men
of arms start on
their journey
through woods
and over hills.
[leaf 80]

Now ferkes to *the* fyrthe thees fresche mene of armes,
To *the* felle so fewe, theis fresclyche byernes,
Thorowe hopes and hymlande hillys and *other*;
Holtis and hare woddes with heslyne schawes, 2504

They fall upon a
field of grass
newly mown,

Thorowe marasse and mosse and montes so heghe ;
And in the myste mornyngc one a mede falles,
Mawene and vne-made, maynoyrede bott lyttylle,
In swathes sweppene downe, fulle of swete floures. 2508

where they bait
their horses,
while the birds
sweetly sing.

Thare vnbrydilles theis blode, and baytes *theire* horses,
To *the* grygyngc of *the* daye, *that* byrdez ² gane syngc,
Whylles the surs of *the* sonne, *that* sonde es of Cryste,
That solaces alle synfulle, *that* syghte has in erthe. 2512

Sir Gawaine goes
forth by himself
to seek adven-
tures.

Thane weendes owtt the wardayne, *sir* Gawayne hyme
selfene,

AHs he *that* weysse was and wyghte, ³ wondyrs to seke ;
Thane was he warre of a wye, wondyre wele armyde,
Baytand one a wattire banke by *the* wodde eynis, 2516

He sees a knight
well armed,

Buskede in brenyes bryghte to be-halde,
Enbrassede a brode schelde on a blonke ryche,
With birenne ony borne, bot a boye one,

¹ MS. oo. ² MS. *that* byrdez *that* byrdes ³ MS. wyghte wyghte

- Houes by hym on a blonke, and his spere holdes. 2520 and a page carry-
 He bare gessenande in golde, thre grayhondes of sable, ing his spear.
- With chapas a cheynes of chalke whytte syluer,
 A charebocke in *the* cheefe, chawngawnde of hewes,
 And a cheefe anterous, chalange who lykes. 2524
- S**ir Gawayne glyftes on the gome *with* a glade wille !
 A grete spere fro his grome he grypes in hondes,
 Gyrdes ewene ouere *the* streme one a stede ryche,
 To *that* steryne in *stour*, one strenghe *thare* he houys !
 Egerly one Inglisce "Arthur !" he askryes, 2529 He shouts his
 The *tother* irouslye ansuers hym sone cry, "Arthur."
- On a launde of Lorraine with a lowde steuen,
 That ledes myghte lystene *the* lenghe of a myle ! 2532 The other answers
 "Whedyr prykkes thow, pilouur, *that* profers so large ? with a loud voice.
- Here pykes thowe no praye, profire whene *the* lykes !
 Bot thow in *this* perelle ¹ put of the bettire,
 Thow salle be my presonere, for alle thy prowde lates !"
 "Sir," sais *sir* Gawayne, "so me Gode helpe ! 2537 Then the strange
 Siche glauerande gomes greues me hot lyttille ! knight declares
 Bot if thowe graythe thy gere, the wille grefe happene, that Gawaine
 Or thowe goo of *this* greue, for alle thy grete wordes !"
 Thane *theire* launces they lachene, thes lordlyche byvernez, shall be his
 Laggene *with* longe speres one lyarde stedes ; prisoner.
- Cowpene at awntere be kraftes of armes,
 Tille bothe *the* crowelle speres broustene att ones ! 2544 Both the spears
 Thorowe scheldys *they* schotte, and scherde thorowe strike fair, and
 ma[i]les, wound the
 Both the knights.
- Bothe schere thorowe schoulders a schaft-monde large !
 Thus worthylye *thes* wyes wondede ere bothene ;
 Or they wreke *theme* of wrethe a-waye wille *they* neuer !
 Than they raughte in the reyne and a-gayne rydes,
 Redely theis rathe mene rusches owtte swerdez, 2550 Then they retn
 Hittes one hellmes fulle hertelyche dynttys, in their horses
 Hewes appone hawberkes with fulle harde wapyns ! [leaf 80, back]
 ffulle stowttly *they* stryke, thire steryne knyghttes, and return to
 the fight with
 swords.
 Stokes at *the* stomake with stelyne poyntes, 2554 Fearful blows are
 exchanged.

¹ MS. *pererelle*.

ffeghttene and floresche withe flawmande swerdez,
Tille *the* flawes of fyre flawmes one theire helmes.

Sir Gawaine
waxes wroth, and
strikes grimly
with his sword
Galuth.

Thane *sir* Gawayne was greuede, and grychgide fulle
sore ;

With Galuth^e his gude swerde grymlye he strykes !
Clese *the* knyghttes schelde clenliche in sondre ! 2559

He cleaves the
knight's shield
asunder, and lays
open his side.

Who lukes to *the* lefte syde, whene his horse launches,
With *the* lyghte of *the* sonne men myghte see his
lyuere !

The knight
strikes fiercely at
Sir Gawaine.

Thane granes *the* gome fore greefe of his wondys,
And gyrdis at *sir* Gawayne, as he by glentis ;
And awkewarde egerly sore he hym smyttes ; 2564
An alet enamelde he oches in sondire,

He cuts through
his armour and
draws blood,

Bristes *the* rerebrace with the bronde ryche,
Kerues of at *the* coutere with *the* clene egge,
Ane[n]tis *the* avawmbrace, vrayllede with siluer ! 2568

which flows over
all his dress.

Thorowe a dowble vesture of veluett ryche,
With *the* venymous swerde a vayne has he towchede !
That voydes so violently *that* alle his witte changede !
The vesere, the aventaille, his vesturis ryche, 2572

Then the knight
jeers at him, and
says the blood
shall never be
staunched.

With the valyant blode was verrede alle ouer !
Thane this tyrante tite turnes *the* brydille,
Talkes vn-tendirly, and sais, "*thow* arte towchede !
Vs bus haue a blode-bande, or thi ble change, 2576
ffor alle *the* barbouris of Bretayne salle noghte thy blode
stawnche !

Sir Gawaine de-
spises his words,

ffor he *that* es blemeste with *this* brade brande, blyne
schalle he neuer."

"3a," quod *sir* Gawayne, "*thow* greues me hot
lyttille ! 2579

and bids him tell
what will stop
the bleeding.

Thowe wenys to glopyne me with thy gret wordez !
Thow trowes with thy talkynge *that* my harte talmes !
Thow be-tydes *tour*ferre or thowe hyene turne,
Bot *thow* telle me tytte, and tarye no lengere,
What may staunche this blode *that* thus faste rynnes."

The knight will
tell Gawaine if

"3ise, I say *the* sothely, and sekire *the* my trowthe,
No surgyone in Salame salle saue *the* bettyre ;

- With-*thy that* thowe suffre me, for sake of thy Cryste, he will allow him to have shrift and prepare himself for his end.
 To schewe shortly my schrifte, and schape for myne
 ende." 2588
- "*3is,*" *quod sir* Gawayne, "so me God helpe!
 I gyfe *the* grace and graunt, *thofe thou* hafe grefe *seruede*,
 With-*thy* thowe say me sothe what thowe here sekis,
 Thus sengilly and sulayne alle *thi* selfe one; 2592
 And whate laye thow leues one, layne noghte *the* sothe,
 And whate legyaunce, and where *thow* arte lorde."
- "My name es *sir* Priamus; a prynce es my fadyre,
 Praysede in his *partyes* with prouede kynges; 2596
 In Rome thare he regnes he es riche haldene;
 He has bene rebelle to Rome, and redene their landes,
 Werreyand wisely wyntters and *3eres*, 2599
 Be witt, and be wyssdome, and be wyghte strenghe,
 And be wyrchipulle werre, his awene has he wonne.
 He es of Alexandire blode, ouerlynge of kynges,
 The vncler of his ayele, *sir* Ector of Troye; 2603
 And here es the kynredene that I of come,
 And Iudas and Iosue, *thise* gentille knyghtes.
 I ame apparaunt his ayere, and eldeste of *other*;
 Of Alexandere and Aufrike, and alle *tha* owte landes,
 I am in possessione, and plenerly sessede. 2608
 In alle *the* price cetees that to *the* porte langes,
 I salle hafe trewly the tresour and the londes,
 And bothe tribute and taxe whilles my tyme lastes.
 I was so hawtayne of herte, whilles I at home lengede,
 I helde nane my hippe heghte vndire heuene ryche;
 ffor-*thy* was I sente hedire with seuene score knyghttez,
 To a-saye of this werre, be sente of my fadyre; 2615
 And I am for Cyrus witrye schamely supprisede,
 And be aw[n]tire of armes owtrayed fore euere!
 Now hafe I taulde the *the* kyne that I ofe come,
 Wille thow for knyghthede kene me thy name?" 2619
 "Be Criste," *quod sir* Gawayne, "knyghte was I neuer!
 With *the* kydde conquerour a knafe of his chambyre
 Has wroghte in his wardrope wynters and *3eres*,

Gawayne readily grants this.

The stranger knight tells him that he is Sir Priamus, son of a prince,

who rebelled against Rome, and gained a kingdom. [leaf 81]

He is of the blood of Alexander and Hector of Troy;

related also to Judas and Joshua;

and is heir of Africa.

When at home he was so proud and overbearing,

that he was sent by his father to this war with a band of knights.

He desires to know Sir Gawayne's name. Sir Gawayne answers deceitfully that he is only a knave of Arthur's chamber.

One his longe armour that hym beste lykid ; 2623
 I poyne alle his pavelyours *that* to hym selfe pendes,
 Dyghttes his dowblettez for dukes and erles,
 Aketouns auenaunt fore Arthure hym selfene,
 That he vsede in werre alle this aughte wyntter ! 2627

"He made me a yeoman at Yule, and gave me great gifts."

He made me 3omane at 3ole, and gafe me gret gyftes,
 And c.¹ ponde, and a horse, and harnayse fulle ryche ;
 Gife I happe to my hele that hende for to serue,
 I be holpene in haste, I hette the for-sothe !" 2631

"If his knaves be such, his knights are noble !" exclaims Sir Priamus. Alexander and Hector will be nothing to him.

"Giffe his knafes be syche, his knyghttez are noble !
 Therees no kyng vndire Criste may kempe *with* hym one !
 He wille be Alexander ayre, that alle *the* erthe lowttede,
 Abillere *thane* euer was *sir* Ector of Troye. 2635
 Now fore the krisome *that thou* kaghte *that day thou*
 was crystenede,

Then Sir Gawaine tells him the truth.

Whethire thowe be knyghte or knaffe, knawe now *the*
 sothe."

He is Sir Gawaine, cousin to the conqueror, the richest knight of all the Round Table.

"My name es *sir* Gawayne, I graunt *the* for sothe,
 Cosyne to *the* conquerour, he knawes it hym selfene ;
 Kydd in his kalander a knyghte of his chambyre, 2640
 And rollede the richeste of alle *the* Rounde Table !
 I ame *the* dussepere and duke he dubbede *with* his hondes,
 Deynttely on a daye be-fore his dere knyghtes ;
 Gruche noghte, gude *sir*, *thofe* me this grace happene ;
 It es *the* gifte of Gode, the gree es hys awene !" 2645

(leaf 81, back) Then Sir Priamus says he is better pleased than if he were prince of Provence and Paris.

"Petire !" sais Priamus, "now payes me bettire
 Than I of Provynce warre prynce, and of Paresche ryche !
 ffore me ware leuer preuely be prykkyd to *the* harte,
 Than euer any prikkere had siche a pryse wonnyne !

Then he warns Gawaine that the duke of Lorraine with his knights is lying in the wood near.

Bot here es herberde at hande, in 3one huge holtes,
 Halle bataile one heyghe, take hede 3if the lyke ! 2651
 The duke of Lorraine the derfe, *with* his dere knyghtes,
 The doughtyest of Dolfinede, and Duche mene many,
 The lordes of Lumbardy that leders are haldene,
 The garnyson of Godarde gaylyche arrayede, 2655
 The wyese of *the* Westuale, wirchipulle biernez,

Of Sessoyne and Surylande Sarazenes enewe ;
 They are nowmerde fulle neghe, and namede in rollez,
 Sixty thowsande and tene for-sothe of sekryre mene of
 armez ; 2659

There is a
mighty host
well armed.

Bot 3if thow hye fro *this* hethe, it harmes vs bothe,
 And bot my hurtes be sone holpene, hole be I neuer !
 Tak heede to *this* hansemane, *that* he no horne blawe,
 Are thowe heyly in haste beese hewene al to peces ;
 ffor they are my retenuz to ryde whare I wylle, 2664
 Es none redyare renkes regnande in erthe ;
 Be thow raghte *with that* rowtt, thow rydes no *forther*,
 Ne thow bees neuer rawnsonede for reches in erthe !”

He bids him be-
ware lest they
should discover
and destroy him.

Sir Gawayne wente or *the* wathe come, whare hym beste
 lykede, 2668

Sir Gawaine goes
with the wound-
ed knight to Ar-
thur's men,

With this wortheliche wye, that wondyd was sore ;
 Merkes to *the* mountayne there oure mene lenges,
 Baytaynde theire blonkes *ther* on *the* brode mede ;
 Lordes lenande lowe one lemande scheldes, 2672

who are baiting
their horses on the
broad mead and

With lowde laghttirs one lofte for lykyng of byrdez,
 Of larkes, of lynkwhyttez, *that* lufflyche songene,
 And some was sleghte one slepe *with* slaughte of *the* pople,
That sange in *the* sesone in the schenne schawes,
 So lawe in *the* lawndez so lykande notes.

listening to the
songs of the
birds.

Thane *sir* Whycher whas warre *thaire* wardayne was
 wondyde, 2678

Sir Whycher per-
ceives that Sir
Gawaine is
wounded,

And went to hym wepand, and wryngande his handes ;
 Sir Wychere, *sir* Walchere, theis wise mene of armes,
 Had wondyre of *sir* Gawayne, and wente hyme a-gayns,
 Mett hym in the mydwaye, and *meruaile* theme t[h]oghte
 How he maisterede *that* mane, so myghtty of strenghes !
 Be alle *the* welthe of *the* werlde, so woo was *theme* neuer !
 “ ffor alle oure wirchipe i-wysse awaye es in erthe !”

and wonders how
he could have
conquered this
mighty knight.

“ Greue 3ow noghte,” quod Gawayne, “ for Godis luffe
 of heuene ;

Sir Gawaine
makes light of
his wounds.

ffore this es bot goesomere, and gyffene one erles ; 2687
 Thoffemyschouldire beschrede, and myschelde thyrllede,
 And the wielde of myne arme werkkes a littille,

- His prisoner, Sir Priamus, has salves that will heal them. This prisonere *sir Priamus*, that has *perilous* wondes, Sais that he has salvez *salle softene vs bothene.* 2691
- They assist him to dismount. Thane *stirrttes* to his *sterape sterynfulle knyghttez*, And he lordely *lyghttes* and *laghte* of his *brydille*, And lete his burlyche *blonke baite* on *the flores* ;
- [leaf 82] Braydes of his *bacenette* and his *ryche wedis*, 2695
- Bownnes to his *brode schelde* and *bowes* to *the erthe*, In alle the *bodye* of that *bolde* es no *blode leuede* !
- The knights lift Sir Priamus from his horse. Than *preses* to *sir Priamous* *precious knyghtes*, Auyssely of his horse *hentes hym* in *armes* ; 2699
- They lay him down, and take off his weeds. His *helme* and his *hawberke thay* *takene* of *af tyre*, And *hastily* for his *hurtte alle* his *herte chawngyd* ; They *laide hyme* *downe* in the *lawndez*, and *laghte* of his *wedes*,
- And he *lenede hym* one *lange*, or how *hym beste* *lykede*. A *ffoyle* of *fyne golde* they *fande* at his *gyrdille*, 2704
- That es *fulle* of *the flour* of *the four welle*, That *flowes owte* of *Paradice* whene *the flode ryses*, That *myche froyt* of *fallez*, that *feede schalle vs alle* ; Be it *frette* on his *flesche*, *thare synues* are *entamede*, The *freke schalle* be *fische halle* with-in *fowre howres*.
- A knight dresses their wounds. They *vncovere* that *cors* with *fulle clene hondes* ; With *clere watire* a *knyghte clensis* *theire wondes*, Keled *theyme kyndly*, and *comforthed ther hertes*. And whene *the carffes* were *clene*, *thay clede* them *azayne* ;
- Then wine and provisions are brought to them. *Barelle ferrers* they *brochede*, and *broghte theme* *thewyne*, Bothe *brede* and *brawne*, and *bredis fulle ryche* ; 2715
- When they had etene anone they armede after. Thane *tha awntrende* men "*as armes* !" *askryes*, With a *claryoune clere*, *thire knyghtez* *to-gedyre*,
- The scouts bring news of the army in the wood. Callys to *concelle*, and of this *case tellys* :— 2719
- "*3ondyr* es a *companye* of *clene mene* of *armes*, The *keneste* in *contek* that *vndir Criste lenges* ; In *3one okene wode* an *oste* are *arrayede*, Vndir-takande *mene* of *thiese owte londes* ; 2723
- As *sais vs sir Priamous*, so *helpe seynt Peter* !" Sir Gawaine is for attacking them, "Go, *mene*," *quad* *Gawayne*, "and *grape* in *3oure hertez*,

Who salle graythe to 3one greue to 3one gret lordes ;
 3if we gettlesse goo home, the kyng wille be greuede,
 And say we are gadlynges, agaste for a lyttille. 2728
 We are with *sir* Florente, as to-daye falles,
 That es floure of ffrance, for he fleede neuer ;
 He was chosene and chargegide in chambire of *the* kyng,
 Chiffayne of *this* journee with cheualrye noble ; 2732
 Whethire he fyghte or he flee, we salle folowe aftyre ;
 ffore alle *the* fere of 3one folke forsake salle I neuer !”

but refers to Sir Florent, the leader of the party.

“ffadyre,” sais *sir* Florent, “fulle faire 3e it telle !
 Bot I ame bot a fawntkyne, vn-fraystede in armes ;
 3if any foly be-falle, *the* fawte salle be owrs,
 And fremdly o Fraunce be flemede for euer ! 2738

Sir Florent expresses his deference to Sir Gawaine, the warden of the knights of the Round Table,

Woundes noghte 3our wirchipe, my witte es bot symple ;
 3e are owre wardayne i-wysse, wyrke as 3owe lykes ;
 3e are at the ferreste noghte passande fyve hundrethe,
 And *that* es fully to fewe to feghte with theme alle,
 ffore harlottez and hansemene salle helpe bott littille ;
 They wille hye theyme hyene for alle *theire* gret wordes !
 I rede 3e wyrke aftyre witte, as wyesse men of armes,
 And warpes wylily a-waye, as wirchipulle knyghtes.”
 “I grawnte,” quod *sir* Gawayne, “so me Gode helpe !

and thinks they are too few to [leaf 82, back] fight with so many.

He is for a careful retreat.

Bot here are galyarde gomes *that* of *the* gre seruis,
 The kreuelleste knyghttes of *the* kynges chambyre,
 That kane carpe with the coppe knyghtly wordes ;
 We salle proue to-daye who salle the prys wyne.” 2751

Nowe ferriours fers vn-to *the* fyrthe rydez,
 And fonnges a faire felde, and on fotte lyghttez ;
 Prekes aftyre *the* pray, as pryce mene of armes.
 fflorent and Floridas, with fyve score knyghttez, 2755
 ffolowede in *the* foreste, and on *the* way fowndys,
 fflyngande a faste trotte, and on *the* folke dryffes.

Arthur's men advance to the wood.

Than felewes fast to oure folke wele a fyve hundreth
 Of freke mene to *the* fyrthe, appone fresche horses ;
 One *sir* Feraunt be-fore, apone a fayre stede, 2760
 Was fosterde in Famacoſte, the fende was his fadyre,

A band of 500 of the enemy meet them, headed by Sir Feraunt.

He flenges to *sir Florent*, and pristly he kryes,—

He calls scorn-
fully on Sir Flo-
rent,

“Why flees thow, falls knyghte? *the fende hafe thi saule!*”

Thane *sir fflorent* was fayne, and in fewter castys ;
One Fawnelle of ffryselande to¹ fferaunt he rydys, 2765
And raghte in *the reyne* on *the stede ryche*,
And rydes to-warde the rowte, restes he no lengere !

who with his
lance in rest
pierces him
through the
brain.

fulle butt in *the frounte* he flysches hyme euene, 2768
And alle dysfegoures his face with his felle wapene !
Thurghe his bryghte bacenette his brayne has he towchede,
And Brustene his neke-bone, *that alle his breste stoppede !*

His cousin vows
vengeance for his
death,

Thane his cosyne askryede, and cryede fulle lowde,
“Thowe has killede colde dede *the kyng* of alle knyghttes !
He has bene fraistede on felde in fyftene rewmes ; 2774
He fonde neuer no freke myghte feghte with hym one !
Thow schalle dye for his dede with my derse wapene,
And alle *the* doughtty for dule *that in zone dale houes !*”

but Sir Floridas
quickly disposes
of him.

“ffy,” sais *sir ffloridas*, “thow fferyande wryche !
Thow wenes for to flay vs, ffloke-mowthede schrewe !”
Bot ffloridas with a swerde, as he by glenttys, 2780
Alle *the flesche* of *the flanke* he flappes in sondyre,
That alle *the filthe* of *the freke* and fele of *the guttes*
ffoloes his fole fotte, whene he furthe rydes ! 2783

Sir Raynald, the
renegade, proudly
presses in ;

Than rydes a renke to reschewe *that byerne*,
That was Raynalde of *the Rodes*, and rebelle to Criste,
Peruertede with paynmys *that Cristene* persewes ;
Presses in prowldy, as *the praye* wendes, 2787
fore he hade in Prewsslande myche pryce wonnene ;
ffor-thi in presence thare he profers so large !

but Sir Richer,
of the Round
Table, runs him
through with a

[leaf 88]
spear.

Bot thane a renke, *sir Richere* of *the Rounde Table*,
One a ryalle stede rydes hym azaynes ; 2791
Thorowe a rownnde rede schelde he ruschede hym sone,
That the rosselde spere to his herte rynnnes !
The renke relys a-bowte and rusches to *the erthe*,
Roris fulle ruydiye, bot rade he no more ! 2795

The rest of the
five hundred

Now alle *that es fere* and vnfaye of *thes fyve hundreth*

ffalles on *sir* fflorent, a ffyve score knyghttes,
 Be-twyx a plasche and a flode, appone a flate lawnde ;
 Oure folke fongene theire felde, and fawghte theme
 agaynes. 2799

fall on Sir Florent
and his men.

Than was lowde appone lofte "Lorrayne !" askryede,
 Whene ledys with longe speris lasschene to-gedyrs,
 And "Arthure !" one ouresyde, whenetheymeoghteaylede.

The one side
shouts "Lor-
rayne," the other
"Arthur."

Than *sir* fflorent and Floridas in fewtyre they caste,
 ffruschene one alle the ffrape, and biernes affrayede ;
 ffHis fyve at the frounte thare they fyrste enteride,
 And, or they ferke forthire, fele of these othere ! 2806
 Brenyes browddene they briste, brittenede scheldes,
 Bettes and beres downe the best that theme byddes ;
 Alle that rewlyde in the rowtte they rydene awaye,
 So rewdly they rere theys ryalle knyghttes !

Sir Florent and
Sir Floridas per-
form great deeds
of valour.

When *sir* Priamous, that prince, persayuede theire
 gamene, 2811

Sir Priamus be-
seeches Gawaine
that he may help
Arthur's knights
against the Sara-
cens.

He hade peté in herte that he ne durste profire ;
 He wente to *sir* Gawayne, and sais hym these wordes,—
 "Thi price mene fore thi praye putt are alle vndyre,
 They are with Sarazenes ouer-sette, mo thane seuene
 hundreth 2815

Of the Sowdanes knyghtes owt of sere londes ;
 Walde thow suffire me, *sir*, for sake of thi Criste,
 With a soppe of thi mene suppowelle theym ones."

"I grouche noghte," quod Gawayne, "the gree es
 thaire awene ! 2819

Sir Gawaine says
that they have
not fought their
ill these fifteen
winters.

They mone hafe gwerddouns fulle grett graunt of my
 lorde,

Bot the freke mene of Fraunce fraiste theme selfene !
 ffrekes faughte noghte theire fille this fyftene wynter !
 I wille noghte stire with my stale halfe a stede lenghe,
 Bot they be stedde with more stuffe thane one zone stede
 houys." 2824

Thane *sir* Gawayne was warre, with-owttyne the wode
 hemmes,

He sees, outside
the wood,

men of Westphalia,

headed by the Earl Antele, who leads 8000 knights.

The Earl is indignant that Arthur's knights should venture to resist so great a host.

[leaf 83, back]

They had better retreat while they are able.

Sir Alger, his brother, says that though they are so few they are a match for an army.

Sir Gawaine encourages his knights.

"If we fight to-day, the field shall be ours."

Wyes of the Westfale appone wyght horsez,
 Walopande wodely, as *the* waye forthes, 2827
 With alle *the* wapyns i-wys *that* to *the* werre longez.
 The erle Antele the olde the avawmwarde he buskes,
 Ayerande one ayther hande heghte thosande knyghtez ;
 His pelours and pauysers passede alle nombyre, 2831
 That ever any prynce lede puruayed in erthe !
 Than *the* duke of Lorryne dresse thare-aftyre,
 With dowbille of *the* Duchemene, *that* doughtty ware
 holdene ;
 Paynymes of Pruysslande, prekkers fulle noble, 2835
 Come prekkande be-fore with Priamous knyghtez.
 Than saide the erle Antele to Algere his brother,—
 "Me angers earnestly at Arthures knyghtez !
 Thus enkerly one an oste awnters *theme* selfene ; 2839
 They wille be owtrayed anone, are vndrone rynges,
 Thus folily one a felde to fyghte with vs alle !
 Bot they be fesede in faye, ferly me thynkes ! 2842
 Walde they *purposse* take, and *passé* one their wayes,
 Prike home to their prynce, and their pray leue,
 Theymyghtelenghene *theire* yefe, and *lossene* bottlittille !
 It wolde lyghte my herte, so helpe me oure Lorde !"
 "Sir," sais *sir* Algere, "thay hafe littille vsede 2847
 To be owtrayede withe oste : me angers *the* more !
 The fayreste schalle be *fulle* feye, *that* in oure floke ryddez,
 Alls fewe as they bene, are they the felde leue !"
 Thane gud Gawayne, gracious and noble, 2851
 Alle with glorious gle he gladdis his knyghtes ;
 "Gloppyns noghte, gud mene, for gleterand scheldes,
 3ofe 3one gadlynges be gaye one 3one gret horses !
 Banerettez of Bretayne, buskes vp 3our hertes ! 2855
 Bees noghte baiste of 3one boyes, ne of *thaire* bryghte wedis !
 We salle blenke their boste for alle their bolde profire,
 Als bouxome as birde es in bede to hir lorde !
 3effe we feghte to-daye, *the* felde schalle be owrs, 2859
 The fekille faye salle faile, and falssede be distroyede !

3one folk is one ffrountere, vnfraistede theyme semes ;
 They make faythe and faye to *the fend seluene* !
 We salle in this viage victoures be holdene, 2863
 And avauntede with voyce of valyant biemez ;
 Praysede with pryncez in *presence* of lordes,
 And luffede with ladyes in *dyuerse* londes !
 Aughte neuer sicke honoure none of oure elders, 2867
 Vnwyne ne Absolone, ne none of thies *other* !

Great shall be the
 rewards and joys
 of victory.

Whene we are moste in destresse, Marie we mene,¹
 That es oure maisters seyne, *that* he myche traistez ;
 Melys of *that* mylde qwene, that menskes vs alle ; 2871
 Who so meles of *that* mayde, myskaries he neuer !”

In distress let
 them complain to
 Mary the mild
 queen.

Bethese wordes ware saide, they ware noghte ferre be-hynde
 Bot the lenghe of a launde, and “Lorayne !” askryes.

The enemy come
 upon them.

Was neuer sicke a justynge at *journé* in erthe, 2875
 In the vale of Iosephate, as gestes vs telles,
 Whene Iulyus *and* Ioatalle ware juggede to dy,
 As was whene *the* ryche mene of *the* Rownde Table
 Ruschede in-to *the* rowte one ryalle stedes ! 2879

Never was there
 such a jousting.
 Even that in the
 valley of Jeho-
 phat was not
 equal to it.

ffor so raythely *thay* rusche with roselde speris,
 That the raskaille was rade, and rane to *the* grefes,
 And karede to *that* courte as cowardes for euer !
 “Peter !” sais *sir* Gawayne, “this gladdez myne herte !
 That 3one gedlynges are gone, that made gret nowmbre ;
 I hope that thees harlottez salle harme vs bot littille,
 ffore they wille hyde theme in haste with-in 3one holte
 enis ! 2886

The rascal rout
 run to the groves.

Gawayne rejoices
 at the flight of
 the rabble.

They are fewere one ffelde *than* *thay* were fyrste nombirde,
 Befourtty thousande in faythe, for alle theyrefaire hostes.”

[leaf 84]

Bot one Iolyan of Iene, a geante fulle howge,
 Has joneded one *sir* Ierante, a justis of Walis ;
 Thorowe a jerownde schelde he jogges hym thorowe,
 And a fyne gesserawnte of gentille mayles, 2892
 Ioynter and gemows, he jogges in sondyre !
 One a jambe stede *this* jurnee he makes ;

A huge giant is
 slain by a justice
 of Wales.

¹ neuene struck out, and mene written instead.

Thus es *the* geante for-juste, that errawnte Iewe, 2895
 And Gerarde es jocunde, and joyes hym *the* more !

Sir Frederick at-
 tacks the British
 forayers.

Than the genatours of Genne enjoynes att ones,
 And frykis one *the* frowntere welle a fyve hundreth ;
 A freke highte *sir* ffederike, with fulle fele *other*, 2899
 fferkes one a frusche, and fresclyche askryes
 To fyghte with oure fforreours, *that* one felde houis.

The knights of
 the Round Table
 advance and fight
 valiantly.

And thane the ryalle renkkes of *the* Rownde Table
 Rade furth fulle earnestly, and rydis theme agaynes,
 Mellis with the medille-warde, bot they ware ille machede ;
 Of siche a grett multytude was meruayle to here.

Seyne at *the* assemblé the Sarazenes discoueres
 The soueraynge of Sessoyne, *that* saluede was neuer ;
 Gyawntis for-justede with gentille knyghtes, 2908
 Thorowe gesserawntes of Iene jaggede to *the* lierte !
 They hewe thorowe helmes hawtayne biernez,
That the hiltede swerdes to *thaire* hertes rynnys !

Than *the* renkes renownde of *the* Rownd Table
 Ryffes and ruyssches downe renayedede wreches ; 2913
 And thus they dreuene to *the* dede dukes and erles,
 Alle *the* dreghe of *the* daye, with dredfulle werkes !

Sir Priamus and
 his followers de-
 sert to the side
 of Arthur's men.

Thane *sir* Priamous *the* prynce, in *presens* of lordes,
 Presez to his penowne, and pertly it hentes,
 Reuertede it redily, and a-waye rydys
 To *the* ryalle rowte of *the* Rownde Table ; 2919
 And heylly his retenuz raykes hym aftyre,
 ffor they his resone had rede on his schelde ryche.

Owte of *the* scheltrone *they* schede, as schepe of a folde,
 And steris furth to *the* stowre, and stode be *theire* lorde !
 Seyne they sent to *the* duke, and saide hym *thise* wordes, —

They upbraid the
 Duke of Lorrains
 for not having
 paid them their
 wages.

“ We hafe bene thy sowdeours this sex 3ere and more ;
 We for-sake *the* to-daye be serte of owre lorde ; 2926
 We sewe to oure soueraynge in sere kynges londes.
 Vs defawtes oure feez of *this* foure wyntteres ;
 Thow arte feble and false, and noghte bot faire wordes ;
 Oure wages are werede owte, and *thi* werre endide,

- We maye *with* oure wirchipe weend whethire vs lykēs !
 I red *thowe* trette of a trewe, and trofie no lengere,
 Or *thow* salle tyne of thi tale ten thosande or euene."
 "ffya debles!" saide *the* duke, "the deuelle haue *your* bones!
 The dawngere of *30n* doggez drede schalle I neuer !
 We salle dele this daye, be dedes of armes, 2936
 My dede, and my ducherye, and my dere knyghtes !
 Siche sowdeours as *3e* I sett bot att lyttillē,
 That sodanly in defawte for-sakes theire lorde !" 2939
 The duke in his schelde and dreches no lengere,
 Drawes hym a dromedarie, with dredfullē knyghtez ;
 Graythes to *sir* Gawayne, with fullē gret nowmbyre
 Of gomes of Gernaide, that greuous are holdene. 2943
 Thas fresche horsesede mene to *the* frownt rydes,
 ffelles of oure fforreours be fourtty at ones !
 They hade foughttene be-fore with a fyve hundrethe ;
 It was no ferly, in faythe, *thofe* they faynt waxene.
 Thane *sir* Gawayne was grefede, and grypps his spere,
 And gyrdez in agayne with galyarde knyghttez ; 2949
 Metes *the* maches of Mees, and melles hym thorowe,
 As man of *this* medille-erthe, *that* moste hade greuede.
 Bot on Chastelayne, a childe of *the* kynges chambyre,
 Was warde to *sir* Wawayne of *the* weste marches,
 Cheses to *sir* Cheldrike, a cheftayne noble,
 With a chasyng spere he chokkes hym thurghe ! 2955
 This chekke hyme eschewede be chauncez of armes ;
 So *thay* chase *that* childe, eschape may he neuer !
 Bot on Swyane of Sweey, with a swerde egge,
 The swyers swyre-bane he swappes in sondyre ! 2959
 He swounande diede, *and* on *the* swarthe lengede,
 Sweltes ewynne swiftly, and swanke he no more !
Than *sir* Gawayne gretes with his gray eghne ;
 The guyte was a gude mane, be-gynnande of armes.
 ffore the charry childe so his chere chawngide, 2964
 That the chillande watire one his chekes rynnyde !
 "Woo es me," quod Gawayne, "that I ne wetene hiale ;

The Duke answers furiously.
 [leaf 84, back]

He charges Arthur's knights on a dromedary.

His men fell many of the forayers.

Sir Gawayne grasps his spear.

Child Chastelaine slays Sir Cheldrik,

and is slain by Swyan.

Gawayne grieves for him.

I salte wage for that wye alle *that* I welde, 2967
 Bot I be wrokene on that wye, that thus has hym wondyde!"
 He dresses hym drerily, and to *the* duke rydes,
 He slays one Sir Dolphyn,
 Bot one *sir* Dolphyne the derfe dyghte hym agaynes,
 And *sir* Gawayne hym gyrd with a grym launce, 2971
 That the groundene spere glade to his herte!
 And egerly he hente owte, and hurte a-nother,
 then Hardolf, happy in armes,
 An haythene knyghte, Hardolfe, happye in armes;
 Sleyghly in at the slotte slyttes hyme thorowe, 2975
 That the slydande spere of his hande sleppes!
 There es slayne in *that* slope, be elagere of his hondes,
 and sixty more.
 Sixty slongene in a slade of sleghe men of armes!
 Those *sir* Gawaynne ware wo, he wayttes hym by,
 And was warre of *that* wye that the childe wondyde,
 He avenges the child,
 And with a swerde swiftly he swappes hym thorowe,
 That he swyftly swelte, and on *the* erthe swounes!
 [leaf 85]
 And thane he raykes to *the* rowte, and ruysches one helmys;
 and cuts his way through the enemy.
 Riche hawberkes he rente, and rasede schyldes; 2984
 Rydes one a rawndoume, and his rayke holdes;
 Thorow-owte *the* rerewarde he holdes wayes,
 And thare raughte in the reyne this ryalle *the* ryche,
 And rydez in-to *the* rowte of *the* Rownde Table.
 The great deeds of Arthur's chivalrous men secure the victory.
Thane oure cheualrous¹ men changene their horsez,
 Chases and choppes downe cheftaynes noble,
 Hittes fulle hertely on helmes and scheldes, 2991
 Hurtes and hewes downe haythene knyghtez!
 Ketelle-hattes they cleue euene to *the* scholdirs!
 Was neuer siche a clamour of capitaynes in erthe!
 There was kynges sonnes kaughte, curtays and noble,
 And knyghtes of *the* contré, that knawene was ryche;
 Lordes of Lorayne and Lumbardye bothene 2997
 Laugh[t]e was, and lede in with oure lele knyghttez;
 Thus *that* chasede that daye, their chaunce was bettire,
 Swiche a cheke at a chace escheuede theyme neuer!
 Sir Florent presses on with five score knights.
When *sir* fflorent, be fyghte, had *the* felde wonene,
 He fferkes ine be-fore with fyve score knyghttez;

¹ MS. cheualrouers.

Theire prayes and *theire* presoner'es passes one aftyre,
 With pylours, and pausers, and pryse mene of armes.
 Thane gudly *sir* Gawayne gydes his knyghttez,
 Gas in at *the* gayneste, as gydes hym telles,
 ffore greffe of a garysone of fulle gret lordes 3007
 Sulde noghte gripe vpe his gere, ne swyche grame wirche.
 ffore-thy they stode at the straytez, and with his stale
 houede,

Sir Gawaine fol-
 lows with cau-
 tion,

Tille his prayes ware paste the pathe that he dredis ;
 Whene they the ceté myghte see that the kyng seggede,
 Sothely the same daye was wit[h] asawte wonnene. 3012
 An hawrawde hyes be-fore, the beste of the lordes,
 Hom at *the* herbergage, owt of tha hyghe londes ;
 Tornys tytte to *the* tente, and to the kyng'e telles 3015
 Alle the tale sothely, and how they hade spede ;—
 " Alle thy forreours are fere, that forrayede with-owt tyne,
 Sir fflorent, and *sir* ffloidas, and alle thy ferse knyghtez ;
 Thy hafe forrayede and fochtene with fulle gret nowm-
 byre, 3019

and sees the city
 which Arthur
 is besieging
 won on the same
 day.

A herald hies
 to Arthur and
 tells him of the
 victory of his
 knights,

And fele of thy foo-mene has broghte owt of lyffe !
 Oure wirchippulle wardayne es wele escheuyde,
 ffor he has wonne to-daye wirchipe for euere,
 He has Dolfyne slayne, and *the* duke takyne ! 3023
 Many dowghty es dede be dynt of his hondes !
 He has presoners price, pryncez and erles,
 Of *the* richeste blode that regnys in erthe !
 Alle thy cheuallrous mene faire are eschewede, 3027
 Bot a childe Chasteleynne myschance es be-fallene."
 " Hawtayne," sais *the* kyng, " harawde, be Criste !
 Thow has helyd myne herte, I hete the for-sothe !
 I zife the in Hamptone a hundreth pownde large." 3031

and how Sir Ga-
 waine has won
 worship for ever.

Then the king
 rejoices and gives
 him a hundred
 pounds.

[leaf 85, back]

Arthur assembles
 his knights to as-
 sault the city.

The kyng'e than to assawte he sembles his knyghtez,
 With somercastelle and sowe appone sere halfes ;
 Skyftis his skotiferis, and skayles the wallis,
 And iche wache¹ has his warde with wiese mene of
 armes. 3035

¹ Or wathe.

Churches and
chapels are beaten
to earth.

Thane boldly *thay* buske, and bendes engynes,
Payses in pylotes and proues theire castes ;
Mynsteris and masondewes they malle to *the* erthe,
Chirches and chapelles chalke-whitte blawunchede. 3039
Stone [s]tepelles fulle styffe in *the* strete ligges,
Chawmbyrs with chymnés, and many cheefe inns,
Paysede and pelid downe playsterede walles ;

The pain of the
people is pity to
hear.

The pyne of *the* pople was peté for to here ! 3043
Thane *the* duchez hire dyghte with damesels ryche,
The cowntas of Crasyne with hir clere maydyns,
Knelis downe in *the* kymelles thare the kyng houede,
On a couerede horse comlyli arayede ; 3047

The ladies sue
for mercy.

They knewe hym by contenance, and criede fullelowde,—
“Kyng crownede of kynde, take kepe to *these* wordes !
We be-seke 3ow, *sir*, as soueraynge and lorde,
That 3e safe vs to-daye, for sake of 3oure Criste ! 3051
Send vs some socoure, and saughte with the pople,
Or *the* ceté be sodaynly with assawte wonnene !”
He weres his vesere with a vowt noble ;
With vesage vertouous, this valyante bierne 3055
Meles to hir myldly with fulle meke wordes,—

Arthur promises
that no hurt shall
befall them.

“Salle no mysse do 3ow, ma dame, *that* to me lenges ;
I gyf 3ow chartire of pes, and 3oure cheefe maydens,
The childire and *the* chastemene, the cheualrous knyghtez ;
The duke es in dawngere, dredis it bott littlylle ! 3060
He salle idene *the* fulle wele, dout 3ow noghte ehes.”

The city is sur-
rendered.

Thane sent he one iche a syde to certayne lordez,
ffor to leue *the* assawte, the ceté was 3oldene ; 3063
With *the* erle eldeste sone he sent hym *the* kayes,
And seside *the* same nyghte, be sent of *the* lordes.

The Duke is sent
to Dover as a
prisoner.

The duke to Douere es dyghte, and alle his dere knyghtez,
To duelle in dawngere and dole *the* dayes of hys lyue.

Many of the in-
habitants escape.

Thare fleede, at the ferrere 3ate, folke withowttyne
nombyre, 3068
ffor ferde of *sir* fflorent and his fers knyghtez ;
Voydes the ceté and to the wode rynnys,
With vetaile, and vesselle, and vestoure so ryche. 3071

- They buske vpe a banere abowne *the* brode zates.
 Of *sir* fflorent, in ffay so fayne was he neuer !
 The knyghte houys on a hylle, be-helde to *the* wallys,
 And saide, "I see be zone syngne the ceté es oures !" Sir Florent sees
by a sign that
the city is won.
- Sir Arthure enters anone with hostes arayedede, 3076
 Euene at *the* vndrone etles to lenge.
 In iche leuere on lowde the kynge did crye,
 Of payne of lyf and lym and lesyng of londes,
 That no lele ligemane, that to hym lonngede, 3080
 Sulde iye be no ladysse, ne be no lele maydyns,
 Ne be no burgesse wyffe, better ne werse ;
 Ne no biernez myse-bide, that to *the* burghe longede.
Whene *the* kyng Arthure hade lely conquerid, 3084
 And the castelle couerede of *the* kythe riche,
 Alle *the* crowelle and kene, be craftes of armes,
 Captayns and constables, knewe hym for lorde.
 He deuysede and delte to dyuerse lordez, 3088
 A dowere for *the* ducheze and hir dere childire ;
 Wroghte wardaynes by wytte to welde alle *the* londez,
 That he had wonnene of werre, thorowe his wise
 knyghtez. 3091
- Thus in Lorayne he lenges as lorde in his awene,
 Settez lawes in the lande, as hym leefte t[h]oghte ;
 And one *the* Lammese day to Lucerne he wendez,
 Lengez thare at laysere with lykyng i-nowe ; 3095
 Thare his galays ware graythede, a fulle gret nombyre,
 Alle gleterand as glase, vndire grene hyllys,
 With cabanes couerede for kynges a-noyntede,
 With clothes of clere golde for knyghtez and *other* ;
 Sone stowede their stuffe, and stablede *their* horses,
 Strekes streke *ouer* *the* strem in-to *the* strayte londez.
 Now he moues his myghte with myrthes of herte,
 Ouere mowntes so hye, *thase* meruailous wayes ; 3103
 Gosse in by Goddarde, the garette he wynnys,
 Graythes the garnisone grisely wondes !
 Whene he was passede the heghte, than the kyng houys
 With his hole bataylle, be-haldande a-bowte, 3107

[leaf 86]

He forbids his
liegemen to lie
with the ladies.Arthur provides
for the govern-
ment of Lorraine
which he has
conquered.At Lammas he
goes to Lucerne.His fair galleys
are assembled.He leads his
forces over the
high mountains
by marvellous
ways ;He passes the St
Gothard after de-
feating the gar-
rison ;

looks down on
Lombardy, and
advances to
Como.

Lukande one Lumbarddye, and one lowde melys,—

“ In þone lykande londe, lorde be I thynke.”

Thane they cayre to Combe, with kynges a-noyntede,
That was kyde of *the* coste, kay of alle *other*. 3111

Sir fflorent and *sir* ffloridas than fowndes be-fore,
With ffreke mene of ffraunce welle a fyve hundreth ;

To *the* ceté vn-sene thay soghte at *the* gayneste,
And sett an enbuschement, als *theme* selfe lykys. 3115

Sir Florent and
Sir Floridas plant
an ambush,

Thane ischewis owt of *that* ceté, fulle sone be *the* morne,
Slale discourours, skyftes theire horses ;

Than skyftes *thes* skouerours, and skippes one hyllis,
Diskoueres for skulkers that they no skathe lymppene ;
Poueralle and pastorelles passede one aftyre, 3120

With porkes to pasture at the price zates ;
Boyes in *the* subarbis bourdene ffulle heghē,

At a bare synglere that to *the* bente rynnys.

Thane brekesoure buschement, and the brigge wynnes,
Brayedez in-to *the* burghe with baners displayede, 3125

and capture the
city.
[leaf 86, back]

Stekes and stabbis¹ thorowe that them a-zayne-stondes ;
ffowre stretis, or *thay* stynte, they stroyene fore euer !

The conqueror
holds his court
in Como.

Now es the conquerour in Combe, and his courte holdes
With-in *the* kyde castelle, with kynges enoyntede ;

Reconsaillez² the comouns that to *the* kyth lengez,
Comfourthes *the* carefulle with knyghtly wordez ; 3131

Made a captayne kene a knyghte of hys awene ;

Bot alle *the* contré and he fulle sone ware accordide.

The lord of
Milan sends to
offer submission
and tribute.

The syre of Melane herde saye *the* ceté was wonnene,
And send to Arthure sertayne lordes, 3135

Grete sommes of golde, sexti horse chargegid,

Be-soghte hyme as souerayne to socoure *the* people,

And saide he wolde sothely be sugette for euer,

And make hyme *seruece* and *suytte* for his sere londes ;
ffor plesaunce of Pawnce, and of Pownte Tremble, 3140

ffor Pyse, and for Pavy, he profers fulle large,

Bothe purpur, and palle, and precious stonys,

Palfrayes for any prynce, and prouede stedes ; 3143

¹ MS. stablis.

² Or Beconsaillez.

And ilke a zere for Melane a melione of golde,
 Mekely at Martynmesse to menske *with* his hordes ;
 And euer withowttyne askynge he and his ayers
 Be homagers to Arthure, whilles his lyffe lastis. 3147 He pays homage
to Arthur at
Como.
 The kynge be his concelle a condethe hym sendis,
 And he es comene to Combe, and knewe hym as lorde.
In-to Tuskane he tourne, whene *thus* wele tymede, Arthur enters
Tuscany,
 Takes townnes fulle tyte *with* towrres fulle heghe ;
 Walles he welte downe, wondyd knyghtez, 3152
 Towrres he turnes, and turmentez *the* pople,
 Wroghte wedewes fulle wlonke, wrotherayle synges,
 Ofte wery and wepe, and wryngene theire handis ; 3155
 And alle he wastys *with* werre, thare he awaye rydez, and ravages the
country.
 Thaire welthes and theire wonny[n]ges, wandrethe he
 wroghte !
 Thus they spryngene and sprede, and sparis bot lyttill,
 Spoylles dispetouslye, and spillis theire vynes ; 3159
 Spendis vn-sparely, *that* sparede was lange,
 Spedis theme to Spolett *with* speris inewe !
 fro Spayne in-to Spruyslande the worde of hyme
 sprynges, 3162
 And spekynge of his spencis, disspite es fulle hugge !
 Towarde Viterbe this valyant avires the reynes ;
 Avissely in *that* vale he vetailles his biernez, In the Vale of
Viterbo he
victuals his men.
With vernage, and *other* wyne, and venysone bakene ;
 And one the vicounte londes he visez to lenge. 3167
 Vertely the awawmwarde voydez theire horsez,
 In the Vertennone vale, the vines i-mangez ;
 Thare suggeournes this souerayne, *with* solace in herte,
 To see whene the senatours sent any wordes ; 3171
 Reuelle *with* riche wyne, riotes hym selfene,
 This roy *with* his ryalle mene of *the* Rownde Table, The king and his
knights make
[leaf 87]
great merriment.
With myrthis, and melodye, and manykyne gamies ;
 Was neuer meriere men made one this erthe ! 3175
Bot one a Seterdaye at none, a seuenyghte thare-affyre,
 The konyngeste cardynalle that to the courte lengede
 Knelis to *the* conquerour, and karpes thire wordes,

Prayes hym for *the* pes, and *profyrs* fulle large, 3179
 To hafe peté of *the* pope, *that* put was at-vndere ;
 Be-soghte hym of surrawns, for sake of oure Lorde,
 Bot a seuenyghte daye to *thay* ware alle semblede,
 And they schulde sekerlye hym see the Sonondaye
ther-aftyre, 3183

and offers that
the Pope shall
crown him as
sovereign in
Rome.

In the ceté of Rome, as *soueraing*e and lorde ;
 And crowne hyme kyndly *with* krysumede hondes,
With his ceptre, as *soueraing*e and lorde.

Hostages are
given for the
truth of his
words.

Of this vndyrtakynge ostage are comyne, 3187
 Of ayers fulle auenaunt awughte score childrenne,
 In toges of tarsse fulle richelye attyryde,
 And be-tuke theme the kyng, and his clere knyghttes.
 When they had tretide thiére trewe, *with* trowmpynge
ther-after 3191

They tryne vn-to a tente, whare tables whare raysede ;
 The kyng hyme selfene es sette, and certayne lordes,
 Vndyre a sylure of sylke, sawghte at the burdez,
 Alle the *senatours* are sette sere be *thame* one, 3195

The Roman sen-
ators are solemnly
feasted.

Serfed solemply *with* selcouthe metes :
 The kyng myghtty of myrthe, *with* his mylde. wordes,
 Rehetez the Romaynes at his riche table,
 Comforthes the cardynalle so knyghtly¹ hyme seluene ;
 And this roye ryalle, as romawns vs tellis, 3200
 Reuerence the Romayns in his riche table.
 The tawghte mene and *the* conyng, whene theme tyme
 thoghte,

Tas theire lefe at *the* kyng, and tornede agayne ; 3203
 To *the* ceté *that* nyghte thaye soughte at *the* gayneste,
 And thus the ostage of Rome *with* Arthure es leuede.

Than this roy royalle rehersys theis wordes,—

“ Now may we reuelle and riste, fore Rome es oure
 awene ! 3207

Make oure ostage at ese, *thise* auenaunt² chilydyrene,
 And luk 3e hondene theme alle that in myne oste lengez,
 The emperour of Almayne, and alle theis este marches ;

¹ MS. kynghtly.

² MS. auenaunt.

Arthur glorifies
himself for his
great success.

We salle be ouerlynge of alle *that one* the erthe lengez !
 We wille by *the* Crosse dayes encroche¹ *theis* londez,
 And at *the* Crystynmesse daye be crowned² ther-aftyre ; He will be crown-
ed at Christmas
in Rome, and
hold his Round
Table there.
 Ryngne in my ryalltés, and holde my Rownde Table,
 Withe the rentes of Rome, as me beste lykys ; 3215
 Syne graythe ouer *the* grette see with gud mene of armes,
 To reuenge the renke that one the rode dyede !”
 Thane this comlyche kyng, as cronycles tellys,
 Bownnys brathely to bede with a blythe herte ; 3219 He goes to bed
and dreams.
 Of he slynges with sleghte, and slakes gyrdille,
 And fore slewthe of slomowre one a slepe fallis.
 Bot be ane aftyre mydnyghte alle his mode changede ;
 He mett in the morne-while fulle *meruaylous* dremes ! [leaf 87, back]
 And whene his dredefulle drem whas drefene to *the* ende,
 The kyng dares for dowte, dye as he scholde ; 3225
 Sendes aftyre phylosophers, and his affraye telles,— He sends for his
philosophers, and
tells them the
dream.
 “ Sene I was formede in fayth, so ferde whas I neuer !
 ffor-thy rawnsakes redyly, and rede me my swefennys,
 And I salle redily and ryghte rehersene the sothe.
 Me thoughte I was in a wode willed myne one, He was in a
wood among wild
beasts,
 That I ne wiste no waye whedire *that* I scholde, 3231
 ffore woluez, and whilde swynne, and wykkyde bestez ;
 Walkede in that wasternne, wathes to seche ;
 Thare lyouns fulle lothely lykkyde *theire* tuskys,
 Alle fore lapyng of blude of my lele knyghtez ! 3235 which were lick-
ing from their
teeth the blood
of his knights.
 Thurghe *that* foreste I fiede, thare floures whare heghe,
 ffor to fele me for ferde of *tha* foule thynges ;
 Merkede to a medowe with montayngnes enclosyde, He flew to a
beautiful meadow
enclosed with
mountains, and
having vines of
silver and grapes
of gold.
 The meryeste of medillerthe that mene myghte be-holde !
 The close was in compas castyne alle abowte,
 With clauer and clereworte cleder euene ouer ;
 The vale was enuerownde³ with vynes of siluer,
 Alle with grapys of golde, gretter ware neuer, 3243
 Enhorilde with arborye and alkyns trees,
 Erberis fulle honeste, and hyrdez *there-vndyre* ;

¹ MS. Encroche encroche. ² MS. crownend.

³ MS. euene rownde.

Alle froytez foddennid was *that* floreschede in erthe,
ffaire frithed in frawnke appone tha free bowes ; 3247
Whas thare no downkyng of dewe that oghte dere
scholde,

With *the* drowghte of *the* daye alle drye ware *the* flores !

A beautiful
duchess de-
scended from the
clouds,

Than discendis in the dale, downe fra *the* clowddez,
A duches dereworthily dyghte in dyaperde wedis, 3251
In a surcott of sylke fulle selkouthely hewede,

dressed in gor-
geous apparel.

Alle with loyotour ouer-laide lowe to *the* hemmes,
And with ladyly lappes the lenghe of a 3erde,
And alle redily reuersside with rebanes of golde, 3255
Bruchez and besauntez, and *other* bryghte stonys,
With hir bake and hir breste was brochede alle ouer,
With kelle and with corenalle clenliche arrayede,
And *that* so comly of colour one knowene was neuer !

She whirled a
strange wheel
with her hands.

A-bowte cho whirllide a whele with hir whitte hondez,
Ouer-whelme alle qwayntely *the* whele as cho scholde ;
The rowelle whas rede golde with ryalle stonys,
Raylide with reched and rubyes i-newe ; 3263

Thereon was a
chair of silver,
ornamented with
carbuncles.

Kings clave to
the wheel one
aifter another.

The spekes was splentide alle with speltis of siluer,
The space of a spere lenghe springande fulle faire ;
There-one was a chayere of chalke-whytte siluer,
And chekyrde with charebocle chawngynge of hewes ;
Appone *the* compas ther clewide kyngis one rawe,
With coronys of clere golde *that* krakede in sondire :

Six had fallen
from the settle,
and lamented
their misfortune.

Sex was of *that* setille fulle sodaynliche fallene, 3270
Ilke a segge by hyme selfe, and saide theis wordez,—
'That euer I rengnede one *thir* rog, me rewes it euer !

[leaf 88]

Was neuer roye so riche that regnede in erthe !
Whene I rode in my rowte, roughte I noghte elles,
Bot reuaye, and reuelle, and rawnsone the people ! 3275
And thus I drife forthe my dayes, whilles I dreghe
myghte,

And there-fore derflyche I am dampnede for euer !'

The first was a
little man with
lean loins and
long hair.

The laste was a litylle mane that laide was be-nethe,
His leskes laye alle lene and latheliche to schewe, 3279

The lokkes lyarde and longe the lenghe of a 3erde,
 His lire and his lyghame lamede fullē sore ;
The two cyne of the byeryne was brighttere thane siluer,
 The *tother* was 3alowerē thane the 3olke of a naye.

‘I was lorde,’ *quod* the lede, ‘of londes i-newe, 3284
 And alle ledis me lowttede that lengede in ertē ;
 And nowē es lefte me no lappe my lygham to hele,
 Bot lightly now amē I loste, leue iche mane the sothe !’

He had been lord
 of many lands,
 but now was lost.

The secunde *sir* for-sothe *that* sewede theme aftyre,
 Was sekerare to my sighte, and saddare in armes ;
 Ofte he syghede vn-sownde, and said theis wordes,—
 ‘On 3one see hafe I sittene, als souerayne and lorde,
 And ladys me louede to lappe in theyre armes ; 3292
 And nowē my lordchippes are loste, and laide for euer !’

The second had
 sat on the seat as
 sovereign and
 lord.

The thirde thorowely was throo, and thikke in the
 schuldyrs,

The third was
 stout and strong.

A thra man to thrette of, there thretty ware gaderide ;
 His dyademe was droppede downe, dubbyde with stonys,
 Endente alle with diamawndis, and dighte for *the* nonis ;
 ‘I was dredde in my dayes,’ he said, ‘in dyuerse rewmes,
 And now dampnedē to *the* dede, and dole es the more !’

He had been
 dreaded in his
 day.

The fourte was a faire mane, and forsesy in armes,
The fayreste of feigure that fourmede was euer !
 ‘I was frekke in my faithe,’ he said, ‘whilles I one
 fowlde regnede,

The fourth was a
 fair man, but foul
 mischance had
 now happened to
 him.

ffamows in fferre londis, and floure of alle kynges ; 3303
 Now es my face defadide, and foule es me hapnede,
 ffor I am fallene fro ferre, and frendles by-leuyde !’

The fifte was a faire mane *thane* fele of *thies other*,
 A fforsesy mane and a ferse, with fomand lippis ; 3307
 He fongede faste *one the* feleyghes, and fayled his armes,
 Bot 3it he failede and felle a fyfty fote large ;
 Bot 3it he sprange and sprete, and spraddene his armes,
 And *one the* spere-lenghe spekes, he spekes *thire* wordes—

The fifth was very
 fierce and violent.

‘I was in Surrye a syr, and sett be myne one, 3312
 As souerayne and seyngnour of sere kynges londis ;

He had been
 sovereign in
 Syria, but was
 now fallen.

Now of my solace I am fulle sodanly fallene,
And for sake of my syne, 3one sete es me rewede !'

The sixth had a psalter well-bound, a harp, and a sling.

The sexte hade a sawtere semliche bowndene,
With a surepel of silke sewede fulle faire, 3317

A harpe and a hande-slynge with harde flynte stones ;
What harmes he has hente he halowes fulle sone,—
'I was demede in my dayes,' he said, 'of dedis of armes
One of the doughtyeste that duelled in erthe ;

He had been among the [leaf 88, back] doughtiest in his day, but had been marred by the maiden.

Bot I was merride one molde in my moste strengththis,
With this maydene so mylde, *that mofes vs alle.*' 3323

Two kynges ware clymbande, and clauerande one
heghe,

Two kings were climbing to the chair, but failed to reach it.

The creste of *the compas* they couette fulle 3erne ;
'This chaire of charbokle,' they said, 'we chalange
here-aftyre,

As two of *the cheffeste chosene* in erthe !' 3327

The childire ware chalke-whitte, chekys and *other*,
Bot the chayere a-bownne cheuede they neuer :

The one was passing fair of feature, and arrayed in blue with fleurs-de-lis of gold.

The forthirmaste was freely, *with a frount large*,
The faireste of fyssnamy *that fourmede* was euer ; 3331

And he was buskede in a blee of a blewe noble,
With flourdelice of golde floreschede al ouer ;

The other was clad in silver, with a cross of gold.

The *tother* was cledde in a cote alle of clene siluer,
With a comliche crosse coruene of golde, 3335

frowre crosselettes krafty by *the crosse ristes*,

And ther-by knewe I the kyng, *that crystned* hyme
semyde.

Arthur greeted the Duchess, who welcomed him.

Thane I went to *that wlonke*, and wynly hire gretis,
And cho said, 'welcome i-wis ! wele arte thou
fowndene ; 3339

The aughte to wirehipe my wille, and thou wele cowthe,
Of alle the valyant men that euer was in erthe ;
ffore alle thy wirehipe in werre by me has thou wonnene,
I hafe bene frendely, freke, and fremmede tille *other* ;
That has *thow fowndene* in faithe, and fele of *thi* hiernez,
ffore I fellid downe *sir Frolle* with frowarde knyghtes ;
ffore-thi the fruytes of Fraunce are freely thynne awene.

- Thow salle *the* chayere escheue, I chese *the* my selfene, He was chosen to
 Be-fore alle *the* cheftaynes chosene in this erthe.' 3348 achieve the chair,
- Scho lifte me vp lightly with hir lene hondes,
 And sette me softly in the see, *the* septre me rechede ; and was set there-
 Craftely with a kambe cho kembede myne heuede, 3351 in.
- That the krispane kroke to my crownne raughte ;
 Dressid oñe me a diademe, that dighte was fulle faire, The kingly orna-
 And syne profres me a pome pighte fulle of faire stonys, mentes were given
 Enamelde with azoure, the ertñ there-one depayntide, to him.
 Selkylde with the salte see appone sere halfes, 3356
- In sygne *that* I sothely was souerayne in erthe.
 Than broght cho me a brande with fulle bryghte hiltes, A sword with a
 And bade me brawdysche *the* blade, '*the* brande es bright hilt was
 myne awene : 3359 brought to him.
- Many swayne with *the* swynge has the sw[e]tte leuede ;
 ffor whilles thow swanke with the swerde, it swykkede
the neuer.'
- Than raykes cho with roo, and riste whene hir likede,
 To *the* ryndes of *the* wode, richere was neuer ; 3363
- Was no pomarie so pighte of pryneeze in erthe,
 Ne nonne apparaylle so prowde, bot paradys one.
- Scho bad *the* bewes scholde bewe downe, and bryng to He was taken to
 my hondes 3366 the wood, and the
 boughs were made
 to yield their
 fruit to him.
- Of *the* beste that they bare one brawnches so heghe ;
 Than they heldede to hir heste alle holly at oñes,
 The hegheste of iche a hirste, I hette zow for-sothe :
- Scho bade me fyrthe noghte *the* fruyte, bot fonde whilles He was bid take
 me likede, [leaf 59]
 freely of the
 finest.
- 'ffonde of *the* fyneste, thow freliche byerne, 3371
- And reche to *the* ripeste, and ryotte thy seluene !
 Riste, thow ryalle roye, for Rome es thyne awene !
 And I salle redily rolle *the* roo at *the* gayneste,
 And reche *the* *the* riche wyne in rynsede coupes.' 3375
- Thane cho wente to *the* welle by *the* wode enis, The lady drew
 wine for him
 from the spring,
- That alle wellyde of wyne, and wondirliche rynnnes ;
 Kaughte vp a coppe-fulle, and couerde it faire ; 3378
- Scho bad me dereliche drawe, and drynke to hir selfene. and bade him
 drink to her.

- And thus cho lede me abowte the lenghe of an owre,
 With alle likynge and luffe, *that* any lede scholde ;
 Bot at *the* myddaye fulle ewyne alle hir mode chaungede,
 And mad myche manace with meruayllous wordez ;
 Whene I cryede appone hire, cho kest downe hir browes :
 ‘ Kyng, thow karpes for noghte, be Criste *that* me made !
 ffor thow salle lose this layke, and thi lyfe aftyre,
 Thow has lyffede in delytte and lordchippes inewe !’
 Abowte scho whirles the whole, and whirles me vndire,
 Tille alle my qwarters *that* whille whare qwaste al to
 peces ! 3389
 And with that chayere my chyne was chopped in sondire !
 And I hafe cheueride for chele, sen me this chance
 happenede.
 Than wakkenyde I iwys, alle very for-dremyde, 3392
 And now wate thow my woo, worde as *the* lykes.”
 “ffreke,” sais the philosophre, “thy fortune es passede !
 ffor thow salle fynd hir thi foo, frayste whene the lykes !
 Thow arte at *the* hegheste, I hette the for-sothe ! 3396
 Chalange nowe when thow wille, thow cheuys no more !
 Thow has schedde myche blode, and schalkes distroyede,
 Sakeles, in eirquytrie, in sere kynges landis ; 3399
 Schryfe the of thy schame, and schape for thyne ende !
 Thow has a schewynge, *sir* kynge, take kepe 3if the lyke,
 ffor thow salle fersely falle with-in fyve wynters ! 3402
 frownde abbayes in ffrance, *the* froytez are theyne awene,
 ffore ffroille, and for fferawnt, and for thir ferse knyghttis,
 That thowe fremydly in ffrance has faye be-leuede ;
 Take kepe zitte of *other* kynges, and kaste in thyne herte,
 That were conquerours kydde, and crownede in erthe ;
 The eldeste was Alexandere, *that* alle *the* erthe lowttede ;
 The *tother* Ector of Troye, the cheualrous gume ;
 The thirde Iulyus Cesare, *that* geant was holdene,
 In iche jorné jentille, a-juggede with lordes ; 3411
 The ferthe was *sir* Iudas, a justere fulle nobile,
 The maysterfulle Makabee, the myghttyeste of strenghes ;

But at mid-day
 all was changed.

She spoke to
 him fiercely, and
 told him that he
 should lose his
 life.

She whirled the
 wheel round, till
 his quarters were
 quashed and his
 chine chopped
 asunder by the
 chair.

The philosopher
 interprets the
 dream, and tells
 Arthur that his
 good fortune is
 passed.

He is to prepare
 for his end,

and to found ab-
 beys in France.

He is bid take
 heed of the other
 kings who tried
 the chair.

The first was
 Alexander,
 the second
 Hector,
 the third Julius
 Cesar,

the fourth Judas
 the Maccabee,

The fyfte was Iosue, *that joly mane of armes,* 3414 *the fifth Joshua,*
That in Ierusalem oste fulle myche joye lymppede ;

The sexte was Dauid *the dere,* demyd *with kynges* *the sixth David,*
 One of *the* *doughtyeste that dubbede was euer,* *who slew the*
great Goliath.

ffor he slewe with a slynge, be sleyghte of his handis,
 Golyas the *grette gome, grymmeste in erthe ;* 3419

Syne endittede in his dayes alle the dere psalmes, [leaf 83, back]
That in the sawtire ere sette with selcoutine wordes.

The two clymbande kynges, I knawe it for-sothe,
 Salle Karolus be callide, the kyng sone of Fraunce ;
 He salle be crowelle and kene, and conquerour holdene,
 Couere be conqueste contres ynewe ; 3425

Of the two kings
who were clim-
bing, one shall
be Carolus of
France ;

He salle encroche the crowne that Crist bare hym selfene,
 And *that* *lifeliche launce, that lepe to his herte,*

he shall win the
crowne that Christ
bare, and the
lance that leapt
to his heart ;

When he was crucyfiede one crose, and alle *the* *kene*
 naylis,

Knyghtly he *salle* *conquere to Cristyne men hondes.*

The *tother* *salle* *be* *Godfraye,* *that Gode schalle reuenge*
 One *the* *Gud Frydaye with galyarde knyghtes ;* 3431

He *salle* *of Lorryne be lorde, be leefe of his fadire,*
 And *syne* *in Ierusalem myche joye happyne,*
*ffor he *salle* *couer the crosse be craftes of armes,* 3434*

the other shall be
Godfrey, the lord
of Lorraine, who
shall recover the
true cross.

And *syne* *be corownde kyng, with krysomenoyntede ;*
 Salle no duke in his dayes *siche* *destanye happyne,*
 Ne *siche* *myschefe dreghe, whene trewthe *salle* *be tryede !**

ffore-thy ffortune the fetches to fulfillle the nowmbyre,
 Als *nyne* *of the nobileste namede in erthe ;* 3439

Arthur is needed
to make up the
number of the
nine noblest.

This *salle* *in romance be redde with ryalle knyghttes,*
 Rekkenede and renownde with ryotous kynges,

And demyd one domesdaye, for dedis of armes, 3442
ffor the doughtyeste that euer was duelland in erthe :

He shall be cele-
brated for ever
as the doughtiest
on earth.
Many clerks shall
tell of his deeds.

So many clerkis and kynges *salle* *karpe of 3oure dedis,*
 And kepe 3oure conquestez in cronycle for euer !

Bot the wolfes in the wode, and the whilde bestes,
 Are some wikkyd mene that werrayes thy rewmes, 3447

The wolves in
the wood and the
wild beasts are
wicked men that
are warring on
his people.

Es entirde in thyne absence to werraye thy pople,

And alyenys and osten of vncouthē landis.

He will have
some tidings
within ten days.

Thow getis tydandis I trowe, with-in tene dayes, 3450

That some torfere es tydde, senē thow fro home turnede ;

I rede thow rekkyne and reherse vn-reasonable dedis,

He is bid to re-
pent and amend.

Ore the repenttes fulle rathe alle thi rewthe werkes !

Mane, amende thy mode, or thow myshappene,

And mekely aske mercy for mede of thy saule !" 3455

The king rises
and puts on his
robes.

Thane rysez the riche kyngē, and rawghte one his wedys,

A reedde actone of rosse, the richeste of floures,

A pesane, and a paunsone, and a pris girdille ;

And one he henttis a hode of scharlette fulle riche,

A pauys pillione hatt, *that* pighte was fulle faire 3460

With perry of *the* Oryent, and *precyous* stones ;

His gloues gayliche gilte, and grauene by *the* hemmys,

With graynes of rubyes fulle gracious to schewe ;

His bede grehownde, and his bronde, ande no byerne

elles, 3464

And bownnes *ouer* a brode mede, with breth̄ at his herte ;

further he stalkis a styē by *tha* stille enys,

Stotays at a hey strette, studyande hymne one ;

He sees a man
approaching in
the garb

Att the surs of *the* sonne, he sees there commande,

Raykande to Romewarde the redyeste wayes, 3469

A renke in a rownde cloke, with righte rowmme clothes,

With hatte, and *with* heyghe schone homely and rownde ;

With flatte ferthynges the freke was floreschede alle *ouer*,

[leaf 90]

Manye schredys and schragges at his skyrttes hymnges,

With scrippe, ande with slawyne, and skalopis i-newe,

of a pilgrim.

Both pyke and palme, alls pilgram hym scholde. 3475

The gome graythely hym grette, and bade gode morwene ;

The kyng lordelye hym selfe, of langage of Rome,

Of Latyne corroumpede alle, fulle louely hym menys,—

He asks him
whither he is
going,

“ Whedire wilnez thowe, wye, walkande thyne onne ?

Qwhylles *this* werlde es o werre, a wawhte I it holde ;

Here es ane enmye *with* oste, vndire zone vynes ;

And they see the, for-sothe, sorowe the be-tyddes ;

Bot ȝif thow hafe condethe of *the* kyngē selfene, 3483

Knaues wille kille the, and keppe at thow haues ;
 And if *thou* halde *the* hey waye, they hente the also,
 Bot if thow hastyly hafe helpe of his hende knyghttes."

and tells him the
 dangers of the
 way.

Thane karpes *sir* Cradoke to the kyng selfene, 3487

"I salle for-gyffe hym my dede, so me Gode helpe !
 Onye grome vndire Gode, that one this grownde walkes !

The stranger
 says that he fears
 no dangers.

Latte the keneste come, that to *the* kyng langes,
 I salle encountire hym as knyghte, so Criste hafe my
 sawle ! 3491

ffor thow may noghte reche me, ne areste thy selfene,
 Thosse *thou* be richely arayed in fullle riche wedys ;
 I wille noghte wonde for no werre, to wende whare me
 likes, 3494

Ne for no wy of this werlde, *that* wroghte es one erthe !

Bot I wille passe in pilgremage *this* pas vn-to Rome,
 To purchase me *pardonne* of the pape selfene ;
 And of paynes of purgatorie be plenevly assoyllede ;
 Thane salle I seke sekirly my souerayne lorde, 3499

He is bound in
 pilgrimage to
 Rome.

Sir Arthure of Englande, that auenaunt byerne !
 ffor he es in this empire, as hathelle men me telles,
 Ostayande in this Oryente with awfullle knyghtes."

Then he has to
 find Arthur of
 England.

"Fro qwyne come *thou*, kene mane," *quod* the kyng
 thane, 3503

The king asks
 him whence he
 comes, and
 whether he knows
 Arthur and his
 knyghts.

"That knawes kyng Arthure, and his knyghttes also ?
 Was *thou* euer in his courte, qwylls he in kyth lengede ?
 Thow karpes so kyndly, it comforthes myne herte !
 Well wele has *thou* wente, and wysely *thou* sechis,
 ffor *thou* arte Bretowne bierne, as by thy brode speche."

"Me awghte to knowe *the* kyng, he es my kydde lorde,
 And I calde in his courte a knyghte of his chambire ;
 Sir Craddoke was I callide, in his courte riche, 3511
 Keparre of Karlyone, vndir the kyng selfene ;

He tells him that
 his name is Sir
 Cradok, a knight
 of Arthur's cham-
 ber, and keeper of
 Caerleon.

Nowe am I cachede owtt of kyth, with kare at my herte,
 And that castelle es cawghte with vncowthe ledys."

Than the comliche kyng kaughte hym in armes, 3515
 Keste of his ketille-hatte, and kyssede hym fullle sone,

The king kisses
 and welcomes Sir
 Cradok.

Saide, "welcome, *sir* Craddocke, so Criste mott me helpe!
 Dere cosyne of kynde, thowe coldis myne herte!
 How faris it in Bretaynne, with alle my bolde berynns?
 Are they brettene, or brynte, or broughte owte of lyue?
 Kene thou me kyndely whatte caase es be-fallene; 3521
 I kepe no credens to crafe, I knowe the for trewe."

Sir Cradok tells
 liim of the evil
 [leaf 90, back]
 deeds of Modred.

"Sir, thi wardane es wikkede, and wilde of his dedys;
 ffor he wandreth has wroghte, sen thou a-waye passede;
 He has castelles enrochede, and corownde hym seluene,
 Kaughte in alle *the* rentis of *the* Rownde Tabille;
 He devisede *the* rewme, and delte as hym likes; 3527
 Dubbede of *the* Danmarkes, dukes and erles,
 Disseueride *them* sondirwise, and cites dystroyede,
 To Sarazenes and Sessoynes, appone sere halues,

He has gathered
 forces of paynims
 and outlaws,

He has semblede a sorte of selcouthie berynes, 3531
 Soueraynes of Surgenale, and sowdeours many,
 Of Peygh̄tes, and paynymms, and prouede knyghttes
 Of Irelande and Orgaile, owtlawede berynes;
 Alle thaa laddes are knyghttes *that* lange to *the* mowntes,
 And ledyngge and lordechippe has alle, aHs theme selfe
 likes; 3536

who rob the re-
 ligious and ravish
 the nuns.

And there es *sir* Childrike a cheftayne holdyne,
 That ilke cheualrous mane, he chargges thy pople;
 They robbe thy religeous, and ravische¹ thi nonnes, 3539
 And redy ryddis with his rowtte to rawnsone *the* pouere;
 ffro Humbyre to Hawyke he haldys his awene,

He has seized the
 whole of England
 and all Arthur's
 castles.

And alle *the* cowntré of Kentt be couenawnte entayllide;
 The comliche castelles that to the corowne langede,
 The holttes, and the hare-wode, and the harde bankkes,
 Alle *that* Henguste and Hors hent in *theire* tyme;

He has a fleet of
 seven score ships
 at Southampton.

Att Southamptone on the see es seuene skore chippes,
 ffrawghte full of ferse folke, owt of ferre landes, 3547
 ffor to fyghte with thy ffrappe, whene thou theme
 assailles.

But, worst of all,
 he has taken
 Guinever, and
 holds her as
 his wife!

Bot 3itt a worde witterly, thowe watte noghte *the* werste!
 He has weddede Waynore, and hir his wicffe holdis,

¹ MS. ravichse

And woynys in the wilde bowndis of *the* weste marches,
 And has wroghte hire with childe, as wittnesse tellis !
 Off alle *the* wyes of *this* worlde, woo motte hym worthe,
 AHis wardayne vnworthye womene to zeme !
 Thus has *sir* Modrede merrede vs alle ! 3555
 ffor-thy I merkede ouer thees mowntes, to mene *the* the
 sothe."

Than the burliche kyng, for brethe at his herte,
 And for this botelesse bale alle his ble chaungede !
 "By *the* rode," sais *the* roye, "I salle it revenge ! 3559
 Hym salle repente fulle rathe alle his rewthe werkes !"
 Alle wepande for woo he went to his tentis ;
 Vnwynly this wyesse kyng, he wakkenysse his berynes,
 Clepid in a clarioune kynges and othire, 3563
 Callys theme to concelle, and of *this* cas tellys,—

Arthur is overcome by the tidings, and vows revenge.

"I am *with* tresone be-trayede, for alle my trewe dedis !
 And alle my trauayle es tynt, me tydis no bettire !
 Hym salle torfere be-tyde, *this* tresone has wroghte,
 And I may traistely hym take, as I am trew lorde !
 This es Modrede, *the* mane that I moste traystede,
 Has my castelles encrochede, and corownde hyme seluene,
 With renttes and riches of the Rownde Table ; 3571
 Has made alle hys retenewys of renayede wrechis,
 And devysed my rewme to dyverse lordes,

He calls a council and tells them the ill news.

To sowdecours and to Sarazenes owtte of sere londes !
 He has weddyde Waynore, and hyr to wyefe holdes,
 And a childe es eschapede, the chaunce es no bettire !
 They hafe sembled on the see seuene schore chippis,
 fulle of ferrrome folke, to feghte with myne one !
 ffor-thy to Bretayne the brode buske vs by-houys, 3579
 ffor to brettyne *the* berynne that has *this* bale raysede !
 Thare salle no freke men fare, bott alle one fresche horses,
 That are fraistede in fyghte, and floure of my knyghttez :
 Sir Howelle and *sir* Hardolfe here salle be-leue, 3583
 To be lordes of the ledis that here to me lenges ;
 Lokes in-to Lumbardye, *that* thare no lede change,—

[leaf 91]

They must proceed to Britain with all speed.

Sir Howell and Sir Hardolf shall remain behind to govern Rome and Italy.

And tendirly to Tuskayne take tente alls I byde ;
 Resaywe the rentis of Rome qwene *that* are rekkenede ;
 Take sesyne the same daye that laste was assygnede,
 Or elles alle *the* ostage, with-owttyne *the* wallys, 3589
 Be hynggyde hye appone hyghte alle holly at ones !”

Arthur and his
 best knights
 journey rapidly
 towards Britain.

Nowe bownes the bolde kynge with [his] beste knyghtes,
 Gers trome and trusse, and trynes forth aftyre ;
 Turnys thorowe Tuskayne, taries bot littille, 3593
 Lyghte noghte in Lumbarddye bot whene *the* lyghte
 failede ;

Merkes ouer the mowntaynes fulle mervaylous wayes,
 Ayres thurghe Almaygne evyne at the gayneste ; 3596
 sferkes evynne in-to fflawndresche with hys ferse
 knyghttes ;

In fifteen days his
 fleet is assembled.
 He embarks and
 sets sail.

With-in fyftene dayes his flete es assemblede,
 And thane he schoupe hyme to chippe, and schownnes
 no lengere, 3599

Scherys with a charpe wynde ouer *the* schyre waters ;
 By *the* roche with ropes he rydes one ankkere,

He discovers the
 fleet of the enemy
 armed and pre-
 pared for fight.

Thare the false mene fletyde, and one flode lengede,
 With chefe chaynes of chare chokkode to-gedyrs, 3603
 Charggede evyne chekefulle of cheualrous knyghtes ;
 And in *the* hynter one heghte, helmes and crestes,
 Hatches with haythene mene hillyd ware thare vndyre,
 Prowdliche purtrayed¹ with payntede clothys, 3607

Iche a pece by pece prykkyde tylle *other*,
 Dubbyde with dagswaynnes dowblede they seme ;
 And thus *the* derfe Danamarkes had dyghte alle theyre
 chippys, 3610

That no dynte of no darte dere theme ne schoulde.
 Than the roye and *the* renkes of the Rownde Table
 Alle ryally in rede arrayes his chippis ;

Then he makes
 ready his ships
 for the battle,

That daye ducheryes he delte, and doubbyde knyghttes,
 Dresses dromowndes and dragges, and drawene vpe
 stonys ; 3615

¹ MS. prutrayede.

The toppe-castelles he stuffede with toyelys, as hym
lykyde,

Bendys bowes of vys brothly thare-aftyre ;

Tolowris tentyly takelle they ryghttene,

Brasene hedys fulle brode buskede one flones,

Graythes for garnysones gomes arrayes ; 3620

Gryme gaddes of stele, ghywes of iryne,

Stirttelys¹ steryne one sterynne with styffe mene of armes ;

Mony luffliche launce appone lofte stonndys,

Ledys one leburde, lordys and other, 3624

Pyghte payvese one porte, payntede scheldes,

One hyndire hurdace one highte helmede knyghtez.

Thus they scheftene foreschotys one thas schirestrandys, [leaf 91, back]

Ilke schalke in his schrowde, fulle scheene ware theire
wedys. 3628

The bolde kynge es in a barge and a-bowtte rowes,

Alle bare-heuvede for besye with beueryne lokkes ;

And a beryne with his bronde, and ane helme betyne,

Mengede with a mawncelet of maylis of siluer, 3632

Compaste with a coronalle, and couerde² fulle riche ;

Kayris to yche a cogge, to comfurthe his knyghttes :

To Clegys and Cleremownde he cryes one lowde,—

“ O Gawayne ! O Galyrane ! thies gud mens bodyes.”

To Loti and to Lyonelle fulle louefly he melys, 3637

And to sir Lawncelot de Lake lordliche wordys,—

“ Lat vs couere the kythe, the coste es owre ownne ;

And gere theme brotheliche blenke, alle zone blod-hondes !

Bryttnye them with-in bourde, and brynne theme thare
aftyre ! 3641

Hewe downe hertly zone heythene tykes !

They are harlotes halfe, I hette zow myne honnde !”

Than he coueres his cogge, and caches one ankere,

Kaughte his comliche helme with the clere maylis ;

Buskes baners one brode, betyne of gowles,

With coronns of clere golde clenliche arraiede ; 3647

The fool-men
righten the
tackle,

grim goads of
steels and gyves
of iron.

The bold king in
a barge rows
about bareheaded.

He cries aloud to
Cleges and Clerem-
ound, to Lionel
and Lancelot,

“ let us recover
our land and
make yon blood-
hounds blench ;
hew down heartily
the heathen
hounds.”

He reaches his
ship, takes his
helmet and mail,
and displays his
banners.

¹ MS. Stirttelys.

² MS. couerde.

His chief device
is a picture of our
Lady and the
Child.

Bot *thare* was chosene in *the* chefe a chalke-whitte
maydene,

And a childe in hir arme, *that* chefe es of hevynne :

With-owttene changynge in chace, thies ware *the* cheefe
armes 3650

Of Arthure *the* auenaunt, qvhylls he in ertne lengede.

The sailors busy
themselves to get
the ships under
weigh.

Thane the marynerse mellys, and maysters of chippis,
Merily iche a mate menys tille *other* ;

Of theire termys they talke, how *they* ware tydd,

Towynne trvsselle one trete, trvssene vpe sailes, 3655

Bet bonettez one brede, bettrede hatches ;

Brawdeste browne stele, braggede in trompes ;

Standis styffe one the stamynne, steris one aftyre ;

They strike across
the stream and
the strife begins.

Strekynne ouer *the* streme, thare stryvynge be-gynnes.

fro *the* wagande wynde owte of *the* weste rysses, 3660

Brethly bessomes *with* byrre in berynes sailles ;

With hir bryngges one burde burliche cogges,

Qvhylls *the* bilynge and *the* beme brestys in sondyre ;

So stowtly *the* forsterne one *the* stam hyttis, 3664

That stokkes of *the* stere-burde strykkys in peeces !

There is great
dashing together
of ships.

Be thane cogge appone cogge, krayers and *other*,

Grapplings are
thrown out.

Castys crepers one crosse als to *the* crafte langes : 3667

Thane was hede-rapys hewene *that* helde vpe *the* mastes ;

A mighty strug-
gle ensues.

Thare was conteke fulle kene, and crachynge of chippys !

Grett cogges of kampe crasseches in sondyre !

Mony kabane clevede, cabilles destroyede ! 3671

Knyghtes and kene mene killide the braynes !

Kidd castelles were corvene *with* alle theire kene wapene,

Castelles fulle comliche, *that* coloured ware faire !

Vpcynes eghelynge *they* ochene *thare*-aftyre, 3675

Masts fall and kill
the mariners.

With *the* swynge of *the* swerde sweys *the* mastys ;

Ovyre-fallys in *the* firste frekis and othire,

ffrekke in *the* forchipe fey es byleucfede !

[leaf 92]

Than brothely they bekyre with boustouse tacle, 3679

Boardings are
made and hand-
to-hand fights
take place.

Bruschese boldlye one burde brynyede knyghtes,

Owt of botes one burde was buskede with stonys,

Bett downe of *the* beste, brystis the hetches ;

Som gomys thourghe-gyrde with gaddys of yryne,
 Gomys gayliche clade ¹ englaymous wapene ! 3684

Archers of Inlande fulle egerly schottes,
 Hittis thourghe *the harde stele fulle hertly dynanttis !*
 Sonne hotchene in holle the *hethenne* knyghtes,
 Hurte thourghe *the harde stele, hele they neuer !* 3688

Than they falle to *the* fyghte, ffoynes with sperys,
 Alle the frekkeste one frownte *that to the* fyghte langes ;
 And ilkone frechely fraystез their strengthes, 3691
 Were to fyghte in *the flete with* their felle wapyne.
 Thus they dalte *that daye*, thire dubbide knyghtes,
 Tille alle *the Danes* ware dede, and in *the depe* throwene ! The Danes of
 Than Bretones brothely with brondis they hewene, Modred's fleet
 Lepys in vp one lofte lordeliche berynes ; 3696 are all slain.

When ledys of owt-loñdys leppyne in waters,
 Alle oure lordes one lowde laughene at ones !
 Be thane speris whare sprongene, spalddyd chippys,
 Spanyolis spedily sprentyde ouer burdez ; 3700
 Alle *the* kene mene of kampe, knyghtes and *other*,
 Killyd are colde dede, and castyne ouer burdez !
 Their swyers sweyftly has *the swete* leuyde,
Hethene heuande on hache in *ther* hawe ryses, 3704
 Synkande in *the salte* see seuene hundrethe at ones !
 Thane *sir* Gawayne the gude, he has *the* gree wonnene,
 And alle *the* cogges grete he gafe to his knyghtes, 3707
 Sir Geryne, and *sir* Grisswolde,² and othir gret lordes ;
 Garte Galuth, a gud gome, girde of *thaire* hedys !
 Thus of *the* false flete appone *the* flode happenede,
 And thus *theis* feryne folke fey are beleuede ! 3711
 3itt es *the* traytoure one londe with tryede knyghttes,
 And alle trompede they trippe one trappede stedys,
 Schewes theme vndir schilde one *the* schire bankkes ;
 He ne schownttes for no schame, bot schewes fulle heghe !
 Sir Arthure and Gawayne avyede theme bothene 3716
 To sixty thosandez of mene, *that* in their syghte houede.
 Be this the folke was fellyde, thane was *the* flode passede ;

The archers of
 England make
 haue among the
 heathen knights.

The Danes of
 Modred's fleet
 are all slain.

Arthur's lords
 laugh to see their
 foes leap into the
 water.

All Modred's
 keen men are
 killed.

Sir Gawaine gives
 the ships to his
 knights.

Thus befell the
 false fleet.

But Modred the
 traitor has a land
 army of tried
 knights.

¹ Or clade.

² MS. Grifswolde.

Thane was it slyke a slowde in slakkes fulle hugge,
 That let *the* kyng for to lande, and the lawe watyre ;
 ffor-*thy* he lengede one laye for lesyng of horsesys,
 To loke of his lege mene, and of his lele knyghtes,
 3if any ware lamede or loste, life 3ife they scholde.
 Than *sir* Gawayne *the* gude a galaye he takys, 3724
 And glides vp at a gole with gud mene of armes ;
 Whene he growndide, for grefe he gyrdis in *the* watere,
 That to *the* girdylle he gos in alle his gylte wedys ;
 Schottis vpe appone *the* sonde in syghte of *the* lordes,
 Sengly with hys soppe, my sorowe es the more !
 [leaf 92, back] With baners of his bagys beste of his armes, 3730
 He braydes vp-on the banke in his bryghte wedys ;
 He byddys his baneoure, " buske *thow* be-lyfe
 To 3one brode batayle that one 3one banke houes ;
 And I ensure 3ow sothe I salle 3owe sewe aftyre ; 3734
 Loke 3e blenke for no bronde, ne for no bryghte waypne,
 Bot beris downe of *the* beste and bryng theme o-dawe !
 Bees noghte abayste of theire boste, abyde one *the* erthe ;
 3e haue my baneres borne in batailles fulle hugge ;
 We salle felle 3one false, *the* fende hafe theire saules !
 ffightes faste with *the* frape, *the* felde salle be owres ;
 May I *that* traytoure ouer-take, torfere hyme tyddes,
 That this tresone has tymbyrde to my trewe lorde !
 Of siche a engendure fulle littylle joye happyns, 3743
 And *that* salle in this journee be juggede fulle euene !"
 Now they seke ouer *the* sonde *this* soppe at *the* gayneste,
 Sembles one *the* sowdeours, and settys theire dyntys ;
 Thourghe *the* scheldys so schene schalkes *they* towche,
 With schaftes scheueride schorte of *thas* schene launces ;
 Derfe dynttys they dalte with daggande sperys ;
 One *the* danke of *the* dewe many dede lyggys, 3750
 Dukes, and duszeperis, and dubbide knyghttys ;
 The doughttyste of Danemarke vndone are for euer !
 Thus *thas* renkes in rewthe rittis theire brenyes,
 And rechis of *the* richeste vn-rekene dynttis ; 3754
 Thare they thronge in the thikke, and thristis to *the* erthe

Arthur waits for the tide to rise before he lands.

Sir Gawaine wades ashore.

He bids his standard-bearer advance against Medred's host.

" We shall fell yon false men, the field shall be ours."

He and his little band charge the whole army.

- Of the thraeste mene thre hundrethe at ones ! 3756 They slay three hundred of the bravest.
- Bot *sir* Gawayne for grefe myghte noghte agayne-stande,
 Vmbegrippys a spere, and to a gome rynnys,
 That bare of gowles fulle gaye, with gowces of syluere ;
 He gyrdes hym in at *the* gorge with his gryme¹ launce,
 That *the* growndene glayfe graythes in sondyre ! 3761 Sir Gawaine kills the king of Gothland.
- With *that* boystous brayde he bownes hym to dye !
The kynge of Gutlande it was, a gude mane of armes.
 Thayre awawwarde than alle voydes *thare*-aftyre,
 Als venqueste verrayely with valyant berynes ; 3765 The vanguard of the army flies.
- Metis with medilwarde, that Modrede ledys !
 Oure mene merkes theme to, as theme myshappenede—
 ffor hade *sir* Gawayne hade grace to halde *the* grene hille,
 He had wirchipe i-wys womnene for *uer* ! 3769 Gawaine rashly advances against the centre, where Modred is, with the Montagus and other great lords.
- Bot *thane* *sir* Gawayne i-wysse, he waytes hym wele
 To wreke hyme on this werlaughe, *that* this werremouede ;
 And merkes to *sir* Modrede amonge alle his beryns,
 With the Mownttagus, and *other* gret lordys.
 Than *sir* Gawayne was greuede, and with a gret wylle
 ffewters a faire spere, and freschely askryes,— 3775 Gawaine puts a good spear in rest, and assails Modred with reproaches.
- “ ffals fosterde foode, the fende haue thy bonys !
 ffy one the, felone, and thy false werkys !
 Thow salle be dede and vndone for thy derfe dedys,
 Or I salle dy this daye, 3if destanye worthe !” 3779
- T**thane his enmye, with oste of owlawede berynes,
 Alle enangylles abowte oure excellente knyghttez,
 That the traytoure be tresone had tryede hym seluene ;
 Dukes of Danemarke he dyghttes fulle sone, 3783 [leaf 98] The host of the enemy, numbering sixty thousand men, surround Gawaine and his little band.
- And leders of Lettowe, with legyons inewe,
 Vmbylappyde oure mene with launcez fulle kene,
 Sowdecours and Sarazenes owte of sere landys,
 Sixty thosande mene semlyly arrayede, 3787
- Sekerly assembles thare one seuenschore knyghtes,
 Sodaynly in dischayte by tha salte strandes.
 Thane *sir* Gawayne grette with his gray eghene,
 ffor grefe of his gud mene that he gyde schulde ; 3791 Gawaine weeps and laments for the danger of his men.

¹ growne struck out, and gryme written instead.

He wyste that *thay* wondyde ware, and wery for-
foughttene ;

And what for wondire and woo, alle his witte faylede.

And thane syghande he saide, *with* sylande terys,—

“ We are *with* Sarazenes be-sett appone sere halfes !

I syghe noghte for my selfe, sa helpe oure Lorde ; 3796

Bot for to [see] vs supprysede, my sorowe es the more.

Bes dowghtty to-daye, 3one dukes schalle be 3oures !

ffor dere Dryghttynne this daye, dredys no wapyne.

He comforts
them with pro-
mises of blessings
in heaven.

We salle ende this daye a^{lls} excellent knyghttes, 3800

Ayere to endelesse joye *with* angelles vnwemmyde.

Thofe we hafe vnwittily wastede oure selfene,

We salle wirke alle wele in *the* wirchipe of Cryste.

We salle for 3one Sarazenes, I sekire 3ow my trowhe,

Scuppe *with* oure Saueoure solemPLY in heuene,

In presence of *that* precious, prynce of alle *other* 3806

They shall sup
with prophets,
patriarchs, and
apostles.

With prophetes, and patriarkes, and apostlys fulle nobill,

Be-fore his freliche face that *four*mede vs alle !

He that yields
unslain, be he
nevermore saved
or succoured of
Christ!

3ondire to 3one 3aldsones, he *that* 3eldes hyme euer,

Qwhylls he es qwykke and in qwerte vnquellyde *with*

handis,

Be he neuer mo sauede, ne socourede *with* Cryste,

Bot Satanase his sawle mowe synke in-to he^{ll}e !” 3812

Then Gawaine
grimly grips his
weapon,

Than grymly *sir* Gawayne gryppis hys wapyne,

Agayne *that* gret bataille he graythes hym sone ;

Radly of his riche swerde he reghttes *the* cheynys,

In he schokkes his schelde, schountes he no lengare ;

Bot a^{lls} vnwyse, wodewyse, he wente at *the* gayneste,

and rushes into
the fray.

Wondis of thas wedirwyns *with* wrakfulle dynttys,

Alle wellys fulle of blode, thare he awaye passes ; 3819

And *thofe* hym ware fulle woo, he wondys bot lyttille,

Bot wrekyis at his wirchipe *the* wrethe of hys lorde !

He performs
mighty deeds of
arms.

He stekys stedis in stoure, and sterenefulle knyghttes,

That sterynemene in theire sterapes stone-dede *thay* lygge !

He ryvys *the* ranke stele, he rittes *the* mayles ; 3824

Thare myghte no renke hym areste, his resone was

passed !

- He felle in a fransye for fersenesse of herte,
 He feghttis and fellis downe *that hyme be-fore standis !*
 ffelle neuer fay mane siche fortune in erthe ! 3828
- In-to *the hale bataile hedlyngs* he rynnys,
 And hurtes of *the hardieste that one the erthe lenges !*
 Letande aHs a lyone, he lawnches theme thorowe,
 Lordes and ledars, that one the launde houes ! 3832 [leaf 93, back]
- 3it *sir Gawayne* for wo wondis bot lyttille,
 Bot woundis of thas wedirwynes with wondirfulle dyntes,
 Alls he *that wold wilfully wastene hyme selfene ;*
 And for wondsome and wille alle his wit failede, 3836
 That wode aHs a wylde beste he wente at *the gayneste ;*
 Alle walewede one blode, thare he a-waye passede ;
 Iche a wy may be warre, be wreke of an-*other !* 3839
- T**han hemoues to *sir Modrede* amange alle his knyghttes,
 And mett hyme in *the myde schelde*, and mallis hyme
 thorowe ;
- Bot the schalke for the scharpe he schownttes a littille,
 He schare hyme one *the schorte rybbys* a schaftmonde
 large ! 3843
- The schafte schoderede and schotte in the schire beryne,
That the schadande blode ouer his schanke rynnys,
 And schewede one his schynbawde, *that was schire*
 burneste ! 3846
- And so they schyfte and schove, he schotte to *the erthe ;*
 With *the lussche of the launce* he lyghte one hys schuldrys,
 Ane akere lenghe one a launde, fulle lothely wondide.
 Than Gawayne gyrde to *the gome*, and one *the groffe*
 fallis ; 3850
- AHs his grefe was graythede, his grace was no bettyre !
 He schokkes owtte a schorte knyfe schethede with siluere,
 And scholde haue slottede hyme in, bot no slytte
 happenede ;
- His hand sleppid and slode o slante one *the mayles*,
 And *the tother slely slynges hym vndire :* 3855
- With a trenchande knyfe the traytoure hym hyttes,
 MORTE ARTHURE. 8

He fights like a madman.

Mad as a wild beast, he leaves all wallowing in blood where he passes.

He wounds Modred in the side.

Modred falls to the earth.

Gawaine strikes at him with a knife, but misses his blow.

The traitor hits him

through the
helmet and the
head.

Thorowe *the* helme and *the* hede, one heyghe one *the*
brayne :

And thus *sir* Gawayne es gone, the gude man of armes,
With-owt^ttyne reschewe of renke, and rewghe es *the* more !

Gawaine is gone,
the good man of
arms!

Thus *sir* Gawayne es gone, that gyede many othire ;
ffro Gowerre to Gernesay, alle *the* gret lordys 3861
Of Glamour, of Galys londe, *this* galyarde knyghtes,
ffor glent of gloppynyng¹ glade be they neuer !

K yng ffroderike of Fres faythely *thare*-aftyre, 3864
ffraynes at the false mane of owre ferse knyghte ;

King Frederick
asks who he was.

“ Knew thou *ever* this knyghte in thi kithe ryche,
Of whate kynde he was comene? be-knowe now *the* sothe ;
Qwat gome was he this *with* the gaye armes, 3868
With *this* gryffounne of golde, *that* es one growffe fallyne ?
He has grettly greffede vs, sa me Gode helpe !

Gyrde downe oure gude mene, and greuede vs sore !

He was *the* sterynneste in stoure that *ever* stele werryde,
ffore he has stonayed oure stale, and stroyede for *ever* !”

Modred tells
him that he was
Sir Gawaine the
good, the merri-
est, the kindest,
and the bravest
of knights!

Than *sir* Mordrede with mouthe melis fulle faire ; 3874

“ He was makles one molde, mane, be my trowhe ;

This was *sir* Gawayne the gude, *the* gladdeste of othire,

And the graciouseste gome that vndire God lyffede,

Mane hardyeste of hande, happyeste in armes, 3878

And *the* hendeste in hawle vndire heuene riche ;

The lordelieste of ledyng qwhylles he lyffe myghte,

ffore he was lyone allossede in londes i-newe ;

The hardest of
hand, the hap-
piest in arms, the
most courteous in
hall!

[leaf 94]

Had thou knowene hym, *sir* kynge, in kythe thare he

lengede, 3882

His konyng, his knyghthode, his kyndly werkes,

His doyng, his doughtynesse, his dedis of armes,

Thow wolde hafe dole for his dede *the* dayes of thy
lyfe !”

Modred weeps
and curses his
destiny,

3it *that* traytour aHs tite teris lete he falle, 3886

Turnes hym furthe tite, and talkes no more,

Went wepand a-waye, and weries the stowndys,

¹ MS. gloppynyng.

- That* euer his werdes ware wroghte sicke wandrethe to
wyrke : that euer he was
fated to work
such woe.
- Whene he thoghte on *this* thyng, it thirlede his herte ;
ffor sake of his sybb blode sygheande he rydys ; 3891
- When *that* renayede renke remembirde hym seluene,
Of reuerence and ryotes of *the* Rownde Table,
He remyd and repent hym of alle his rewthe werkes, He repents of his
wickedness and
retreats,
Rode awaye with his rowte, ristys he no lengere, 3895
ffor rade of oure riche kyng, ryve *that* he scholde.
- Thane kayres he to Cornewaile, carefull in herte, goes into Corn-
wall,
Be-cause of his kynsemane that one the coste liggis :
He tariet tremlande ay, tydandis to herkene. 3899
- Than the traytoure treuntede *the* Tyseday *thar*-aftyre,
Trynnys in *with* a trayne tresone to wirke,
And by *the* Tambire *that* tide his tentis he reris, and pitches his
tents by the Ta-
mar,
And thane in a mette-while a messangere he sendes,
And wraite vn-to Waynor how the werlde chaungede, and from thence
writes to Guine-
ver,
And what comliche coste the kyng was aryuede, 3905
One floode foughtene *with* his fleete, and fellyd theme
o lyfe ;
- Bade hir ferkene oo ferre, and fflee with hir childire,
Whills he myghte wile hym awaye, and wyne to hir
speche, 3908
- Ayere in-to Irelande, in-to *thas* owte-mowntes, bidding her fly
into Ireland.
And wonne thare in wilderness *with*-in *tha* wast landys.
- Than cho 3ermys and 3ee at 3orke in hir chambire,
Gronys fulle gryssely *with* gretand teres, 3912
Passes owte of *the* palesse *with* alle hir pryce maydenys,
Towarde Chestyre in a charre thay chese hir *the* wayes,
Dighte hir ewyne for to dye *with* dule at hir herte ;
Scho kayres to Karelyone, and kawghte hir a vaile, But she goes to
Caerleon and
takes the veil.
Askes thare *the* habite in *the* honoure of Criste,
And alle for falsede, and frawde, and fere of hir louerde !
- B**ot whene oure wiese kyng wiste *that* Gawayne was
landede, 3919
- He al to-wrythes for woo, and wryngande his handes, Arthur is grieved

for Gawaine's
rash landing, and
follows him
wading through
the water.

Gers lawnche his botes appone a lawe watire,
Londis als a lyone with lordliche knyghtes,
Slippes in in the sloppes o-slante to *the* girdylle,
Swalters vpe swyftly with his swerde drawene, 3924
Bownnys his bataile and baners displayes,
Buskes ouer *the* brode sandes with breth̄ at his herte,

He hastens to the
field where ten
thousand of the
traitor's men and
seven score of
his own knights
lie dead.

fferkes frekkly one felde *thare the* feye lygges ;
Of the traytours mene one trappede stedis, 3928
Ten thosandez ware tynte, *the* treghe to acownt,
And certane on owre syde seuene score knyghtes
In soyte with their souerayne vn-sownde are beleuede !

[leaf 94, back]

Arthur slays
dukes and earls ;

The kyng comly ouer-keste knyghtes and othire,
Erles of Awfrike, and Estriche berynes 3933
Of Orgaile and Orekenay, *the* Iresche kynges,
The nobileste of Norwaye, nowmbirs fulle hugge,
Dukes of Danamarke, and dubbid knyghtes ;
And the guchede kyng in the gay armes 3937

He seeks for the
knights of the
Round Table,

Lys gronande one *the* grownnde, and girde thorowe euene !
The riche kyng ransakes with rewthe at his herte,
And vp rypes the renkes of alle *the* Rownde Tabyll ;
Ses theme alle in a soppe in sowte by theme one, 3941
With *the* Sarazenes vn-sownde enserchede a-bowte ;

and finds Sir Ga-
waine lying dead.

And *sir* Gawayne the gude in his gaye armes,
Vmbegrippede the girse, and one grouffe fallene, 3944
His baners braydene downe, betyne of gowllies,
His brand and his brade schelde al blody be-rouene ;
Was neuer oure semliche kyng so sorowfulle in herte,
Ne *that* sanke hyme so sade, bot *that* sighte one. 3948

With groans and
tears he kisses
the body.

Than gliftis *the* gud kyng, and glopyns in herte,
Gronys fulle grisely with gretande teris ;
Knelis downe to *the* cors, and kaught it in armes,
Kastys vpe his vmbre, and kyssis hyme sone, 3952
Lokes one his eye-liddis, *that* lowkkide ware faire,
His lippis like to *the* lede, and his lire falowede !

He bitterly la-
ments the good
knight.

Than the corownde kyng cries fulle lowde,—
“ Dere kosyne o kynde, in kare am I leuede ! 3956

ffor nowe my wirchipe es wente, and my were endide !
 Here es *the* hope of my hele, my happyng of armes !
 My herte and my hardynes hale one hym lengede !
 My concelle, my comforthe, *that* kepide myne herte !
 Of alle knyghtes *the* kynge *that* vndir Criste lifede,
 Thou was worthy to be kynge, *thofe* I *the* corowne bare !
 My wele and my wirchipe of alle *this* werlde riche 3963
 Was wonnene thourghe *sir* Gawayne, and thourghe his
 witt one !

It was through
 his wit that all
 his conquests
 were made.

Allas !" saide *sir* Arthure, " nowe ekys my sorowe !
 I am vtirly vndone in myne awene landes !
 A dwtthouse derfe dede, *thou* duellis to longe ! 3967
 Why drawes *thou* so one dreghe ? *thow* drownnes myne
 herte !"

Than swe[l]tes the swete kynge and in swoune fallis,
 Swafres vp swiftly, and swetly hym kysses,
 Tille his burliche berde was bloody be-rowne, 3971
 Alls he had bestes birtenede, and broghte owt of life ;
 Ne had *sir* Ewayne comene, and othire grete lordys,
 His bolde herte had broustene for bale at *that* stownde !
 "Blyne," sais thies bolde mene, " *thow* blondirs *thi*
 selfene, 3975

Arthur swoons
 for grief ; then
 starts up and
 kisses the dead
 knight.
 His beard is
 smeared in the
 blood of Gawayne.

Sir Ewayne and
 his knights re-
 strain him.

This es botles bale, for bettir bees it neuer !
 It es no wirchipe i-wysse to wryng thyne hondes,
 To wepe als a womane it es no witt holdene !
 Be knyghtly of contenaunce, als a kyng scholde, 3979
 And leue siche clamoure for Cristes lufe of heuene !"
 "ffor blode," said the bolde kynge, " blyne salle I neuer,
 Or my brayne to-briste, or my breste *other* !
 Was neuer sorowe so softe that sanke to my herte,
 Itt es fulle sibb to my selfe, my sorowe es the more !
 Was neuer so sorowfulle as yghte seyne *with* myne eyghene !
 He es sakles supprysede for syne of myne one !"
 Downe knelis *the* kynge, and kryes fulle lowde ; 3987
 With carefulle contenaunce he karpes thes wordes,—
 " O rightwis riche Gode, this rewthe *thow* be-holde !

[leaf 95]

He excuses him-
 self on account
 of the greatness
 of the grief.

*This ryalle rede blode ryne appone erthe ;
It ware worthy to be schrede and schryned in golde,
ffor it es sakles of syne, sa helpe me oure Lorde !* 3992

He collects Ga-
waine's blood in
a helmet,

Downe knelis *the kyng with kare* at his herte,
Kaughte it vpe kyndly *with his clene handis*,
Keste it in a ketille-hatte, and couerde it faire, 3995
And kayres furthe *with the cors* in kyghte *thare* he lenges.

and carries away
his body.

Then he makes a
solemn vow that
he will take no
pleasure in the
chase till Ga-
waine be
avenged.

“**H**ere I make myn avowe,” *quod* the kyng thane,
“To Messie, and to Marie, the mylde qwenne of
heuene,

I salle neuer ryvaye, ne racches vn-cowpylle
At roo ne rayne-dere, *that rynnnes apponne erthe ;* 4000
Neuer grewhownde late glyde, ne gossehawke latt flye,
Ne neuer fowle see fellide, *that flieghes with wenge ;*
ffawkone ne formaylle appone fiste handille,
Ne zitt *with gerefawcone* rejoyse me in erthe ; 4004
Ne regne in my royaltéz, ne halde my Rownde Table,
Tille thi dede, my dere, be dewly reuengede !
Bot euer droupe and dare, qwylles my lyfe lastez,
Tille Drightene and derfe dede hafe done qwate theme
likes !” 4008

The body was
sent straight to
Winchester,

Than kaughte they vpe *the cors with kare* at theire hertes,
Karyed [it] one a coursere *with the kyng selfene ;*
The waye vn-to Wynchestre *thay wente* at the gayneste,
Wery and wandsomdly, *with wondide knyghtes ;* 4012
Thare come *the prior of the plas*, and professide monnkes,
Apas in processione, and *with the prynce metys ;*
And he be-tuke *thame* the cors of *the knyghte noble*.

and met by a pro-
cession of monks.

Arthur gives or-
ders that all hon-
our should be
paid to the dead.

“Lokis it be clenly kepyd,” he said, “and in *the kirke*
holdene, 4016

Done for derygese, as to *the ded fallys*,
Menskede *with messes*, for mede of *the saule :*
Loke it wante no waxe, ne no wirchipe elles,
And at *the body* be bawmede, and one erthe holdene,
ziff thou kepe thi couent encroche any wirchipe 4021
At my comyng a-gayne, zif Crist wille it thole ;

A-byde of *the* beryenge till they be broughte vndire,
That has wroghte vs this woo, and *this* werre mouede.”

Than sais *sir* Wychere *the* wy, a wyese mane of armes,
“I rede 3e warely wende, and wirkes the beste ;

Sir Wycher advises that he should stay in Winchester and rally his forces.

Soiorne in this ceté, and semble thi berynes, 4027

And bidde *with* thi bolde mene in thi burghe riche :

Get owt knyghttez of contres, that castelles holdes,

And owt of garysons grete gude mene of armes,

ffor we are faithely to fewe to feghte *with* theme alle,

That we see in his sorte appone *the* see bankes.” 4032

With krewelle contenance thane the kyng karpis theis
wordes,—

“I praye the kare noghte, *sir* knyghte, ne caste *thou* no
dredis !

[leaf 95, back]

Hadde I no segge bot my selfe one vndir sone, 4035

And I may hym see *with* sighte, or one hym sette hondis,

I salle evene amange his mene malle hym to dede,

Are I of *the* stede styre halfe a stede lenghe !

I salle [stryke] hym in his stowre, and stroye hym foreuer,

And *thare*-to make I myne avowe devottly to Cryste,

And to hys modyre Marie, *the* mylde qwene of heuene !

I salle neuer soiourne sounde, ne sawghte at myne herte,

In ceté ne in subarbe sette appone erthe, 4043

Ne 3itt slomyre ne slepe *with* my slawe eyghne,

Tille he be slayne *that* hym slowghe, 3if any sleyghte
happene :

He will never sojourn in city or town till Medred be slain.

Bot euer pursue the payganys *that* my pople distroyede,

Qwylls I may pare theme and pynne, in place *thare* me
likes.” 4047

Thare durstenorenke hym areste of alle *the* Rownde Table,

Ne none paye *that* prynce *with* plesande wordes,

Ne none of his lige mene luke hym in the eyghne,

So lordely he lukes for losse of his knyghttes ! 4051

Thane drawes he to Dorsett, and dreches no langere,

Derefulle dredlesse *with* drowppande teris ;

Kayeris in-to Kornewayle *with* kare at his herte,

None of his liegemen dare look him in the eyes.

Arthur follows
Modred into
Cornwall and at-
tacks him.

The trays of *the* traytoure he trynys fulle euenne ; 4055
And turnys in be *the* Treyntis *the* traytoure to seche,
ffyndis hym in a foreste *the* Frydaye there-aftire ;
The kyng lyghttes one fott, and freschely askryes,
And *with* his freliche folke he has *the* felde nommene !

A vast host of
aliens assault Ar-
thur's men.

Now isschewis his enmye vndire *the* wode eynys,
With ostes of alynes fulle horrebille to schewe !
Sir Mordrede the Malebranche, *with* his myche pople,
ffoundes owt of the foreste appone fele halves, 4063
In seuene grett batailles semliche arrayede,

There were sixty
thousand against
eighteen hun-
dred.

Sixty thowsande mene, the syghte was fulle hugge,
Alle fyghtande folke of *the* ferre lanndes,
ffaire fettede one frownte be tha fresche strondcs !
And alle Arthurs oste was amede *with* knyghtes 4068
Bot awghtene hundrethe of alle, entrede in rolles ;
This was a mache vn-mete, bot myghttis of Criste,
To melle *with* *that* multitude in *thase* man londis.
Than the royalle roy of *the* Rownde Table 4072

Arthur on a
charger arranges
his men.

Rydes one a riche stede, arrayes his beryns,
Buskes his awawnwarde, als hym beste likes ;
Sir Ewayne, and *sir* Errake, and othire gret lordes,
Demenys the medilwarde menskefully thare-aftyre,
With Merrake and Meneduke,¹ myghtty of strenghes ;
Idirous and Alymere, *thire* auenaunt childrene,
Ayers *with* Arthure, *with* seuene score of knyghtes ;
He rewlis *the* rerewardre redyly thare-aftyre, 4080
The rekeneste redy mene of *the* Rownde Table,
And thus he fittis his folke, and freschely askryes,
And syene comforthes his mene *with* knyghtlyche
wordes—

He beseeches
them to do well
that day and not
to fear.

“ I be-seke 3ow, sirs, for sake of oure Lorde, 4084
That 3e doo wele to-daye, and dredis no wapene !
ffighttes fersely nowe, and fendis 3oure seluene,
ffellis downe 3one feye folke, the felde salle be owrs !
They are Sarazenes 3one sorte, vn-sownde motte they
worthe ! 4088

[leaf 96]

¹ Or Menyduke.

Sett one theme sadlye, for sake of oure Lorde !

3if vs be destaynede to dy to-daye one this erthe,

We salle be hewede vn-to heuene, or we be halfe colde !

Loke 3e lett for no lede lordly to wirche ; 4092

Layes 3one laddes lowe be the layke ende !

Take no tente vn-to me, ne tale of me rekke,

Bes besy one my baners with 3oure brighte wapyns,

That they be strengthely stuffede with steryne knyghtes,

And holdene lordly one lofte ledys to schewe ; 4097

3if any renke theme arase, reschowe theme sone.

Wirkes now my wirchipe, to-daye my werre endys !

3e wotte my wele and my woo, wirkkys as 3ow likys !

Crist comly with crowne comforthe 3ow alle, 4101

ffor the kyndeste creatours that euer kynge ledde !

I gyffe 3ow alle my blyssyng with a blithe wille,

And alle Bretowns bolde, blythe mote 3e worthe !”

They pype vpe at pryme tyme, approaches theme nere,

Pris mene and priste proues their strengthes ;

Bremly the brethemen bragges in troumpes, 4107

In cornettes comlyly, whene knyghttes assembles,

And thane jolyly enjoynys theis jentylle knyghttes ;

A jolyere journé ajuggede was neuer,

Whene Bretones boldly enbraces their scheldes, 4111

And Cristyne encroyssede theme, and castis in fewtire !

Than sir Arthure oste his enmye askryes,

And in they schokke their scheldes, schontes no
lengare ;

Schotte to the schiltrones, and schowttes fulle heghe,

Thorowe scheldis fulle schene schalkes they touche !

Redily thas rydde mene of the Rownde Table 4117

With ryalle ranke stele rittys their mayles ;

Bryneys browddene they briste, and burneste helmys,

Hewes haythene mene downe, halses in sondre !

ffyghtande with fyne stele, the feye blod rynnys, 4121

Of the frekkeste of frounte, vn-fers ere be-levede.

Ethyns of Argayle and Irische kynges

Enverounes oure avawmwarde with venymmos berynes ; The vanguard is

If they are slain
they will be taken
straight up to
heaven.

To-day his war
ends !

He gives them
his parting bless-
ing.

The Britons at-
tack the enemy,
without delay.

surrounded by
the enemy, and
many of them
slain.

Peghttes and paynymes with perilous wapyns, 4125

With speres disspetously disspoylles oure knyghttes,
And hewede downe the hendeste with hertly dynttys!

Thorow the holle batayle they holdene their wayes;

Thus fersly they fyghte appone sere halves, 4129

That of the bolde Bretones myche blode spillis

Thare durste non rescowe theme, for reches in erthe,

The steryne ware thareso stedde, and stuffede wit[h] othire:

He durste noghte stire a steppe, bot stodde for hyme

seluene, 4133

Tille thre stalis ware stroyede be strenghe of hyme one!

"Idrous," quod Arthure, "ayre the by-houes!

Arthur bids Sir
Idrus rescue his
[leaf 96, back]

I see *sir* Ewayne ouer-sette with Sarazenes kene! 4136

Redy the for rescows, arraye thee sone!

father, Sir
Ewaine.

Hye *the* with hardy mene in helpe of thy ffadire!

Sett in one the syde, and socoure 3one lordes;

Bot they be socourrede and sownde, vnsawghte be I

neuer!" 4140

Sir Idrus replies
that his father
has commanded
him not to leave
the king.

Idrous hyme ansuers earnestly *thare*-aftyre,—

"He es my fadire in faithe, for-sake salle I neuer,

He has me fosterde and fedde, and my faire bretherene,

Bot I for-sake this gate, so me Gode helpe, 4144

And sothely alle sybredyne bot thy selfe one;

I breke neuer his biddynge for beryne one lyfe,

Bot euer bouxvme as beste blethely to wyrke!

He commande me kyndly, with knyghtly wordes, 4148

That I schulde lelely one *the* lenge, and one noo lede elles;

I salle hys commandement holde, 3if Criste wil me thole!

He es eldare thane I, and ende salle we bothene;

He salle ferkke be-fore, and I salle come aftyre: 4152

"If I be destined
to die, Christ
keep his soul!"

3iffe hyme be destaynede to dy to-daye one *this* erthe,

Criste comly with crowne take kepe to hys saule!"

Than remys the riche kyng with rewthe at his herte,

Hewys hys handys one heghte, and to *the* heuene

lokes,— 4156

"Qwythene hade Dryghttynne destaynede at his dere wille,

*That he hade demyd me to-daye to dy for 3ow alle !
That had I leuer than be lorde alle my lyfe tyme, 4159
Off alle that Alexandere aughte qwhilles he in erthe
lengede."*

Arthur wishes that he might die instead of his knights.

Sir Ewayne and *sir* Errake, *thes* excellente beryns,
Enters in one *the* oste, and egerly strykes ; 4162

Sir Ewaine and Sir Errak perform great deeds of valour before they are overpowered and slain.

The ethenys of Orkkenaye and Irische kynges,
Thay gobone of *the* gretteste *with* growndene swerdes,
Hewes one *thas* hulkes *with* *theire* harde wapyns,
Layed downe *thas* ledes *with* lothely dynttys ; 4166

Schuldirs and scheldys *thay* schrede to *the* hawnches,
And medilles thourghe mayles *thay* merkene in sondire !
Siche honoure neuer aughte none erthely kyng

At *theire* endyng daye, bot *Arthure* hyme seluene !
So *the* droughte of *the* daye dryede *theire* hertes, 4171
That bothe drynkles they dye, dole was *the* more !

Now mellys oure medille-warde, and mengene to-gedire.
Sir Mordrede *the* Malebranche *with* his myche pople,
He had hide hyme be-hynde *with-in* *thas* holte eyns,
With halle bataile one hethe, harme es *the* more ! 4176

The centre of Arthur's army engages. Sir Modred has been watching the battle, and preparing to attack the king.

He hade sene *the* conteke al clene to *the* ende,
How oure cheuahrye cheuyde be chaunces of armes !
He wiste oure folke was for-foughttene, *that* *there* was
feye leuede ;

To encowntere *the* kyng he castes hyme sone, 4180

Bot the churles chekyne hade chaungyde his armes ;
He had sothely for-sakene *the* sawturoure engrelede,
And laughte vpe thre lyons alle of whitte siluyre,
Passande in purple of perrie fulle riche, 4184

But first he changes his arms to conceal himself.

ffor *the* kyng sulde noghte knawe *the* cawtelous wriche !
Be-cause of his cowardys he keste of his atyre ;

[leaf 97]

Bot the comliche kyng knewe hym fulle swythe,
Karpis to *sir* Cadors *thes* kyndly wordez,— 4188

But Arthur knows him at once, and points him out to Sir Cador.

"I see *the* traytoure come 3ondyr trynande fulle 3erne ;
3one ladde *with* *the* lyones es like to hyme selfene !
Hym salle torfere be-tyde, may I touche ones, 4191

The two famous
swords, Clarent
and Caliburn,
shall this day be
tried one against
the other.

ffor alle his tresone and trayne, aHs I am trew lorde !
To-day Clarent and Caliburne alle kythe theme to-gedirs,
Whilke es kenere of kerfe, or hardare of eghge !
ffraiste salle we fyne stele appone fyne wedis. 4195

Itt was my derlynge daynteuous, and fulle dere holdene,
Kepede fore encorowmentes of kynges enoynttede,
One dayes when I dubbyde dukkes and erlles ;
It was burliche borne be *the* bryghte hiltes ;
I durste neuer dere it in dedis of armes, 4200
Bot euer kepide clene, be-cause of my seluene.

Arthur recog-
nizes his sword
which he had
left at Walling-
ford under the
care of the Queen.

ffor I see Clarent vn-clede, *that* crowne es of swerdes,
My wardrop of Walyngfordhe I wate es distroyede ;
Wist no wy of wone bot Waynor hir seluene, 4204
Scho hade *the* keypyng hir selfe of *that* kydde wapyne,
Off cofres enclosede *that* to *the* crowne lengede,
With rynges and relikkes, and *the* regale of ffraunce,
That was fflowndene one *sir* ffrolle, whene he was feye
leuyde." 4208

Sir Marrik fights
with Modred
and is forced to
withdraw,

Than *sir* Marrike in malyncoly metys hym sone,
With a mellyd mace myghtyly hym strykes ;
The bordoure of his bacenett he bristes in sondire,
That the schire rede blode ouer his brene rynnys ! 4212
The beryne blenkes for bale, and alle his ble chaunges,
Bot zitt he byddys as a bore, and brymly he strykes !
He braydes owte a brande bryghte als euer ony syluer,
That was *sir* Arthure awene, and Vtere his fadirs, 4216
In *the* wardrop of Walyngfordhe was wonte to be kepede ;
Thare-with the derfe dogge syche dynttes he rechede,
The tother with-drewe one dreghe and durste do none
other ;

for Sir Marrik
was marred with
old age.

ffor *sir* Marrake was mane merrede in elde, 4220
And *sir* Mordrede was myghty, and [in] his moste
strengthis ;

Come none *with-in the* compas, knyghte ne none *other*,
With-in the swyng of swerde, *that* ne he *the* swete leuyd.
That persayfes oure prynce, and presses to faste, 4224

Strykes in-to *the stowre* by strenghe of hys handis ;
 Metis with *sir Mordrede*, he melis vn-faire,—
 “Turne, traytoure vntrewe, *the tydys* no bettyre ; 4227
 Be gret Gode, thow salle dy with dynt of my handys !
 The schalle rescowe no renke ne reches in erthe !”
 The kyng with *Calaburne* knyghtly hym strykes,
 The cantelle of *the clere schelde* he kerfes in sondyre,
 In-to *the schuldyre* of *the schalke* a schaftmonde large,
 That *the schire rede blode* schwede one *the maylys* !
 He schodirde and schrenkys, and schontes bott lyttille,
 Bott schokkes in scharpely in his schene wedys ; 4235
 The ffelonne with *the ffyne swerde* freschely he strykes,
 The ffelettes of *the fferrere syde* he flassches in sondyre,
 Thorowe jopowne and jesserawnte of gentille mailes !
 The freke fichede in *the flesche* an halfe fotte large ;
 That derfe dynt was his dede, and dole was *the more*
 That euer that doughtty sulde dy, bot at Dryghttyns
 wylle ! 4241
 3itt with *Calyburne* his swerde, fulle knyghttly he
 strykes,
 Kastes ine his clere schelde, and coueres hym fulle faire ;
 Swappes of *the swerde hande*, als he by glentes, 4244
 Ane inche fro *the elbowe*, he ochede it in sondyre,
 That he swounnes one *the swarthe*,¹ and one swym fallis ;
 Thorowe bracer² of browne stele, and *the bryghte mayles*,
 That the hilde and *the hande* appone *the hethel* ligges !
 Thane frescheliche *the freke* the ffente vpe rererys,
 Brochis hym in with *the bronde* to *the bryghte hiltys*,
 And he brawles one the bronde, and bownes to dye.
 “In faye,” says *the feye kyng*, “sore me for-thynkkes
 That euer siche a false theefe so faire an ende haues.”
 Qwene they had ffenyste *this feghte*, thane was *the felde*
 wornene, 4254
 And the false folke in *the felde feye* are by-leuede !
 Tille a fforeste they fledde, and felle in the greuys,

Arthur forces his way to Modred,

and upbraids him.

Then he strikes him with Caliburn and cuts through his shield and into the shoulder.

[leaf 97, back]

Modred, though wounded, strikes Arthur and gives him a terrible wound in the side.

Arthur with Caliburn cuts off the sword-hand of Modred,

and pierces him with his sword.

Arthur declares that his end is too good for him.

¹ MS. swrathe.

² MS. brater.

Modred's men
are defeated and
pursued.

And fers feghtande folke folowes theme aftyre ;
Howntes and hewes downe the heythene tykes,
Mourtherys in the mowntaygues *sir* Mordrede knyghtes ;
Thare chapyde neuer no childe, cheftayne ne *other*,
Bot choppes theme downe in the chace, it chargys bot
littyll ! 4261

Arthur finds the
dead bodies of his
knights.

Bot whene *sir* Arthure anone *sir* Ewayne he fyndys,
And Errake *the* auenaunt, and *other* grett lordes,
He kawghte vp *sir* Cador with care at his herte,
Sir Clegis, *sir* Cleremonde, *thes* clere mene of armes,
Sir Lothe, and *sir* Lyonelle, *sir* Lawncelott, and Lowes,
Marrake and Meneduke, *that* myghty ware euer ; 4267
With langoure in the launde thare he layes theme to-
gedire,

He swoons for
sorrow,

and bitterly
grieves over his
knights.

Lokede one theyre lighames, and *with* a lowde steuene,
Ahs lede *that* liste noghte lyfe and loste had his myrthis ;
Than he stotays for made, and alle his strenghe faylez,
Lokes vpe to *the* lyfte, and alle his lyre chaunges, 4272
Downne he sweys fulle swythe, and in a swoune fallys,
Vpe he coueris one kneys, and kryes fulle oftene, —
“ Kyng comly *with* crowne, in care am I leuyde !
Alle my lordchipe lawe in lande es layde vndyre ! 4276
That me has gyfene gwerdones, be *grace* of hym seluene,
Mayntenyde my manhede be myghte of their handes,
Made me manly one molde, and mayster in erthe ;
In a tenefulle tyme this torfere was rereryde, 4280
That for a traytoure has tynte alle my trewe lordys !
Here rystys the riche blude of the Rownde Table,
Rebukkede *with* a rebawde, and rewthe es the more !
I may helpes one hethe house be myne one, 4284
Ahs a wafulle wedowe *that* wanttes hir beryne !

[leaf 98]

Now he may
weep and wring
his hands, for his
worship is gone
for ever.

I may werye and wepe, and wrynge myne handys,
ffor my wytt and my wyrchipe awaye es for euer !
Off alle lordchips I take leue to myne ende ! 4288
Here es *the* Bretones blode broughte owt of lyfe,
And nowe in *this* journee alle my joy endys !”

- Thane relyes *the* renkes of alle *the* Rownde Table,
 To *the* ryalle roy thay ride *tham* alle ; 4292 The remnants of
his men rally
round him.
- Than assembles fulle sonne seuene score knyghtes,
 In sighte to *thaire* souerayne, *that* was vnsownde leuede ;
 Than knelis the crowne kynge, and kryes one lowde,—
 “ I thanke *the*, Gode, of thy grace, *with* a gud wylle ;
 That gaf vs vertue and witt to vencows *this* beryns ;
 And vs has graunted *the* gree of theis gret lordes !
 He sent vs neuer no schame, ne schenchiþe in erthe,
 Bot euer zit *the* ouer-hande of alle *other* kynges : 4300
 We hafe no laysere now *these* lordys to seke,
 ffor 3one laythely ladde me lamede so sore !
 Graythe vs to Glaschenbery, vs gaynes none *other* ;
 There we may ryste vs *with* roo, and raunsake oure wondys.
 Of *this* dere day werke, *the* Dryghttene be louede, 4305
 That vs has destaynede and demyd to dye in oure awene.”
 Thane they holde at his heste hally at ones,
 And graythes to Glasschenberye *the* gate at *the* gayneste ;
 Entres *the* Ile of Aueloyne, and Arthure he lyghttes,
 Merkes to a manere there, for myghte he no forthire :
 A surgyne ¹ of Salerne enserches his wondes, 4311
 The kyng sees be asaye *that* sownde bese he neuer,
 And sone to his sekire mene he said theis wordes,—
 “ Doo calle me a confessor, *with* Criste in his armes ;
 I wille be howselde in haste, whate happe so be-tyddys ;
 Constantyne my cosyne he salle the corowne bere, 4316
 Ahs be-commys hym of kynde, 3ife Criste wille hym thole !
 Beryne, fore my benyson, thowe berye 3one lordys,
 That in baytaille *with* brondez are broghte owte of lyfe ;
 And sythene merke manly to Mordrede childrene, 4320
 That they bee sleyghely slayne, and slongene in watyrs ;
 Latt no wykkyde wede waxe, ne wrythe one *this* erthe ;
 I warne fore thy wirchiþe, wirke ahs I bydde !
 I fore-gyffe alle greffe, for Cristez lufe of heuene ! 4324
 3ife Waynor hafe wele wroghte, wele hir be-tydde ! ”

He thanks God
for the victory,
and all the glory
which he and his
knights had won.

He desires to be
taken to Glaston-
bury.

He enters the
Isle of Avelon
and is taken to a
manor there ; for
he could go no
further. A sur-
geon examines
his wounds.

Arthur sends for
a confessor.

He appoints Con-
stantine, his
kinsman, his heir.

He orders Mo-
dred's children to
be slain, and
slung in waters.

“ If Guinever
have well
wrought, well her
betide.”

¹ MS. susgyne.

Then he says "In manus," and his spirit passes away.

[leaf 98, back]

The barons of Britain bury Arthur at Glastonbury.

Great mourning was made at his funeral.

This was the end of Arthur of the blood of Hector and of Priamus of Troy.

He saide *In manus* with mayne onemolde whare he ligges,
And thus passes his speryt, and spekes he no more!

The baronage of Bretayne thane, bechopes and othire,
Graythes theme to Glaschenbery with gloppynnande
hertes,

To bery thare the bolde kynge, and brynge to *the* erthe,
With alle wirchipe and welthe *that* any wy scholde.

Throly belles thay rynge, and *Requiem* syngs, 4332
Dosse messes and matyns with mournande notes:

Relygeous reueste in their riche copes,

Pontyficalles and prelates in precyouse wedys,

Dukes and dusszeperis in their dule-cotes, 4336

Cowntasses knelande and claspande their handes,

Ladys languessande and lowranda to schewe;

Alle was buskede in blake, birdes and othire,

That schewede at the sepulture, with sylande teris;

Whas neuer so sorowfulle a syghte seene in their tyme!

Thus endis kyng Arthure, as auctors alegges, 4342

That was of Ectores blude, the kynge sone of Troye,

And of *sir Pryamous*, the prynce, praysede in erthe;

fro thethene¹ broghte the Bretons alle his bolde eldyrs

In-to Bretayne the brode, as *the Bruytte* tellys. 4346

et c. explicit.

Hic jacet Arthurus, rex q[u]ondam rex que futurus.

Here endes *Morte Arthure*, writene by Robert of Thorntone.

R. Thornton dictus qui scripsit sit benedictus. Amen!

¹ Or thythene.

INDEX OF NAMES.

- Absolone, 2868.
 Achinour, 1824.
 Acres, 903, *Acre*.
 Affrike, 574, Affryke, 1869, Aufrike, 2607, Awfrike, 3933, *Africa*.
 Akyne, 496, *Aix-la-Chapelle*.
 Aladuke, 1739, Alidoyke of Towelle, 1916, Alyduke, 1824.
 Alexander, 2634, Alexandere, 3403, 4160, Alexandire, 2602, *Alexander*.
 Alexandere, 2607, Alysaundyre, 572, *Alexandria*.
 Algere, 2837, 2847.
 Alidoyke. *See* Aladuke.
 Almaygne, 3596, Almayne, 45, 496, 555, 618, 2387, 3210, *Germany*.
 Alyduke. *See* Aladuke.
 Alymere, 4078.
 Alysaundyre. *See* Alexandere.
 Amazonnes, 584.
 Ambyganye, 572.
 Antele, 2829, 2837.
 Anyone, 42, *Aniane (in France)*.
 Araby, 1175, Arraby, 576, *Arabia*.
 Argayle, 4123, *Argyle*.
 Arthur, 26, 496, Arthure, 172, 288, 305, 470, &c.
 Askanere, 1739.
- Asye, 574, *Asia*.
 Aueloyne, Ile of, 4309, *Isle of Avelon*.
 Aufrike. *See* Affrike.
 Aungers, 288.
 Awguste, 1967, *Augsbury*. Lat. *Augusta Vindelicorum*.
 Babyloyne, 586, *Babylon*.
 Baldake, 586, *Bagdad*.
 Bareflete, 629, 1182, 1223, Barflete, 835, *Barfleur*. Lat. *Baro-fluctum*.
 Barouns, 1908.
 Basille, 907.
 Bawdewyne, 277, Bawdwyne, 1606, 2384.
 Bayone, 38, 2379, *Bayonne*.
 Bayous, 587.
 Bedvere, 893, 1170, Bedwar, 2384, Bedwere, 1162, 1264, 1606, 1744, 2233, 2379.
 Bedwyne, 1408. Probably a mistake for *Bedwere*.
 Belyne, 277.
 Berade, 2384.
 Berelle, 1605, 1775, 1914, Berille, 1264, 1771, Berylle, 1483.
 Bernarde, Mounte, 566.
 Boice, 1263, 1426, 1433, 1456,

- Boyce, 1483, 1485, 1605, Boys, 1378.
 Borghthe, 1698. A mistake for *Brut*.
 Boyce, Boys. See Boice.
 Brabane, 36, *Brabant*.
 Bremyne, 277.
 Bretayne, 2095, 2330, 2362, &c., Bretayne, 3519, Bretayne the brade, 106, B. the brode, 3579, 4346, B. the braddere, 55, 1699, B. the more, 1018, *Britain*.
 Bretayne, 852, B. the lesse, 36, B. the lyttyle, 304, *Brittany*.
 Bretones, 1011, 1484, 1617, 4111, Bretons, 1403, 1407, Bretouns, 1348, Bretowns, 4104, *Britons*. Bretowne, *sg.*, 3508.
 Brut, 1695, *Brutus*.
 Bruytte, the, 4346, *the Brute*.
 Bryane, 1606.
 Burdeux, 38, *Bordeaux*.
 Burgoyne, 36, 1018, 1241, 2383, *Burgundy*.

 Cador, 247, 1718, 1724, 1777, &c., Cadore, 481, 1602, 1637, 1707, Cadors, 4188, Cadour, 259.
 Caerlyone, 61, Karelyone, 3916, Karlyone, 3512, *Caerleon*.
 Calaburne, 4230, Caliburne, 4193, Calyburne, 4242, *Caliburn*, Arthur's sword.
 Came, 2380, 2385.
 Capados, 580, *Cappadocia*.
 Capatoylle, the, 2353, Capitoile, 280, Capytoile, 96, *the Capitol*.
 Cardyfe, 2498, *Cardiff*.
 Carelele, 480, 839, Carlelele, 64, 476, *Carlisle*.
 Castelle Blanke, 1225.
 Catrike, 482.
 Cayme, 1311, *Cain*.
 Cayous, 156, 209, 892, 1864, 1997, Kayous, 1152, 1194, 2157, &c., *Kay*, Arthur's chief butler.
 Chartris, 1619, *Chartres*.
 Chastelayne, 2952, Chasteleynne, 3028.
 Cheldrike, 2954.
 Chestyre, 3914, *Chester*.
 Childrike, 3537.
 Christofre, 2390.
 Clarent, 4202, Clarente, 4193, Arthur's best sword.
 Clarybalde, 2497.
 Clarymownde, 2497. See *Clere-monde*.
 Clegis, 1604, 1638, 1649, 1671, &c., Clegys, 1692, 3635.
 Clemente, 1828.
 Cleremonde, 1603, 4265, Clere-mownde, 3635, Cleremownde, 1638.
 Cleremus, 1603, 1638.
 Clowdmur, 1604.
 Clyme, the close of, 1639.
 Collbrande, 2123, 2201, one of Arthur's swords, perhaps = *Caliburn*.
 Colome, 623.
 Combe, 3110, 3128, 3149, *Como*.
 Constantyne, 282, an emperour of Rome
 Constantyne, 4316, Arthur's heir.
 Constantyne, 628, 848, Costantyne, 2373 Constantyne landez, 1187.
 Cordewa, 1866, *Cordova*.
 Cornett, 600, Cornette, 1909, *Corneto*.
 Cornewaile, 1848, 2002, 2262, 3897, Cornewale, 1791, Cornewaile, 1637, Cornewayle, 247, 1777, Kornewayle, 4054, *Cornwall*.
 Craddoke, 3511, 3517, Cradoke, 3487.

- Crasyne, cowntas of, 3045.
 Creette, 200, Crete, 204, 580.
 Crist, 136, 467, 482, &c., Criste, 227, 285, 296, &c., Cryste, 257, 308, 346, &c., *Christ*.
 Cyrus. See Cirquyttrie in Glossary.
 Cyprys, 596, *Cyprus*.
 Damaske, 578, *Damascus*.
 Damyat, 578, *Damietta*.
 Danamarke, 3936, Danemarke, 3752, 3783, Danmarke, 46, *Denmark*.
 Danamarke, 3610, Danmarkes, 3528, *Danes*.
 Danes, 3694.
 Danuby, 622, *the Danube*.
 Daid, 3416.
 Dolfinede, 2653, *Dauphiné* (?).
 Dolfyne, 3023, Dolphyne, 2970.
 Dorsett, 4052.
 Douere, 3066.
 Duche-men, 1251, Duche-mene, 2030, 2101, 2653, 2834, *Germans*.
 Ector, 2603, 2635, 3409, 4343, *Hector*.
 Egipt, 576, 2200.
 Elamet, 575.
 Ermony, 573, *Armenia*. See *The Romans of Partenay*, ll. 1637, 5321, 5372, &c.; where it is spelt *Hermeny*.
 Ermyngalle, 1825.
 Errake, 4075, 4161, 4263.
 Eruge, 42.
 Esexe, 1740, *Essex*.
 Estriche, 45, 3933, *Austria*.
 Ewandre, 1868, Ewandyre, 1622, Ewaynedyre, 1904.
 Ewayne, 357, 1572, 3973, 4075, &c., Ewayne fytz Henry, 1558, Ewane fytz Vryence, 337, Ewayne fytz Vriene, 2066.
 Ewfrates, 573, *Euphrates*.
 Ewrope, 574.
 Famacoste, 2761, *Famagosta* in Cyprus. See *The Romans of Partenay*, l. 1299, and Mr Skeat's note thereon.
 Federike, 2899.
 Feltemour, 1382.
 Feraunt, 2760, 2765, Ferawnt, 3404, Ferawnte, 2421.
 Ferrer, 2421, Ferrere, 2432.
 ff. Names beginning with *ff* are entered under single *F*.
 Flaundes, 495, Flaundrez, 34, 494, Flawndresche, 3597, *Flanders*.
 Florent, 2735, 2762, 2764, 2797, &c., Florente, 2483, 2729.
 Florent, 2232, Lucius's sword.
 Floridas, 2755, 2778, 2780, 2803, 3018, 3112, Florydas, 2490.
 Forawnt, 2490. Read *Feraunt*.
 France, 2365, Fraunce, 34, 110, 367, 435, &c.
 Fraunche-mene, 2484, *Frenchmen*.
 Fres, 3864.
 Freselannd, 110, Friselande, 367, Fryselande, 2765, *Friesland*.
 Froderike, 3864.
 Froille, 3404, Frolle, 3345, 4208, *Frollo*.
 Fryselande. See *Freselannd*.
 Galelé, 592, *Galilee*.
 Galuth, 1387, 1470, 3709, Galuthe, 2558, Gawayne's sword.
 Galyrane, 3636.
 Galys londe, 3862, *Wales*.
 Garyere, 592.
 Gawayne, 1265, 1352, 1368, 2218,

- &c. Gawayne, 2979, 3860, Gaweayne, 1468, Gaywayne, 233, Wawayne, 964, 1302, 1342, 1744, 2953, Arthur's nephew.
 Gaynour, 84, 705, Waynor, 3904, 4204, 4325, Waynore, 3550, 3575, Waynour, 233, 652, 657, 697, Arthur's wife.
 Gayous, 1346, 1385, uncle of Lucius.
 Geene, 559, 843, 863, Genne, 2897, Iene, 2889, 2909, *Genoa*.
 Gerarde, 2896.
 Gernaide, 2943, *Granada*.
 Gernesay, 3861, *Guernsey*.
 Gerone, 863.
 Geryne, 3708.
 Glamorgane, 59.
 Glamour, 3862.
 Glaschenbery, 4303, 4329, Glaschenberye, 4308, *Glastonbury*.
 Godarde, 562, 2655, Goddarde, 3104, Mount Goddarde, 497, *Mount St Gothard*.
 Godfraye, 3430.
 Golapas, 2124.
 Golyas, 3419, *Goliath*.
 Gothelande, 37, Gutlande, 3763.
 Gowere, 3861.
 Grece, 37, 1000, Greke, 1463, *Greece*.
 Grekes, 602.
 Grekkes See, 594, the eastern part of the Mediterranean.
 Grisswolde, 3708.
 Gryme, 1265.
 Gutlande. See Gothelande.
 Gyane, 37, *Guienne*.
 Hamptonne, 3031, *Southampton*.
 Hardelfe, 1741, Hardolfe, 2974, 3583.
 Hawyke, 3541.
 Henawde, 35, *Hainault*.
 Henguste, 3545, *Hengist*.
 Herygalle, 1742.
 Herylle, 1742.
 Hillary, 625.
 Holaund, 35, *Holland*.
 Hors, 3545, *Horsa*.
 Howelle, 1180, 1741, 3583.
 Humbyre, 3541.
 Iaffe, Porte, 1520, 1544, 2039, *Jaffa, the ancient Joppa*.
 Idirous, 4078, Idrous, 4135, 4141.
 Idrus, 1489, 1510, Idrus fitz Ewayne, 1490, 1498.
 Iene. See Geene.
 Ienitalle, 2112.
 Ierante, 2890.
 Ierusalem, 3415, 3433.
 Iewe, 2895.
 Ihesu, 863, *Jesus*.
 Inde, 573, *India*.
 Inglande, 1412, 2359, 3500, 3685, Ynglande, 283, 710, 724.
 Ioatalle, 2877.
 Iolyan, 2889.
 Ioneke, 1739, 1868, 1905.
 Iosephate, vale of, 2876.
 Iosue, 2605, 3414, *Joshua*.
 Irelande, 31, 2359, 3534, 3909.
 Irritayne, 575.
 Iudas, 2605, 3412, *Judas Macca-beus*.
 Iulius Cesar, 115, Iulyus Cesare, 3410.
 Iulyus, 2877.
 Karelyone, Karlyone. See Caerlyone.
 Karolus, 3423, *Charlemagne*.
 Kayone, 2380, a mistake for

- Kayous*, caused by the word *Bayone* in the line before.
- Kayous. *See* Cayous.
- Kentt, 3542.
- Kornewayle. *See* Cornewaile.
- Lancelott, 1720, Launcelot, 2073, Launcelott, 368, Launcelotte, 1999, Lawncelot de Lake, 3638, Lawncelott, 4266.
- Lebe, 1767, 1781, 1803, 1817, 1827, 1900.
- Leo, 1971.
- Lettow, 605, Lettowe, 2167, 3734, *Lithuania*.
- Lewlyne, 1826.
- Londone, 2418.
- Lorayne, 350, 1460, 2398, &c. Lorraine, 429, 2418, 2531, &c.
- Loth, 2081, 3637, Lothe, 4266, Lott, 1999.
- Lottez, 382.
- Lowelle, 1516.
- Lowes, 4266.
- Lucerne, 3094.
- Lucius, 128, 251, 383, &c. Lucyus, 23, Lucius Iberius, 86.
- Lumbarddye, 3108, 3594, Lumbardye, 2406, 2654, 2997, 3585, Lumberddye, 498, Lumberdye, 135, 350, 429, 1972, *Lombardy*.
- Lusscheburghe, 2388, *Luxemburg*.
- Lyonelle, 1516, 2227, 3637, 4266.
- Macedone, 603.
- Makabee, 3413.
- Marie, 2869, 3998, 4041.
- Marrake, 4220, 4267, Marrike, 4209, Merrake, 4077.
- Marschalle de Mowne, 1397.
- Mawrelle of Mauncez, 1918.
- Mawrene, 1918.
- Mees, 2950, Meyes, 2417, *Metz*.
- Melane, 3134, 3144, Meloyne, 351, 428, *Milan*.
- Meneduke, 4077, 4267, M. of Mentoche, 1919.
- Merrake. *See* Marrake.
- Messie, 3998, *Messiah*.
- Meyes. *See* Mees.
- Mighelle, Saynt, 940, Seynt M., 1069, Myghelle, 1166, *St Michael*.
- Mighelle Mount, Seynt, 899, *St Michael's Mount*.
- Modrede, 679, 3555, 3569, 3766, 3772, 3840, Mordrede, 645, 711, 3874, 4221, 4226, &c. Mordrede the Malebranche, 4062, 4174.
- Mownttagus, 3773.
- Myghelle. *See* Mighelle.
- Nauerne, 44, *Navarre*.
- Nazarethe, 591.
- Normandye, 834, Normaundy, 44.
- Norwaye, 44, 3935.
- Nylus, 591, *the Nile*.
- Orcage, 572.
- Orgaile, 3534, 3934, Orgayle, 30.
- Origge, 1825.
- Orkenay, 30, Orekenay, 3934, Orkkenaye, 4163, *Orkney*.
- Owghtreth, 234.
- Pamphile, 588, *Pamphilia*.
- Paradice, 2706, Paradyse, 2039.
- Paresche, 1340, 1888, 2647, Parys, 1609, 1631, *Paris*.
- Paule, 2413.
- Pavy, 3141, Pavye, 568, *Pavia*.
- Pawnce, 3140.
- Peghttes, 4125, Peyghites, 3533, *Picts*.
- Perce, 588, 1520, Perse, 1377, 1544, *Persia*.

- Péter, 2413, 2724, 2883, Petire, 2646, Petyr, 1256, the apostle.
 Peter, 1476, 1519, 1631, Petir, 1610, Petire, 1543, Petyr, 1419, a senator.
 Petyrsande, 352.
 Peygh̄tes. *See* Peghttes.
 Peyters, 40, *Poictiers*.
 Porte Iaffe. *See* Iaffe.
 Portyngale, 1028, *Portugal*.
 Pounte Tremble, 327, 352, Pownte T., 3140.
 Preter Iohne, 588, *Prester John*.
 Prewsslande, 2788, Pruysslande, 604, 2835, *Prussia*.
 Priamous, 2698, 2724, 2811, 2836, 2916, Priamus, 2595, 2646, 2690, Gawayne's prisoner.
 Prouynce, 40, Provynce, 2647, *Provence*.
 Pruysslande. *See* Prewsslande.
 Pryamous, 4344, *Priam*.
 Pulle, 604, *Apulia*.
 Pys, 352, Pyse, 3141, *Pisa*.
 Rawlaunde, 1607, Rowlande, 1745.
 Raynalde, 1607, 1995, Raynalde, 1745.
 Raynalde of the Rodes, 2785.
 Reone. *See* Rone.
 Reynes, 853.
 Richeere, 1745, Richere, 1607, 1995, 2790.
 Romaine, 310, 1704, 1733, *Roman*; *pl.* Romaynes, 120, 174, 221, &c. Romaynez, 1761, 1877, &c. Romayns, 1291, 1361, &c.
 Rome, 23, 80, 86, 93, &c.
 Rone, 1338, Reone (? Roone), 424, *Rhone*.
 Roodes, 597, *Rhodes*.
 Rowlande, 1745.
 Rowne, 1996, *Rouen*.
 Salarne, 2586, Salerne, 4311, *Salerno*.
 Sandewyche, 447, Sandwyche, 490, 635, 720.
 Sarazene, 2277, *Saracen*; *pl.* Sarazenes, 624, 1846, 1911, &c. Sarazenez, 1960, Sarezenes, 599, 607, Sarzanez, 1854, Sarzynes, 1626.
 Satanase, 3812, *Satan*.
 Sayne, 1336, *Seine*.
 Scottlande, 32, 292.
 Segramoure, 1871.
 Sessoyne, 1977, 2657, 2907, Sexone, 1964, *Saxony*.
 Sessoynes, 3530, *Saxons*.
 Sexone. *See* Sessoyne.
 Sextenour, 1700, Sextynour of Lyby, 1625.
 Soone, 2482, *Saone*.
 Sotere. *See* Sutere.
 Southamptone, 3546.
 Spanyolis, 3700, *Spaniards*.
 Spayne, 999, 3162.
 Spolett, 3161, *Spoletto*.
 Spruysslande, 3162.
 Surgenale, 3532.
 Surry, 608, 1687, 1844, &c. Surrye, 590, 1626, 3312, Surylande, 2657, *Syria*.
 Sutere, 1627, 1910, Sotere, 1871 Suters (?), 501.
 Swaldye, 57.
 Swetherwyke, 47.
 Swyane of Swecy, 2958.
 Swynne, 47.
 Tambire, 3902, *Tamar*.
 Tartary, 582.
 Thebay, 583.
 Tholus, 39, Tolouse, 1567, *Toulouse*.
 Towelle, 1916.

- Treyntis, (?) 4056.
 Troye, 887, 1696, 2603, 2635,
 3409, 4343.
 Troys, 1629, *Troyes*.
 Turkayne, 2408. *Read* Tuskayne.
 Turkey, 582, *Turkey*.
 Turkys, 1917, *Turks*.
 Turoyne, 39, *Touraine*.
 Turry, 234.
 Tuschayne, 431, Tuskane, 3150,
 Tuskayne, 323, 499, 3586, 3593,
Tuscany.
 Valence, 41.
 Valewnce, Viscownte of, 2047.
 Valyant, 2064, V. of Vyleris,
 1982.
 Venyce, 204, Venyse, 2025.
 Vertennone vale, 3169.
 Viterbe, 326, 353, 2025, 2048,
 3164, *Viterbo*.
 Vnwyne, 2868.
 Vryelle, 1744.
 Vryenee. *See* Ewayne.
 Vter, 29, Vtere, 521, 1310, 4216,
 Arthur's father.
 Vtere, 1904, mistake for Vtolfe (?).
 Vtolfe, 1622, 1868.
 Vyenne, 41, *Vienne (in France)*.
 Wade, 964.
 Walchere, 2680.
 Wales, 33, 56, Walis, 2890, West
 Walys, 322.
 Walschelände, 334, *Wales*.
 Waltyre, 2495.
 Walyngfordhe, 4203, 4217.
 Watlyng-strette, 450, *Watling-*
street.
 Wawayne. *See* Gawayne.
 Waynor, Waynore, Waynour.
See Gaynour.
 Wecharde, 2495.
 Westfale, 2826, Westuale, 2656,
 Westwale, 621, *Westphalia*.
 Whycher, 2678, Wychere, 2680,
 4025.
 Wyghte, 334, *the Isle of Wight*.
 Wynchestre, 4011.
 Ynglande. *See* Inglande.
 Yorke, 636, 3911, *York*.

GLOSSARIAL INDEX.

- A, *conj.* and, 2522, 2797.
 A, *int.* ah ! 320, 1671, 1791.
 Abaischite, *p.p.* abashed, 255.
 Abaiste, Abayste, *p.p.* cast down, 1423, 3737.
 Abbayes, *s. pl.* abbeys, 3403.
 Abillere, *adj. comp.* abler, 2635.
 Abouen, 903, 904, Abouenn, 564, Aboune, 511, Abowene, 823, Abowne, 2060, Abwene, 775, *prep. and adv.* above. A.S. *abufan*.
 Accorde, *v.* agree, 344 ; *p.p.* accordide, 3133.
 Accountes, *v.* 3 *s.* reckons, 1102 ; 1 *s.* acounte, make account of, care for, 405 ; *inf.* acownt, tell, 3929.
 Actone, *s.* acton, 902, 3457 ; *pl.* aketouns, 2626.
 Affraye, *s.* fright, terror, 3226.
 Affrayede, *v. pret.* frightened, 2804 ; *p.p.* affrayede, 2256.
 Aftire, Aftyr, Aftyre, after, 64, 82, &c.
 Agaste, *adj.* aghast, afraid, 2442, 2728.
 Agayne, Agaynes, Agayne, Agayns, *prep.* against, towards, 774, 1268, 2681.
 Agayne-stande, *v.* resist, 3757 ; *pl.* azayne-stondes, 3126.
 Ajournede, *p.p.* adjourned, put off, 340.
 Ajuggede, *p.p.* judged, deemed, 862, 1653, 3411, 4110.
 Ake, *s.* oak, 1096. A.S. *ác*.
 Akere, *s.* acre, 3849.
 Aketouns. *See* Actone.
 Alde, 13, 986, Awlde, 279, *adj.* old.
 Alleges, *v. pl.* allege, 4342.
 Alet, *s.* ailette, shoulder-plate, 2565.
 Alfyne, *s.* 1343, a term of reproach ; it literally means the *bishop* in chess. *See* *Promptorium Parvulorum*.
 Algarde, *s.* a kind of wine, 202.
 Alkynne, Alkyns, *adj.* of every kind, 928, 1730, 3244.
 Allblawsters, *s. pl.* crossbow-men, 2426.
 Alle-weldand. *See* Alweldande.
 Allone, *adj.* alone, only, 541, 2312.
 Allossede, *p.p.* renowned, esteemed, 3881.
 Alls. *See* Als.
 Alofede. *Read* Alosede, *p.p.* praised, renowned, 2413.
 Alouer, *adv.* all over, 2027.
 Alowe, *v.* praise, 1036 ; 3 *s.* allowes, 396.
 Als, Alls, *conj.* as, 845, 1701, 1989, 1590 ; also, 1194.

- Alweldande, 397, Alle-weldand, 1059, *adj.* all-ruling, all-powerful.
- Alynes, *s. pl.* aliens, 4061.
- Amange, *prep.* among, 4037; *adv.* at times, sometimes, 1238.
- Ame = am, 2606, 2642, &c.
- Amede, *p.p.* estimated, 4068.
"Aesmer, aasmer, aemer, aumer, easmer: Juger, estimer, comparer, croire, penser, être d'avis."—*Roquefort*. Lat. *estimare*.
- Ancestres, Auncestres, *s. pl.* ancestors, 276, 521, 1310.
- And = an, if, 134, 339, 1023.
- Ane, *adj.* an, a, 1079, 1148, 1661.
- Anely, Anly, *adv.* only, alone, 98, 1499, 1981.
- Anentis, *prep.* against, 2568.
- Anes, *adv.* once, 360. *See* Ones.
- Angerde, *p.p.* angered, angry, 265, 1938, 1957.
- Angers, *impers. v.* Me angers = I am angry, 1662, 2838, 2848.
- Ankkere, *s.* anchor, 3601; *pl.* ankers, 740, ankyrs, 493.
- Anlace, *s.* a sort of dagger, 1148.
"Besides the dagger, Chaucer, in his *Canterbury Tales*, mentions the anelace, which was broad bladed, but lessening from the hilt to a sharp point, and having a sharp edge on each side." *Meyrick, Critical Inquiry into Antient Armour*, vol. ii. p. 100.
- Anly. *See* Anely.
- Anone, *adv.* anon, soon, 2716.
- Ansuere, *v.* answer, 98, 306; *pret.* answarde, 288.
- Ansuere, *s.* answer, 1324.
- Anter. *See* Awnter.
- Anterous, *adj.* adventurous, bold, 2524.
- Apas, *adv.* with measured step, 4014.
- Apone, 195, Appone, 262, Apponne, 4000, *prep.* upon.
- Appairelles, *v. pl.* apparel, dress, 500; *p.p.* appayrelle, 2461.
- Apparant, Apparaunt, *adj.* apparent, 1944, 2606.
- Apparaylle, *s.* apparel, 3365.
- Apperte, *adj.* open, 688.
- Appertly, 1478, Appertlyche, 589, *adv.* openly.
- Appone. *See* Apone.
- Approches, *ref. v. pl.* draw near, 4105.
- Ar, Are, *adv. & conj.* before, 254, 331, 1722.
- Arase, *v.* snatch away, 4098.
- Araysede, *p.p.* raised, drawn up, 1677.
- Arborye, *s.* trees, 3244.
- Ardant, Ardaunt, *adj.* burning, 193, 1087.
- Are. *See* Ar.
- Are, *conj.* or, 1944.
- Areste, *v.* arrest, stop, capture, 633; *pret.* areste, 329, arestede, 1429.
- Areste, *s.* arrest, 1456, 1473; place of meeting, 311, 548.
- Arowes, *s. pl.* arrows, 2105.
- Arrabyes, Arrahys, *s. pl.* animals of some kind, perhaps Arabian horses, 2288, 2337.
- Arryfedede, 835, Aryefede, 600, Aryuede, 3905, *p.p.* come to shore.
- As armes, (Fr.) to arms! 2717.
- Asawte. *See* Assawte.
- Asaye, 2615, Assaye, 2347, *v.* try.
- Asaye, *s.* trial, examination, 4312.
- Ascente, Assente, *v.* assent, 644, 1506, 1963.
- Ascryez, 1367, Askryes, 2245, *v.* 3 *s.* shouts, cries out; *pl.* ascriez, 1768.
- Asches, *v.* 2 *s.* askest, 343; 3 *s.* askys, requires, 157; *pret.* aschede, asked for, 715.

- Assawte, Asawte, Asawtte, *s.* assault, 1697, 3012, 3053.
- Assemble, *s.* assembly, 1578, 1852, 1962.
- Assingnez, *v. pl.* assign, 727; *pret.* assingnyde, 240.
- Assoyllede, *p.p.* absolved, 3498.
- At = to (with the infinitive), 1165.
- At = that = what, 1842, 3484.
- Atheliste, *adj.* noblest, 1593. A.S. *æþele*.
- Attamede, *v. pret.* broached, pierced, 2175.
 "He let *atame* hys pyement tunne
 To make his gode gestis glad."
 Royal MS. 18 A x, leaf 130, bk.
 "Attamyn a wesselle wyth drynke,
 or abbrochyn. Attamino, depleo."
Promptorium Parvulorum.
- At-vndere, *adv.* down, 3180.
- Atyre, *s.* attire, 4186.
- Auctors, *s. pl.* authors, 4342.
- Auditoure, *s.* auditor, 1673; *pl.* audytours, 661.
- Aughte, Awughte, *adj.* eight, 278, 2627, 3188.
- Aughte, *v.* See Awe.
- Aughtende, *adj.* eighth, 462.
- Auncestres. See Ancestres.
- Auntire, Auntyre. See Awnter.
- Austerene, Austeryne, *adj.* stern, 306, 414, 571, &c. See *Austerne* in *Pricke of Conscience*, l. 6181.
- Auantid, *v. pret.* praised, 1594; *p.p.* avauntede, 2864.
- Avantwarde, 324, Avawewarde, 2051, Avawmewarde, 2024, Avawmwarde, 2829, 3168, Avawwarde, 3764, *s.* vanguard.
- Avawmbrace, *s.* vambrace, a piece of armour for the forearm, 2568.
- Auenaunt, *adj.* becoming, graceful, 2626, 3188, 3208, 3500.
- Aventaille, *s.* "a moveable front to a helmet which covered the face, and through which the wearer respired or drew in the air, quâ ventus hauritur." (—Meyrick, *Glossary of Military Terms*, under *Ventaculum*) 910, 2572.
- Aventure, *s.* adventure, chance, fortune, 642.
- Avires, *v.* turns towards, directs, 3164. O. Fr. *virer*, turn.
- Avisemente, *s.* advice, counsel, 148.
- Avissely, Auyssely, *adv.* advisedly, prudently, 2699, 3165.
- Avowe, *s.* vow, 296, 308, 347.
- Avowe, *v.* vow, 357; *p.p.* avowede, 369.
- Auoyeddyde, *v. pret.* quitted, 2051.
- Avyede, *v. pret.* showed the way, or made their way towards, 3716.
 "Avier: Montrer le chemin à quelqu'un." *Roquesfort*. "*Avoier*, *aveier*, diriger, indiquer la route, mettre en chemin, en bon chemin, exciter, irriter; *s'avoier*, se mettre en route, dans la bonne route, se diriger, s'occuper dequelquechose." *Burguy*.
- Awe, *v.* owe, 99; *pl.* awes, 455, ought; *pret.* aughte, owned, possessed, 29, 276, 521, &c.; *pret. subj.* aughte, oughtest, 289; 'aughte,' as an impersonal verb, 1583, 1595, 3340, awghte, 3509. Me aughte = I ought.
- Awene, *adj.* own, 709, 997, 1594.
- Awghtene, *adj.* eighteen, 4069.
- Awke, *adj.* perverse, contrary, 13.
- Awkewarde, Awkwarde, *adv.* awry, transversely, 2247, 2564.
- Awlde. See Alde.
- Awncstrye, *s.* ancestry, 1907.
- Awntere, Auntire, Awntire, *s.* adventure, chance, risk, 1905, 2617, 2244; *pl.* awnters, 1967; at awntere, at random, 2543.

- Awntere, Anter, Auntyre, *v.* adventure, 360, 1596, 1660; 3 *s.* anthers, 1498; *pl.* awnters, 1596.
- Awntrende, *adj.* adventuring, bold, 2717.
- Awntrouste, *adj.* most adventurous, 1624.
- Awughte. *See* Aughte.
- Ayele, *s.* grandfather, 2603.
- Ayere, Ayre, *s.* heir, 279, 283, 2634; *pl.* ayers, 3146.
- Ayere, Ayre, *v. go.* 455, 470, 1591; 3 *s.* ayerez, 617; *pl.* ayres, 1329; *i. p.* ayerande, 2830.
- Ayther, Aythere, Aythyre, *adj.* either, each, 939, 1991, 2830.
- Ay-ware, *adv.* everywhere, 614.
- Azoure, Azure, *s.* blue, 193, 765, 3355.
- Azayne, *adv.* again, 2713.
- Azaynes, A-zayne, *adv.* against, 786, 2117, 2791. *See* Agayne.
- Azayne-stondes. *See* Agayne-stande.
- Bacenett, *s.* cap of steel or other metal, sometimes worn under the helm, 906, 2695, 2770; *pl.* bace-netez, 1754.
 "He hutte him on þe helm on hiht,
 In-to þe Brayn þorw *Bacinet* briht;
 Thus is his seruyse zolde."
The Kyng of Tars (Vernon MS., leaf 306, b.)
- Bachelers, Bachellers, *s. pl.* novices in arms, 68, 567, 1424.
- Bade, *v. pret.* abode, 2383.
- Bagis, Bagys, *s. pl.* badges, 2303, 3730.
- Baiste, *p. p.* downcast, afraid, 2856.
- Baite, *v.* feed, 2694.
- Bake, *s.* back, 2203, 3257.
- Bakene, *p. p.* baked, 3166.
- Bakhalfe, *s.* backpart, back, 1482.
- Balde, *adj.* bold, 1968.
- Baldly, *adv.* boldly, 630.
- Bale, *s.* harm, grief, sorrow, 805, 3976; *adj.* hurtful, 1483. A.S. *bealu.*
- Balefulle, *adj.* hurtful, 791; sorrowful, wretched, 1029, 1136.
- Bale-fyre, *s.* a large fire, properly a fire lighted as a signal of distress, 1048.
- Baltyrde, *v. pret.* danced about, capered, 782. *See* *Balleres, Alliterative Poems* (Reprint), p. 102, l. 459.
- Banarettez. *See* Banerettes.
- Bandez, *s. pl.* bonds, 1485; used metaphorically for "distress," 1180.
- Baneoure, *s.* bearer of a banner, 3732. "Banyowre, or bannerberere. *Vexillarius, vexillifer, primipilus.*" *Promptorium Parvulorum.*
- Banerettes, Banerettez, Banarettez, *s. pl.* knights of the higher order, 68, 567, 1403, 1424, 2855.
- Banke, *s.* shore (of the sea), 728, 3731; *pl.* bankkes, 3714.
- Barayne, *adj.* barren, 224.
- Barbours, *s. pl.* barbers, 2331, 2577.
- Barbycane, *s.* outer fortification or defence, fortress at the outlet of a city, 1183, 2470.
- Bare. *See* Bere.
- Bare, *s.* boar, 3123.
- Barefote, *adj.* barefoot, 2309.
- Bareheuedys, *s. pl.* boarheads, 177.
- Bare-heuvede, *adj.* bareheaded, 3630.
- Bare-legyde, *adj.* barelegged, 2122.
- Baronage, *s.* company of barons, 587, 1242.
- Barowes, *s. pl.* swine, 191. A.S. *beark.*
- Barrers, *s. pl.* barriers, 2469.

- Basschede, *p.p.* cast down, 2121.
- Bataile, 783, Batelle, 316, Batayle, 2458, Bataylle, 3107, Baytaille, 4319, *s.* battle; body of troops; *pl.* baitailles, 1425, baitailles, 4064.
- Baterde, *p.p.* battered, 189.
- Bathe, *conj.* both, 19, 34, 352, &c.
- Bawmede, *v. pret.* embalmed, 2298; *p.p.* bawmede, 980, 4020.
- Baye, *adj.* bay, brown, 918.
- Baytaille. *See* Bataile.
- Baytand, *i. p.* baiting, 2516; baytaynde, 2671.
- Be, Bee, *prep.* by, 60, 164, 174, &c.
- Be, Bee, *v. be*; *ind. pres. pl.* bez, 97, bene, 2850; *fut. l. be* (= shall be), 981, 2631, 4140; 2. bees, 1688, 2667, beese, 2663; 3. bees, 3976, bese, 1017, 4312; *imp. pl. 2.* bes, 3798, 4095, bees, 2856, 3737, bez, 222.
- Beblede, *v. pret.* made bloody, 2250.
- Bechene, *adj.* beechen, 1713.
- Bechopes, *s. pl.* bishops, 4328.
- Becommys, *v.* becomes, is proper for, 4317.
- Bedde, Bede, *s.* bed, 758, 805, 2858.
- Bede, *adj.* craving, hungry, lean, 3464. *See* *Beddy* in *Jamieson*. A.S. *biddan*, to ask.
- Bedes, *v. pl.* offer, 505.
- Bedgatt, *s.* going to bed, 1030.
- Bee. *See* Be.
- Beerynes. *See* Berne.
- Bees. *See* Be, *v.*
- Begynnande, *i. p.* beginning, 2963.
- Behalde, *v.* behold, 2517; *i. p.* behaldande, 3107.
- Bekez, *v. 3 s.* bakes, warms, 1048.
- Bekende, *v. pret.* committed, entrusted, 2340, 2355; bekennyde, 482.
- Beknowe, *v.* acknowledge, confess, 3867.
- Bekyre, *v.* contend, fight, 3679; *pl.* bekys, 2425; *pret.* bekerde, 2096.
- Bekyne, *s.* beacon, 564.
- Belde, *v.* dwell, 8; *pl.* bieldez, 1242; *pret.* beldytt, inhabited, occupied, 38; *p.p.* beyldede, occupied, 566.
- Belefede, 1250, Beleuede, 3405, Beleufede, 2380, *p.p.* left.
- Beleue, *v.* remain, 3583.
- Belyfe, Belyue, *adv.* quickly, 1263, 2068, 2336, 3732.
- Beme, *s.* beam, 3663.
- Beneyde. *Read* Bendyde, *v. pret.* bent, 2424.
- Bente, *s.* field, plain, 915, 1054, 1067.
- Benysone, *s.* blessing, 4318.
- Berde, *s.* beard, 1012; *pl.* berdez, 1002.
- Bere, *s.* bear, 775, 790, 802.
- Bere, *v.* bear, 51, 615; *pret.* bare, 291, 893; *p.p.* borne, 3738.
- Berkes, *v. 3 s.* barks, 1351.
- Bernakes, *s. pl.* barnacle geese, 189.
- Berne, 962, Beryne, 116, Berynne, 3580, Bierne, 1094, Byerne, 2202, *s.* man; *pl.* bernes, 255, beryns, 148, beerynes, 1050, biernez, 1483, byernez, 2022, byerns, 1391. A.S. *beorn*.
- Berouene. *Read* Beronene, *p.p.* run over with, covered, 3946; beroune, 3971.
 "On me [the cross] lay þe lambe of love,
 I was plater, hys body above,
 Whan flessche and veynes alle to-clove,
 With blood I was *bironne*."
 Royal MS. 18 A x, leaf 128.

- See *Beronen* in *Percy's Folio MS.* ed. Hales and Furnivall, vol. i. p. 213, l. 31, and vol. iii. p. 63, l. 172.
- Berye, *v.* bury, 4318; 3 *s.* beryes, 2379; *p.p.* beryede, 980.
- Beryelle, *s.* burial, 1776, 2188.
- Beryenge, *s.* burying, 2377, 4023.
- Bes. See *Be.*
- Besauntez, *s. pl.* bezants, 3256.
- Bese. See *Be.*
- Bessomes, *v.* 3 *s.* besoms, i. e. sweeps, 3661.
- Besy, *adj.* busy, 4095.
- Besye, *s.* business, 3630.
- Beseke, *v.* beseech; 3 *s.* besekys, 305; *pl.* besekes, 127; *pret.* besoghte, besoughte, 1234, 1438, 3137.
- Bestaile, *s.* beasts, cattle, 1050.
- Beste, *s.* beast, 107, 811.
- Betakyns, *v.* 3 *s.* betokens, signifies, 822, 824.
- Bet, *v. pret.* set in order, adjusted; *lit.* improved, 3656. A.S. *bétan.*
- Beteche, *v.* hand over, deliver, commit, 1611; 3 *s.* beteches, 714; *pret.* betoke, 1839; betuke, 3190, 4015. A.S. *betécān.*
- Betoke. See *Beteche.*
- Betrappede, *p.p.* entrapped, 1630.
- Betuke. See *Beteche.*
- Betwyx, *prep.* betwixt, 801, 2798.
- Betydde, *v.* betide, 4325; 3 *s.* betyddes, 3482; betyddys, 4315.
- Bett, *v. pret.* beat, 2470, 3682.
- Bettes, *v. ind. pres. pl.* beat, 2808.
- Betyne, *adj.* beaten; hence, adorned with beaten gold, or other such material, 3631, 3646, 3945.
- Beueryne = bevering, quivering, 3630. O.E. *biver*, tremble. A.S. *bifan.* Or perhaps beueryne = beaver-coloured; compare *beuer* *knod* in *Sir Gawayne and the Green Knight*, l. 845.
- Bewe, *v.* bow, 3366.
- Bewes, *s. pl.* boughs, 3366.
- Bewells, *s. pl.* bowels, 2175, 2203.
- Bewschers, *s. pl.* (?) the lower parts of the body, 1047. A.S. *scaru*, bowels, &c.; bew = bel, beau, fine, perhaps.
- Beylde. See *Belde.*
- Bez. See *Be.*
- Bidde, *v.* bide, remain, 4028.
- Biddis, *v. ind. pres. pl.* offer, 2310.
- Bieldez. See *Belde.*
- Bierdez. See *Birde.*
- Bilynge, *s.* probably the part of the ship about the *bill* or *rostrum*, 3663. A.S. *bil*, bill, beak, . . . forepart of a ship. (See *Bosworth.*)
- Birdes, 2190, *Birdez*, 1029, *Bierdez*, 1052, *Byrdez*, 999, *s. pl.* women, ladies. A.S. *bryd*, bride, wife, woman.
- Birenne, 2519. Mistake for "outene."
- Birtenede, 3972. See *Brittene.*
- Blake, *adj.* black, 775, 1090, 4339.
- Blanke, *s.* horse, 1799; *pl.* blankes, 1860. See *Blonke.*
- Blasons, *s. pl.* shields of arms, 1860. See *Blasoun* in *Sir Gawayne and the Green Knight*, l. 828.
- Blawe, *v.* blow, 2662.
- Blawene, *p.p.* blown, 1286.
- Blawnchede, *p.p.* whitened, 3039.
- Ble, Blee, *s.* colour, complexion, 2576, 3332, 3558, 4213.
- Blemeste, *p.p.* blemished, hurt, 2578.
- Blendez, *v.* 3 *s.* blends, is mingled, 1799.
- Blenke, *v.* blench, wince, 3640, 3735; 3 *s.* blenkes, 4213; cause to blench, overcome, 2857.

- Bleryde, *v. pret.* mouthed, made wry faces, 782.
 "Deuels sal gadir about hym þan,
 And grymly gryn on hym and blere
 And hydus braydes mak hym to
 fere." Hampole's *Pricke of Con-
 science*, l. 2226.
- Blethely, *adv.* blithely, cheerfully, 4147.
- Blod, 4121, Blode, 175, 392, Blude, 3235, 4282, *s.* blood.
- Blode-bande, *s.* blood-band, a bandage to stop bleeding, 2576.
- Blod-hondes, *s. pl.* bloodhounds, 3640.
- Blody, Blodye, *adj.* bloody, 793, 3946.
- Blondirs, *v. 2 s.* blunderest, 3975.
- Blonke, *s.* horse, steed, 453; *pl.* blonkes, 615, blonkes, 1634. A.S. *blanca, blonca.*
- Blude. *See* Blod.
- Blyne, *v.* cease, 1931, 2578, 3975. A.S. *blinnan.*
- Blyschit, *v. pret.* looked, 116. *See blusched, Alliterative Poems*, p. 29, l. 980.
- Blysse, *s.* joy, 1485.
- Blyssyng, *s.* blessing, 4103.
- Bonettez, *s. pl.* additional pieces of sail, 3656. "Bonnet (*bonnette*, Fr.), an additional part made to fasten with lutchings to the foot of the sails of small vessels with one mast, in moderate winds. It is exactly similar to the foot of the sail it is intended for. They are commonly one-third of the depth of the sails they belong to." (Falconer's *Marine Dictionary*, ed. Burney.)
- Borde, 79, 171, 630, Bourde, 730, 3641, Burde, 1930, *s.* board, table; board (of a ship).
- Bordoure, *s.* border, 4211; *pl.* bordurs, 907.
- Bordyrde, *p.p.* bordered, 1002.
- Bore, *s.* boar, 188, 4214.
- Borne, 2519. Perhaps a mistake for *berne*.
- Borne, *p.p.* *See* Bere.
- Bosturs, *s. pl.* boasters, 1393.
- Bot, Bott, Botte, *conj.* but, 10, 70, except, 516, 521, unless, 1925; bot if, bot ȝif, bot ȝife, 356, 486, 250, unless; *prep.* without, 4070.
- Bote, 1786, Botte, 1837, *s.* amends, recompense. A.S. *bót, bótú.*
- Bothen, Bothene, both, 35, 2547, 2691, 2997, 3716, 4151.
- Botelesse, 981, 3558, Botles, 3976, Butelesse, 1014, *adj.* without remedy, cureless.
- Bottes, *s. pl.* boats, 748.
- Botures, *s. pl.* bitterns, 189. Probably miswritten for *Betures*; *see* *Betoure* in *John Russell's Boke of Nurture*, ed. Furnivall, ll. 421, 541, 696
- Boune, Bowne, *v.* make ready, prepare, hasten, go, 936, 1013, 1034; 3 *s.* bownes, 3591, bounnez, 783.
- Bourde. *See* Borde.
- Bourdene, *v. pl. pres. ind.* jest, 3122; *bourezdez*, 3 *s. pres. ind.* 1170.
- Boure, *s.* bower, 2190. A.S. *búr.*
- Boustous, 2175, Boustouse, 2425, 3679, Boystous, 3762, Bustous, 615, 775, 783, 1379, *adj.* rude, rough, harsh, violent.
- Bouxome, 2858, Bouxvme, 4147, *adj.* obedient.
- Bouxsomly, *adv.* obediently, 107.
- Bowes, *v. 3 s.* turns, 2251; *pl.* bowes, go, 69, 2310.
- Bowes, *s. pl.* shoulders, 188; boughs, 1711, 3247. A.S. *boh*, arm, back, shoulder, branch, bough. (*Bosworth*.)
- Bowndene, *p.p.* bound, 3316.
- Bowne, *v.* *See* Boune.
- Bownne, *adj.* ready, 1633, 2331.

- Box, *s.* stroke, blow, 1111.
- Boyes, *s. pl.* 2122, 2856, 3122.
- Boystous. *See* Boustous.
- Brace, *v.* fasten, fix, 1182; 3 *s.* bracez, puts on his arm, 914.
- Bracer, 4247, *s.* brassart, a defence for the arm; *pl.* brasers, 1859.
- Brade, *adj.* broad, 106, 914, 1094; *comp.* braddere, 55, 1699.
- Bragge, *v.* blow (in a trumpet); *pl. pres. ind.* braggene, 1484, braggēs, 4107; *pret.* braggede, 3657.
- Braggers, *s. pl.* boasters, brag-garts, 1348.
- Brand, 3946, Brande, 893, 914, Brannde, 2239, *s.* sword. A.S. *brand, brond, brand, torch, sword.*
- Brankkand, *i. p.* branking, *i. e.* bridling, checking, curbing, re-pressing, 1861. *See* Brank and Branks in Jamieson.
- Braste. *See* Briste.
- Brathely, *adv.* hastily, violently, fiercely, 1771, 3219.
- Braunchers, *s. pl.* young hawks, 190.
- Braundesche. *See* Brawndysche.
- Brawle, Brawlle, *v.* 2349, 2362; 3 *s.* brawles, 1349.
- Brawlynge, *s.* confusion, 2176.
- Brawnches, *s. pl.* branches, 3367.
- Brawndysche, *v.* brandish, 3359; 3 *s.* braundesche, 1056; *pret.* braundyschte, 782, brawndeste, 3657.
- Brawne, *s.* boar, 1095.
- Brayd, *v.* drive, thrust, dash, draw, 1172; 3 *s.* braydes, 2695, braydez, 2069, 2073, brayedez, 906; *p.p.* braydene, cast, 3945.
- Brayde, *s.* thrust, 3762.
- Brede, *s.* bread, 2715.
- Brede, *s.* roast meat, 79, 190, 1052; *pl.* bredez, 1049, bredis, 2715. A.S. *bréde.*
- Brede, *s.* breadth, 1224, 2011, 2273, 3656. A.S. *brédo.*
- Bredes, *v.* 3 *s.* breeds, 224.
- Bregaundez, *s. pl.* brigands, 2096. "These foot-soldiers were clothed in jackets, which were quilted, and had pieces of iron within, hence called brigandines. Such jackets were worn in the time of Elizabeth and James I. by the English archers." Meyrick, *Glossary of Military Terms*, under *Brigantii*.
- Breke, *v.* break, 4146; 3 *s.* brekes, 3124.
- Breklesse, *adj.* without breeches, naked, 1048.
- Breme, *adj.* fierce, 1380.
- Bremly, *adv.* fiercely, 4107.
- Brenë, 2253, 4212, Breny, 1482, *s.* cuirass; *pl.* brenyes, 3753, brenys, 1525, 1858, bryneys, 4119. *See* Brini in the Glossary to *Havelok*, ed. Skeat.
- Brenyede, 316, Brynyede, 3680, *adj.* armed with a cuirass.
- Breste, *s.* breast, 2253, front of an army, 1990; *pl.* brestez, 191.
- Brestys. *See* Briste.
- Brethe, *s.* wrath, anger, 107, 117, 2213.
- Brethly, *adv.* angrily, 3661.
- Brettene, Brettyne. *See* Brittene.
- Brigge, 3124, Brygge, 2470, *s.* bridge.
- Briste, *v.* burst, break, 214; 3 *s.* bristez, 805, brystez, 1135, 1482; *pl.* bristez, 1859, brestys, 3663; *pret.* braste, 2176, 2271; *pret. pl.* broustene, 2544; *p.p.* brustene, 2771, broustene, 3974; *weak pret.* brystedde, 1129.
- Brittene, 963, Brettyne, 3580, Bryttyne, 106, 1350, *v.* cut or dash in pieces, destroy completely; *pret.* brettene, 1487, brittenyde, 802, bryttene, 2212; *p.p.* brettene, 3520, brittene, 1067, birtene,

3972. A.S. *bryttian*, *brytnian*, to divide into fragments, distribute.
- Broche, *v.* pierce, stab, 1172; 3 *s.* broches, 2202, brochez, spurs, 918; *pl.* brochez, spur, 1449; *pret.* brochede, broached, tapped, 2714; *p.p.* brochede, spitted, 1050, 1067.
- Brochez, *s. pl.* spits, 1029.
- Brode, *adj.* broad, 116, 792, 1047. *See* Brade.
- Brought, 3358, Broghte, 802, *v.* *pret.* brought; *p.p.* broghte, 1013, 1017.
- Brokbrestede, *adj.* having a breast variegated, spotted or streaked with black and white, 1095. *See* *Brocked* in *Jamieson*. Compare "Brock-faced, a white longitudinal mark down the face like a badger." *Brockett*.
- Bronde, *s.* sword, 2566, 3631; *pl.* brondes, 2309. *See* Brand.
- Brotheliche, 3640, Brothely, 1408, 1449, 1753, 1862, 2095, Brothly, 3617, *adv.* hastily, violently, fiercely.
- Brothy, *adj.* (?) foamy, frothy, 1090.
- Browddene, 2807, 4119, Browdene, 1858, *adj.* woven. *See* *Brawdene* in *Sir Gawayne and the Green Knight*, ll. 177, 580. A.S. *brogden*, *broden*, *p.p.* of *bregdan*, to weave, braid, &c. The "brenyes" were probably made of small metal rings woven one into the other.
- Bruchez, *s. pl.* brooches, 3256.
- Bruschese, *v. pl.* brush, dash, 3680.
- Brustils, *s. pl.* bristles, 1095.
- Bryddes, *s. pl.* birds, 181.
- Brydille, 453, Brydylle, 2085, *s.* bridle.
- Brygge. *See* Brigge.
- Brymly, *adv.* fiercely, 117, 4214.
- Bryne, 106, Brynne, 564, *v.* burn; 3 *s.* brynnez, 1241; *pret.* brynte, 117; *p.p.* brynte, 3520.
- Bryneys. *See* Brene.
- Brynyede. *See* Brenyede.
- Brystedde, Brystez. *See* Briste.
- Bryttenede, Bryttyne. *See* Brittene.
- Burde. *See* Borde.
- Burgesse, 3082, *s.* burgess, citizen; *pl.* burgeys, 857.
- Burghe, *s.* city, 1968, 2424, 3083; *pl.* burghes, 1241. A.S. *burh*.
- Burliche, 2190, Burelyche, 304, Burlyche, 586, 730, 1002, 1111, 2010, *adj.* tall, stately, grand.
- Burliche, *adv.* grandly, 4199.
- Burneschte, 906, 1011, 2123, Burneste, 2272, 3846, Burnyscht, 1113, Burnyste, 177, 1859, *p.p.* burnished, polished.
- Bus, *impers. v.* behoves, 2576. Vs bus = we must.
- Buscayle, 895, Buskayle, 1634, *s.* bushes.
- Buschede. *See* Buske, *v.*
- Buschement, *s.* ambush, 3124. *See* Enbuschement.
- Buskayle. *See* Buscayle.
- Buske, *s.* bush, wood, 453, 918; *pl.* buskez, 1142.
- Buske, *v.* make ready, prepare, arrange, dispose, manage, hasten, proceed, go; 3 *s.* buskes, 1223, 2829, buskez, 2073; *pl.* buskes, 1754, buskez, 729, 1618; *pret.* buskede, 1633; *imp.* 2 *s.* buske, 1263; *imp.* 2 *pl.* buskes, 2855; *p.p.* buskede, arrayed, dressed, 2517, 3332, 4339, buschede, furnished, 567; buske vpe, raise, 3072.
- Bustous. *See* Boustous.
- Butelesse. *See* Botelesse.
- Byd, Bydde, Byde, *v.* ask, bid, 433, 1181, 2188, 4323; 3 *s.* byddez, 1776, byddis, 2361.

- Byddyngge, *s.* bidding, command, 1030, 1931.
- Byde, *v.* remain, abide, tarry, 8, 936, 1968; 3 *s.* byddys, 4214; *pl.* byddes, 2808, byddez, 1030, await, wait for; *imp.* 2 *pl.* byddez, 629.
- Byerns, Byeryne. *See* Berne.
- Byggly, *adv.* bigly, strongly, 1376.
- Byhalue, *s.* behalf, 1674.
- Byhoues, 4135, Byhouys, 3579, Byhowys, 1715, *impers. v.* behoves.
- Byhyndene, *adv.* behind, 694.
- Bylefede, 1538, Byleuede, 2145, 2366, Byleuefede, 3678, Byleuyde, 1557, 1885, *p.p.* left.
- Bynne, *prep.* within, 804. A.S. *binnan.*
- Byrdez. *See* Birdes.
- Byrre, *s.* impetus, violence, 3661.
- Byswenkez, *v.* 3 *s.* toils, 1128. A.S. *beswincan*, to labour.
- Byttes, *v.* 3 *s.* bites, 791.
- Caas, 261, 1892, Caase, 3521, Case, 2719, Cas, 3564, *s.* hap, occurrence.
- Cabane, 757, Kabane, 3671, *s.* cabin; *pl.* cabanes, 733.
- Cabilles, *s. pl.* cables, 3671.
- Cachede, *p.p.* chased, 3513.
- Cachene, *v. pl.* catch, seize, take, 834; *pl.* catchez, 480; *pret.* caughte, 1105, kaghte, 2636, kaught, 3951, kaughte, 3378, kawghte, 3916; *p.p.* cawghte, 3514, kaughte, 2995.
- Caffe, *s.* chaff, refuse, 1064.
- Caire. *See* Cayre.
- Cantelle, *s.* corner, quarter, lump, piece, 4231. "*Chantel, Cantel, coin, quartier, morceau, chanteau.*" *Burguy.*
- Capitayne, 1864, Captayne, 2263, *s.* captain; *pl.* capytaynez, 838.
- Captyfe, 1589, *s.* captive, prisoner; *pl.* captifs, 1580.
- Care, 859, Kare, 1838, *s.* sorrow.
- Carefulle, *adj.* unhappy, 957, sorrowful, 1777.
- Caremane, *s.* male, man, 957. A.S. *carlman.*
- Carffes, *s. pl.* cuts, 2713.
- Carle, *s.* fellow, 1063, 1107, 1165. A.S. *carl.*
- Carpe, 2750, Karpe, 1929, 2126, *v.* talk, speak; 3 *s.* carpys, 132; *pret.* carpede, 143, 220. "Carpyn' or talkyn'. *Fabulor, confabulor, garrulo.*" *Promptorium Parvulorum.*
- Carpynge, *s.* talk, 1672.
- Caryage, *s.* luggage, 2355.
- Caste, *v.* cast, consider, purpose; 2 *s.* castes, 261; 3 *s.* castes, 1998; *castis*, 1769; *pret.* kest, 3384, keste, 118, 280, 943; *imp.* 2 *s.* kaste 3406; *p.p.* castyne, 819, 3240.
- Castelles, *s. pl.* castles, 27, 849.
- Cawtelous, *adj.* full of artifices, artful, cunning, sly, 4185. Fr. *cauteleux.*
- Cayre, 877, Caire, 1192, Kaire, 641, 1319, Kayere, 627, Kayre, 6, 444, *v.* go; 3 *s.* cayres, 243; *pl.* cayers, 480. The original meaning was *turn*. A.S. *cyrran, cérran*, to turn.
- Certane, 3930, Certayne, 817, *adv.* certainly.
- Certez, 1162, 1342, Certys, *adv.* surely, certainly.
- Certyfye, *v.* tell, inform, 1555.
- Ceté, 601, 2012, Cetee, 440, 488, *s.* city; *pl.* cetees, 2609, cetese, 1337.
- Chaas, *s.* chace, 2269.
- Chalange, *v.* contest, dispute, 1322, challenge, 2524, 3397, claim, 3326. "*Chalonger, . . . demander, contester, provoquer, attaquer, défendre, refuser, prohiber, blâmer; de calumnia fausse accusation, chicane.*" *Burguy* under *Chalonge.*
- Champayne, *s.* champaign, level

- country, 1226, 1362; *pl.* champanyse, 1822.
- Changene, *v. inf.* change, 1405, chawnge, 2301; *pl.* changene, 2989, chaungene, 168; *pret.* chaungede, 3382, chawngyd, 2701, chawngide, 2964; *i. p.* chawngawnde, 2523, chawngynge, 3267.
- Chapes, *s.* *pl.* metal tips of sword-sheaths, 2522. "Chape of a schethe. *Spirula.*" *Prompt. Parv.* "The chape of a sword was a badge assumed by the De la Warr family, in memorial of the part taken by Sir Roger de la Warr, at Poitiers, 1356, in the capture of John, King of France, when he took possession of the royal sword." *Way in Prompt. Parv.*
- Chapyde, *v. pret.* escaped, 4260.
- Charbokle, 3326, Charebocle, 2523, 3267, *s.* carbuncle.
- Chare, *s.* (?) 3603.
- Chare, *v.* (?) carry, 1886.
- Charge, *v.* load, burden, charge, molest, &c.; 3 *s.* chargges, 3538; *pret.* chargede, 1540, chargyde, 1406; *p.p.* chargede, 1549, charegyde, 1552, chargegid, 3136, chargegede, 3604, chargegide, 2731.
- Chargour, 1026, *s.* dish; *pl.* chargeours, 185.
- Charitee, *s.* charity, 1019, 1542.
- Charottez, *s. pl.* chariots, 1552.
- Charpe, *adj.* sharp, 3600.
- Charre, *s.* car, 3914.
- Charry, *adj.* (?) dear, cherished, 2964. *Fr.* *cher*, dear; *chéri*, cherished.
- Chasse, *s.* chace, 2368.
- Chasse, *v.* chase, 2237.
- Chastye, *v.* chastise, correct, 1019; *p.p.* chastyede, 690.
- Chasynges-pere, *s.* hunting-spear, 1823, 2955.
- Chauffede, *p.p.* heated, excited, 2236.
- Chaunce, *s.* chance, hap, 1749, fortune, 2999; chawmse, 2368; *pl.* chauncez, 531, 2956.
- Chauncelere, 169, 1551, Chaunchelere, 1541, *s.* chancellor.
- Chawffe, *v.* become heated, 2301.
- Chawmbyrs, *s. pl.* chambers, 3041.
- Chayere, *s.* chair, seat, 3266, 3329, 3347.
- Cheefe, *s.* chief (*Her.*), 2523.
- Cheefe, *adj.* chief, 1363, 1404.
- Cheekke. *See* Chekke.
- Cheese. *See* Chese.
- Chefede. *See* Cheue.
- Cheftans, 18, Cheftanes, 1872, Cheftaynes, 1323, 1406, *s. pl.* chieftains.
- Chekefulle, *adj.* chockfull, 3604.
- Chekke, 1539, 2956, Cheke, 3000. Chekke, 1986, *s.* check, repulse; but applied to the enemy, and therefore equivalent to *success*. In line 1986 it seems to mean the force which checks the enemy.
- Chekyne, *s.* chicken, 4181.
- Chekyrde, *p.p.* chequered, 3267.
- Chele, *s.* cold, 3391.
- Chere, *s.* face, countenance, 2069, 2964.
- Chese, 1619, Cheese, 682, *v.* choose; hence, choose a way, go towards; 3 *s.* cheses, 2954, chesez, 1225; *pl.* chesene, 1873; *p.p.* chosene, 2731.
- Cheualere, *s.* knight, 208, 1551; *pl.* cheualers, 2116.
- Cheualrous, 1362, 1540, Cheualrous, 1399, *adj.* chivalrous.
- Cheualrye, 18, 169, 1404, Cheualrye, 531, *s.* chivalry, knighthood, knights.
- Cheuede, 1117, 1841, Chefede, 869; *p.p.* fared, thriven, succeeded.
- Cheuede, *v. pret.* attained, 3329.
- Cheueride, *p.p.* shivered, 3391.

- Chewyse, *v. save*, 1750. "*Chevir*, venir à bout de quelque chose, sortir d'une affaire, se tirer d'embarras" *Burguy*.
- Cheyne, *s. pl. chains*, 2522.
- Chiftayne, *s. chieftain*, 2732.
- Childe, *s. applied to a grown person*, 2952, 4260; *pl. childre*, 1821, *childre*, 1025, *childrene*, 4078, *childrenne*, 3188, *childyre*, 845, 1051, *childyrene*, 3208.
- Chillande, *i. p. chilling*, cold, 2965.
- Chippe, *s. ship*, 3599; *pl. chippes*, 3546.
- Chippe-burdez, *s. pl. shipboards*, 1699.
- Chis, (?) 2217.
- Cho, *pron. she*, 655, 659, 715, &c. See Scho.
- Chokkefulle, *adj. chockfull*, 1552.
- Chokkes, *v. 3 s. (?) thrusts*, 2955; *p.p. chokkode*, 3603.
- Chullede, *p.p. 1444*. "Chulle. To bandy about." *Halliwell*.
- Churles, *adj. churlish*, 4181.
- Chymnés, 3041, Chympnés, 168, *s. pl. brasiers*, or other receptacles for fire, fireplaces.
- Chyne, *s. chine*, backbone, 3390.
- Cirquytrie, 3399, Cyrqwitrye, 2616 (wrongly printed *Cyrus witrye*), *s. pride*, arrogance.
- Cité, 1696, 1979, Citee, 60, *s. city*. See Ceté.
- Clappyde, 956, Clappide, 1137, *v. pret. smote together*.
- Clarioune, 3563, Claryoune, 2718, *s. clarion*, war-trumpet; *pl. clarions*, 1758.
- Claspande, *i. p. clasping*, 4337.
- Clasppis, *s. pl. clasps*, 909.
- Clathe-sekkes, *s. pl. cloth-sacks*, 733.
- Clauer, *s. clover* 3241.
- Clauerande, *i. p. clawing*, 3324.
- Clede, *v. pret. clothed*, 2713; *p.p. cledde*, 3334, *clede*, 3241, 3684, *cleede*, 217, *clothed*, clad.
- Clefe, *v. pret. clave*, split, 2559.
- Cleffe, *v. cleave*, stick, cling, 1312.
- Clekes, 1865, Clekys, 1164, 2123, *v. 3 s. clutches*, seizes.
- Clene, *adj. clean*, pure, 201, 217, bright, fair, good, 1197, 1603.
- Clenkkede, *v. pret. clanked*, 2113.
- Clenliche, Clenly, Clenlyche, *adv. well*, 216, 628, 654, 1586, *entirely*, quite, 581, 673, 850, 2125.
- Clepid, *v. pret. called*, 3563. *A.S. clypian*.
- Clere, *adj. clear*, bright, 819, 883, 909, *illustrious*, 1559, *clear*, free from obstacles, 1640.
- Clereworte, *s. 3241*. Perhaps = *A.S. clefer-wyrt*, small clover.
- Clergialle, *adj. skilful*, 1758.
- Clergyally, *adv. cleverly*, 200.
- Clergye, *s. learning*, 809.
- Clerkis, 3444, Clerkkes, 2391, *s. pl. clerics*, scholars.
- Clewes, 1639, Clewez, 2019, Kleuys, 2396, Cloughes, 941, *s. pl. cliffs*.
- Clewide, *v. pret. cleaved*, clung, 3268.
- Close, *v. enclose*, 1165, 2003.
- Close, *s. prison*, 1586, *enclosed space*, enclosure, 1639, 3240.
- Closse, *adj. secret*, 1196.
- Cloughes. See Clewes.
- Clowez, *s. pl. claws*, 783.
- Clyfe, 883, Clyffe, 2158, *s. cliff*; *pl. cleyffez*, 2019.
- Clymbande, *i. p. climbing*, 3324, 3422.
- Clynges, *v. 3 s. presses*, 1865.
- Coblez, *s. pl. cables*, 742.

- Coferez, 733, Cofirs, 2283, Cofres, 4206, *s. pl.* coffers, chests.
- Cogge, *s.* ship, 476, 756, 3634; *pl.* coggez, 733. "Cairet on the colde ythes cogges & other." *The Destruction of Troy*, E. E. T. S., 1. 3242.
- Coldis, *v.* 2 *s.* makest cold, chill-est, 3518.
- Colurez, *s. pl.* colours, 819.
- Comandez, 2392, Comaunde, 1637, Commaunde, 71, *v.* 3 *s.* *pres. ind.* commands; *pret.* comande, 1218, comaunde, 2356, comaudyd, 1602, commande, 156, 4148; *imp.* comaunde, 1585.
- Come, *v. inf.* 1584; 3 *s.* *pres. ind.* comes, 1818, commes, 799, comez, 841, commez, 1439; *pl.* commez, 1545; *pret.* come, 80, 176, 2119; *i. p.* commande, 3468; *p. p.* comene, 532, 865, commyne, 1419, comyne, 987.
- Come, *s.* coming, 1203, 1565, 1812.
- Comelyche, 1318, Comliche, 3335, Comly, 1203, 3259, Comlyche, 71, 1053, *adj.* comely.
- Comes, *impers. v.* becomes, befits, 1579.
- Comforth, 830, Comforthe, 944, 1839, Comfurthe, 696, *v.* comfort, strengthen; 3 *s.* comfourthes, 3131.
- Comforthe, *s.* comfort, 3960.
- Comlyli, 3047, Comlyly, 4108, *adv.* in a comely manner.
- Commande. *See* Come.
- Comone, *v.* converse, 1580.
- Comouns, 725, Comowns, 2353, *s. pl.* commons.
- Compas, *s.* outer part (of an enclosure), 3240, (of a wheel), 3268, 3325, compass, reach, 4222.
- Compaste, *p. p.* surrounded, 3633.
- Concelle, 259, &c. *See* Counsaile.
- Concelle, 243, 2395, Consayle, 1959, *s.* council.
- Condethe, 3148, 3483, Coundyte, 475, Cundit, 444, *s.* safe conduct.
- Condethes, *s. pl.* conduits, 201.
- Condycyone, *s.* condition, 1511.
- Confundez, *v.* 3 *s.* confounds, 1922; *p. p.* confundede, 1153.
- Connygez, *s. pl.* conies, rabbits, 197.
- Conquerid, 284, Conqueryd, 24, *v. pret.* won, gained; *p. p.* conqueryde, 402.
- Consayle. *See* Concelle.
- Constable, *s.* 1585, 1590.
- Contek, Conteke, *s.* strife, 2721, 3669, 4177.
- Contenance, Contenaunce, *s.* countenance, manner, behaviour, 123, 222, 542, 2120, 4033.
- Contré, 623, 676, Contree, 848, 1640, Countré, 223, 2304, Cowntre, 3542, *s.* country; *pl.* contres, 3425, contreez, 27.
- Conuaye, *v.* convey, 1589, 1604.
- Conyng, *adj.* cunning, skilful, 3202; *superl.* conyngeste, 809; konyngeste, 3177.
- Cope-borde, *s.* cupboard, 206.
- Copes, *s. pl.* 4334.
- Coppe, *s.* cup, 2750
- Coppe-fulle, *s.* cupful, 3378.
- Corage, *s.* heart, 536, 1725, 1922.
- Corenalle. *See* Coronalle.
- Corkes, *s.* carcase, 1091.
- Corne, (?) 1786, 1837.
- Cornettes, *s. pl.* 1758, 4108.
- Cornuse, *s. pl.* horns, 1809. *Lat. cornu.*
- Coronalle, 908, 1108, 3633, Core-
nalle, 3258, *s.*; a kind of ring or
crown round a helmet; also, part
of a lady's head-dress.
- Corone, 291, Coroune, 28,
Corowne, 3543, Crowne, 3426,
4202, Crownne, 3352, *s.* crown;
pl. corowns, 3269, crounes, 51.

- Coroune, 678, Crowne, 3185, *v.* crown; *p.p.* corounde, 142, coroune, 125, corownde, 1654, 2447, 3525, crowned, 3213, crowne, 3040, crowne, 3407.
- Corroumppe, *p.p.* corrupt, 3478.
- Cors, 1779, 2380, Corse, 1389, *s.* corpse, body.
- Corsaunt, *s.* holy body, body of a saint, 1164. See *Corsant* in *English Gilds*, p. 97, l. 3, and *Corseynt*, *English Gilds*, p. 188, l. 1.
- Corvene. See *Kerues*.
- Coseri, *s.* (?) 1582.
- Coste, *s.* coast, 834, 877, 1787.
- Cosyne, *s.* cousin, kinsman, 338, kinswoman, 864; *pl.* cosyns, 50, 101.
- Cote, 1690, 3334, Cotte, 1194, *s.* coat.
- Couaitte. See *Coueite*.
- Couatys, *s.* covetousness, 1580.
- Couaunde. Read *Conannde*, *adj.* cunning, skilful, 558.
- Couched, *p.p.* set, 909.
- Coueite, 1191, Couaitte, 51, Couette, 3325, *v.* covet; 2 *s. pres.* couettes, 1321; *p.p.* cowayte, 2397.
- Couenawnte, *s.* covenant, 3542.
- Coent, *s.* convent, 1220, 4021.
- Couer, Couere, *v.* recover, 859, 1246, win, 3425, 3434; 3 *s.* coueres, 3644, coueris, 941, reaches; coueris *vpe*, gets up, 4274; *pret.* couerde, won, 274, 280, reached, 858; couerd *vp*, got up, rose, 124, coueride, got up, 2195; *p.p.* couerede, won, 28, 3085.
- Couere, *v.* cover, 1886; 3 *s. pres.* couers, 1110; *pret.* couerde, 3378, 3995; *p.p.* couerde, 1770, 2115, couerede, 3047, 3098.
- Couerte, *adj.* sheltered, 1780, secret, 1196.
- Countyte. See *Condethe*.
- Coungé, *s.* leave, 479. Fr. *congé*.
- Counsaille, 291, Concelle, 144, 259, 1023, *s.* counsel, advice.
- Counsayles, *v.* 3 *s.* advises, 305.
- Countere, *v.* encounter, 1274; 3 *s.* cownterez, 1848; *p.p.* cownterede, 1893.
- Countré. See *Contré*.
- Coupable, *adj.* blameable, guilty, 1317.
- Coupes. See *Cowpe*.
- Coupylde, *v. pret.* coupled, fastened, 2336.
- Coursere, *s.* 1388, 2166.
- Courtays. See *Curtais*.
- Coutere, *s.* elbowpiece (in armour), 2567. *Sir Gawayne and the Green Knight*, l. 583.
- Couthe, *v. pret.* knew, 21, Cowthe, couldst, 3340.
- Cowardys, *s.* cowardice, 1693, 4186.
- Cowayte. See *Coueite*.
- Cowhide, *v. pret.* lay down (as hounds); and hence, became meek and submissive, 122.
- Cowle, *s.* a large tub, 1051. "Cowle, vessel. *Tina*, *Calh.*" *Prompt. Parv.* In *English Gilds*, ed. Toulmin Smith, pp. 371, 382, *Cowle* is used for a tub, or some such vessel to measure ale with.
- Cowntas, *s.* countess, 3045; *pl.* cowntasses, 4337.
- Cowntere, *s.* accountant, 1672.
- Cownterez. See *Countere*.
- Cowpe, *s.* cup, 209; *pl.* cowpes, 210, 237; coupes, 3375.
- Cowpez, *v.* 3 *s.* smites, strikes, 799, 2059; *pl.* cowpene, 2543.
- Cowthe. See *Couthe*.
- Crachynge, *s.* crashing, 3669.
- Crafe, *v.* crave, 1681, 3522.
- Crafte, *s.* skill, art, 752, 3667; *pl.* craftez, 284, craftys, 24.

- Craftely, 3351, Craftyly, 196, *adv.* skilfully.
- Crafty, *adj.* skilfully made, 211.
- Crage, *s.* crag, 876.
- Cramede, *p.p.* crammed, 477, 1051.
- Crasseches, *v. pl. pres. ind.* crush, 3670; *pret.* craschede, 2114, crasschede, 1109.
- Craunaunde, *adj.* craven, 133.
- Crayers, 738, Krayers, 3666, *s. pl.* small vessels. "And, for the Revictallyng and Refresshyng of the said Shippes with Water and other Necessaries, the said Admirall shall, over and above the said Shippes, have Two *Crayers*, the one being of the Portage of Thre Score and fyfty [? fifteen] Tonnes, wherein shall be the Master Twelve Mariners and One Boye, and the other *Crayer* shall be of the Portage of fifty five Tonnes, wherein shall be the Maister with Ten Maryners and one Boye" *Indentura inter Dominum Regem & Edwardum Howard Capitaneum Generalem Armatae super Mare* (A.D. 1512). Rymer, *Foedera*, tom. xiii. p. 328, col. 2.
- Craysed, *p.p.* broken, 2150. Fr. *écrasé*.
- Creatoure, *s.* creature, 534, 859; *pl.* creatours, 4102.
- Credens, *s.* credentials, 88, 3522.
- Creest, Creeste, *s.* crest, 1108, 1133, 1185.
- Creette, *s.* a kind of wine, 200.
- Crepers, *s. pl.* grapnels, 3667. (*Halliwel.*)
- Cresmede. *See* Crysmede.
- Cretoyne, *s.* 197. "A sweet sauce." *Halliwel.* Compare "Cretons : Lard coupé menu qu'on fait frire dans la poêle." *Roquefort*.
- Crewelle, 132, 1909, Crouelle, 118, Crowelle, 2544, 3424, Cruelle, 43, 88, *adj.* cruel, fierce, angry, &c.
- Crispid, *p.p.* 1003.
- Cristene, Cristync, *adj.* Christian, 3429; *sb.* 1187, 2786, 4112.
- Cristenly, *adv.* like a Christian, 1208.
- Cristyndome, *s.* Christendom, 2036.
- Cristynmesdaye, *s.* Christmas-day, 70.
- Cristynnese, 64, Cristynmesse, 839, Crystynmesse, 544, *s.* Christmas.
- Cronycle, *s.* chronicle, 3445; *pl.* cronycles, 3218.
- Crose, 3428, Crosse, 3335, *s.* cross; one crosse, across, 3667.
- Crosse-dayes, *s. pl.* 3212.
- Crosselettes, *s. pl.* 3336.
- Crouelle. *See* Crewelle.
- Crounes. *See* Corone.
- Crowelle. *See* Crewelle.
- Crownede. *See* Coroune, *v.*
- Cruelle. *See* Crewelle.
- Cruschene, *v. inf.* crush, 1134.
- Cryande, *i. p.* crying, 1137.
- Crysmede, 1051, Cresmede, 1065, Krysmede, 3185, *adj.* anointed with chrism.
- Crystenede, Crystnede, *p.p.* christened, 3337.
- Crysume, 142, Krysome, 2447, 3435, *s.* chrism.
- Cukewalde, *s.* cuckold, 1312.
- Cuñdit. *See* Condethe.
- Cunvayede, *v. pret.* convoyed, 432.
- Cure, *s.* care, 673.
- Curius, *adj.* curious, 61.
- Curlues, *s. pl.* curlews, 196.
- Curtais, 2394, Curtaise, 209, 417, Curtays, 125, 1318, Curtayes, 481, Courtays, 21, *adj.* courteous.
- Curtaisie, *s.* courtesy, 1274, 1681.
- Cury, *s.* cookery, 1063.

- Daggas, *v. pl.* pierce, 2102; *i. p.* daggande, 3749.
- Dagswaynnes, *s. pl.* garments "of frize, or some material with long thrums like a carpet," 3609. See *Daggyswoeyne* and notes thereon in *Promptorium Parvulorum*.
- Dalte, Daltene. See Dele.
- Damesels, *s. pl.* young ladies, 3044.
- Dampnede, *p.p.* damned, condemned, 3277, 3299.
- Danke, Dannke, *adj.* dank, damp, 313, 3750.
- Dare, *v.* lie hid, lie still, 4007; 3 *s.* dares, 3225. "Daryn", or drowpyn', or prively to be hydde. *Latito, lateo, Cath.*" *Promptorium Parvulorum*.
- Darielles, *s. pl.* a kind of dish, 199. See the recipe *For darials* in *Liber Cure Cocorum*, ed. Morris, p. 38.
- Dauncesyng, *s.* dancing, 2030.
- Daungere, Dawngere, *s.* power, 579, 3067, danger, 1935, 2935.
- Daweyng, *s.* dawn, daybreak, 1601.
- Dawez, *s. pl.* days; done of dawez, killed, 2056.
- Daynteez, *s. pl.* dainties, 199.
- Daynteuous, *adj.* dainty, 4196.
- Daynttehely, *adv.* daintily, 723.
- Debles, 2934.
- Dede, *s.* deed; *pl.* dedes, 48, dedys, 13.
- Dede, *adj.* dead, 975, 1722.
- Dede, *s.* death, 1253, 1935.
- Dede-thrawe, *s.* death-pang, 1150.
- Deesse, *s.* dais, 218.
- Defadide, *p.p.* faded, 3304.
- Defawte, *s.* default, 2939.
- Defawtes, *v. pl.* are wanting, fail, 2928.
- Deffuse, *s.* prohibition, 256. Compare "Defaix, deffais, deffois, deffois: Lieux défendus, où il n'est pas permis de pêcher ni de chasser; empêchement, défense." *Roquefort*. But it is more than probable that we ought to read "deff[e]nse" = forbidding, prohibition.
- Degré, *s.* degree, 84.
- Dele, *v.* deal, 1278; *pret.* delte, 49, 3088; *pret. pl.* daltene, 2101, dalte, 3693, 3749; *p.p.* delte, 1216, 1277, 1564.
- Delygens, *s.* diligence, 1934.
- Delytte, *s.* delight, 1970.
- Delyuerede, *p.p.* set free, 1688, 2031.
- Demenys, *v.* 3 *s.* leads, 1988; *pl.* demenys, 4076. O. Fr. *demenier*.
- Demyd, Demyde, *p.p.* deemed, judged, 219, 1564, doomed, 4158.
- Depayntide, *p.p.* depicted, 3355.
- Depez, *s. pl.* deeps, 750.
- Depnesse, *s.* depth, 746.
- Dere, *v.* hurt, injure, 1783, 3248, 3611, 4200; 3 *s.* derys, 2099. A.S. *derian*.
- Dere, *adj.* dear, 974, 1216.
- Derefulle, *adj.* 4053. Qu. for *derffulle*, full of pain or care. Compare *derf*, hardship, affliction, pain, in *Stratmann*.
- Dereliche, 3379, Derely, 1277, *adv.* dearly.
- Dereworthily, *adv.* preciously, 3251.
- Derfe, *adj.* hard, strong, severe, 312, 332, 811, 2052, 2102, 2652.
- Derflyche, *adv.* severely, 3277.
- Derke, *adj.* dark, 754.
- Derlyng, *s.* darling, 4196.
- Derygese, *s. pl.* dirges, 4017.
- Despyne, 183. See Porke despyne.

- Destanye, 3436, 3779, Desteny, 1563, *s.* destiny.
- Destaynede, *p.p.* destined, 664, 4090, 4153, 4157, 4306.
- Destruede, *p.p.* destroyed, 1181.
- Deuer, *s.* duty, 1940.
- Devisedede, *v. pret.* divided, 3527.
- Deuorande, *i. p.* devouring, 2054.
- Deuotly, 296, Devottly, 347, *adv.* devoutly.
- Devyse, *v.* divide, 2400; *pret.* deuysede, 3088.
- Dewly, *adv.* duly, 4006.
- Deworyde, *p.p.* devoured, 851.
- Deynttely, *adv.* daintily, 2643.
- Diamawndis, *s. pl.* diamonds, 3297.
- Dictour, *s.* spokesman, 712.
- Dighte. *See* Dyghte.
- Dischayte, *s.* deceit, 3789.
- Discouerours, *s. pl.* scouts, spies, 3117.
- Diskoueres, *v. ind. pres. pl.* search, 3119; *imp. pl. 2.* discoueres, 1641.
- Disseuere, *v.* separate, 1575; 3 *s.* disseuerez, 1978; *pret.* disseueride, 3529.
- Disspite, *s.* spite, 3163.
- Disspyszede, *p.p.* despised, 269.
- Dogge-son, *s.* dog-son, 1072, 1723.
- Dole, 3067, 3299, 3885, Dule, 256, 704, 2777, *s.* sorrow.
- Dolefulle, *adj.* sorrowful, 2054.
- Dolphyne, *s.* 2054.
- Doluene, *p.p.* buried, 975.
- Domesdaye, *s.* day of judgment, 1278, 3442.
- Doo, *v.* do, 1934, 2322; 2 *s. pres. ind.* dosse, 1954; *pl. pres. ind.* dosse, 4333; *p.p.* donne, 1940.
- Doubbyd, 48, Doubbyde, 3613, *v. pret.* dubbed.
- Doucc, *adj.* sweet, pleasant, 1251.
- Doughttily, *adv.* valiantly, 1939.
- Doughty, 20, Doughtty, 1738, 2777, Dowghtty, 3793, *adj.* valiant; *superl.* doughtyeste, 219.
- Doughtynes, 1563, Doughtynesse, 3884, *s.* valour.
- Dout, *v.* doubt, 3061.
- Dowbille, *adj.* double, 2834.
- Dowblede, *p.p.* doubled, 3609.
- Dowblettez, *s. pl.* doublets, 2625.
- Dowcherys. *See* Ducherye.
- Dowere, *s.* dowry, 3089.
- Downkyng, *s.* moisture, 3248.
- Dowte, Dowtte, *s.* doubt, 2043, fear, 3225.
- Dowtte, *v.* fear, 312.
- Dowttouse, *adj.* dreadful, terrible, 3967.
- Drafe. *See* Dryffes.
- Dragges, *s. pl.* drags, 3615.
- Dragouns, *s. pl.* dragons, 1252.
- Drawe-bridge, *s.* drawbridge, 2474.
- Drawes, *v.* 3 *s.* draws, proceeds, 1251; *pl.* drawene, 3615; *p.p.* drawene, 3924.
- Dreche, *v.* tarry, delay, abide, 1504; 3 *s.* dreches, 2940, 4052; *pl.* dreches, 1254, 2154; *pret.* drecchede, 754.
- Drechede, *p.p.* troubled, harassed, 811.
- “Ac sathanas þe frecche
þe saule wule drecche,
Hwan he agult habbeþ.”
Jesus Coll. MS. 29, leaf 249.
- Drede, *v.* dread, fear, 829, 2235; *pret.* dredde, 20; *p.p.* dredde, 3298.
- Drede, *s.* dread, fear, 46, 754.
- Dredlesse, Dredlez, *adv.* without doubt, certainly, 1504, 2043, 4053.
- Drefene. *See* Dryffes.
- Dreghe, *s.* duration, continuance, 2915.

- Dreghe, one, *adv.* aside, back, 786, 787, 3968, 4219.
- Dreghe, *v.* suffer, endure, 3276, 3437.
- Dreghely, *adv.* enduringly, continually, 2028.
- Dremyd, *impers. v. pret.* 760. Hym dremyd = he dreamed.
- Drenschene, *v. inf.* drown, 761.
- Drerely, Drerily, *adv.* drearily, 2154, 2969.
- Dresce, 550, Dresse, 1072, 2042, 2401, *v.* direct, arrange, adjust, dispose, prepare, array; 3 *s.* dresses, 2026, dresesse, 2833; *pl.* drisses, 2473; *pret.* dressede, 786, 1055, dresside, 579, drissede, 2052, dryssede, 46; *p.p.* dresside, 1252, drissid, 218; dresses *vp* = rears.
- Dreune, Drife. *See* Dryffes.
- Drightene, 4008, Dryghttene, 1273, Dryghttine, 3799, *s.* the Lord; *gen.* Dryghtyns, 664, Dryghtynez, 1564. A.S. *Drihten*.
- Drissede. *See* Dresce.
- Dromondaries, *s. pl.* dromedaries, 2286.
- Dromowndes, *s. pl.* swift ships, 3615. "Dromon, dromont: Gondole, vaisseau de guerre." *Roquefort*. "Dromones, Naves cursoriæ, expediti cursus navigia." *Ducange*.
- Droupe, *v.* lie hid, lie still, 4007. *See* Dare.
- Drowghte, *s.* dryness, 3249.
- Drowppande, *i. p.* falling, 4053.
- Drye, *v.* suffer, 704, 1546, 1632.
- Dryffes, *v. pl.* drive, rush, 2757; *pret.* drafe, 787, drife, 3276; *pret. pl.* dreune, 2914; *i. p.* dryfande, 761, 816; *p.p.* drefene, 3224.
- Dryghttene. *See* Drightene.
- Drynchene, *v. inf.* to drown, 816.
- Drynkes, *adj.* drinkless, 4172.
- Drynkyne, *v. pl.* drink, 2028.
- Dryssede. *See* Dresce.
- Dubbyde, *p.p.* adorned, 3609.
- Ducherye, *s.* duchy, 2400, 2937; *pl.* ducherés, 1728, ducheryes, 3614, dowcherys, 49.
- Duchez, *s.* duchess, 852, 974, 3044.
- Duelle, *v.* dwell, tarry, abide, 3067; *pret.* duelledede, 3321, duellyde, 219; *i. p.* duelland, 3443; *p.p.* duellyde, 1200.
- Dukkes, Dukkez, *s. pl.* dukes, 723, 2029.
- Dule. *See* Dole.
- Dule-cotes, *s. pl.* mourning garments, 4336.
- Dusperes, 66, 1254, Duspers, 145, Dusseperez, 2029, Duzseperez, 723, Duszepers, 3751, Dusszepers, 4336, *s. pl.* peers; *lit.* twelve peers (Fr. douze pairs). Dussepere, *sg.* one of such peers, 2329, 2642.
- Duttez. *Read* Dinttez, *s. pl.* strokes, 787.
- Dyaperde, *adj.* 3251.
- Dyghte, *v.* order, arrange, dispose, 1253; 1 *s.* dyghttes, 2625; *pret.* dyghte, 2970; *p.p.* dyghte, sent, 3066, dressed, 3251, dighte, adorned, 3353.
- Dyked, *p.p.* buried, 975.
- Dyme, *adj.* dim, 1723.
- Dyne, *s.* din, noise, 2031.
- Dynned, *v. pret.* sounded, resounded, 2031.
- Dynnynge, *s.* noise, 2030.
- Dynt, 1073, Dynte, 312, 1118, *s.* stroke, blow; *pl.* dynttez, 1127, dynttys, 332.
- Dysfegoures, *v.* 3 *s.* disfigures, 2769.
- Dyspens, *s.* spending, 538.
- Dyssauyde, *p.p.* deceived, 683.
- Dyuerse, *adj.* divers, various, 49, 1935.

- Dyuusyde, *v. pret.* divided, distributed, 49, 1389.
- Efte, *adv.* again, 470, 529, 2349. A.S. *eft*.
- Egerly, 1125, 1148, 1411, 1591, Egrly, 1499, *adv.* sharply, fiercely.
- Egge, 2567, 2958, Eghge, 4194, *s. edge.* A.S. *ecg*.
- Eghelynge, *adv.* edgewise, 3675.
- Eghene, 3790, Eghne, 116, 358, Eughne, 1920, Eyghene, 3985, Eyghne, 1083, 4044, Eyne, 3282, *s. pl. eyes.* A.S. *edge, pl. eagan*.
- Eghge. *See* Egge.
- Egle, *s.* eagle, 2067, 2245.
- Egree, *adj.* sharp, eager, 507.
- Eke, *conj.* also, 44, 572.
- Ekkene, *v. inf.* increase, 2009; 3 *s. pres. ind.* ekys, 3965.
- Elagere, 2977, is certainly miswritten. The alliteration requires *sl . . .*; perhaps we ought to read *slayghte*, skill, dexterity.
- Eldare, *adj. comp.* older, 4151.
- Elde, *s.* age, 301, old age, 4220. A.S. *ylde*.
- Elders, Eldyrs, *s. pl.* ancients, 13, ancestors, 99, 272, 293.
- Elfaydes, *s. pl.* animals of some kind, 2288.
- Elles, *adv.* else, 1191, 1209, 2020.
- Emange, *prep.* among, 375, 1917, 2060. *See* Amange.
- Eme, *s.* uncle, 1347. A.S. *eám*.
- Enamelde, 2565, 3355, Enamelde, 2027, *p.p.* enamelled.
- Enangylles, *v. 3 s.* en-angles, i. e. surrounds by troops formed in an angular figure (?), 3781. *Comp.* en-circles.
- Enarmede, *p.p.* 910.
- Enbraces, *v. pl.* put on the arm, 4111; *enbrassez*, 1753; *p.p.* *enbrassede*, 2459, 2518.
- Enbuschement, *s.* ambush, 1407, 3115.
- Enbusches, *v. 3 s. pres. ind.* sets in ambush, 1981; *p.p.* *enbuschede*, 1712, *enbuschide*, 1403, *ambushed*.
- Enclesside. *Read* Enclosede, enclosed, 2396.
- Enclined, 479, Enclinede, 1706, *v. pret.* bowed.
- Enclines, *s. pl.* bows, 83.
- Enclosez, *v. 3 s.* 1134; *p.p.* *enclosede*, 4206, *enclosyde*, 3238.
- Encontre, 1320, 1787, Encountire, 3491, Encowntere, 4180, *v.* encounter; *pl.* *enconters*, 2158; *pret.* *encontrede*, 1185.
- Encorownmentes, *s. pl.* coronations, 4197.
- Encroche, *v.* seize, obtain, 3426; 3 *s.* *encrochez*, 1243; *pret.* *encrochede*, 2036; *p.p.* *encrochede*, 3525.
- Encroyssede, *v. pret.* crossed, 4112.
- Endente, 3297, Endenttyd, 2052, *p.p.* *endented* (Her.).
- Endittede, *v. pret.* indited, composed, 3420.
- Endordide, *p.p.* gilt, 199.
- Enewe, 2657, Enowe, 504, *adv.* enough.
- Enfeblesches, *v. pl. pres.* become weak, 2484.
- Enffureschit, *p.p.* flowered, 198.
- Enforce, *v.* exert; *enforcee* zow, endeavour, 225; *enforssede*, strengthen, reinforce, 364.
- Engenderde, *p.p.* begotten, 843.
- Engendure, *s.* begetting, 3743.
- Engeynes. *See* Engynes.
- Englaymez, 1131, Englaymous, 3684, *v. pl.* render slimy. "Gley-myn', or yngleymyn'. *Visco, in visco.*" *Promptorium Parvulorum*.
- Engowschede, *p.p.* swollen, in-

- flated, 2053. "Engousser : Enfler, grossir." *Roquefort*.
- Engrelede, *p.p.* engrailed (Her.), 4182.
- Engynes, 2481, 3036, Engeynes, 2423, *s. pl.* engines.
- Engyste, *v.* assign lodgings, 445. "Gister, giter : Assigner un gite." *Roquefort*.
- Enhorilde, *p.p.* surrounded, 3244. See *Enourled* in Alliterative Poems (Reprint), B. 19 and Glossary.
- Enis. See Eynes.
- Enjoynes, 2897, Enjoynys, 4109, *v. pl.* join in battle; *pret.* enjoynede, 2087.
- Enkerly, *adv.* ardently, eagerly, 507, 2066, 2222, 2839.
- Enmy, Enmye, *s.* enemy, foe, 519, 642, 1952; *pl.* enmyse, 1205, 1240.
- Ennelled, *p.p.* enameled, 1294.
- Ennoyntede, 50, Ennoynttyde, 101, Enoyntede, 142, Enoyntede, 544, 2447, *p.p.* anointed.
- Enowe, *adv.* enough, 504.
- Enpeyrede, *p.p.* impaired, damaged, 474.
- Empoysone, *s.* poison, 213.
- Ensege, 441, Ensegge, 1337, *v.* besiege; 3 *s.* ensegge, 623; *p.p.* ensegedede, 1696.
- Enserchede, 3942. *Read* Enserclede, encircled.
- Enserches, *v.* 3 *s.* searches, examines, 4311; *pl.* enserches, 2466.
- Ensure, *v.* assure, 1689, 2324, 3734.
- Entamede, *v. pret.* cut, wounded, 2203; *p.p.* 1160, 2708. "Entamer, entamer, trancher, blesser, léser, enlever l'intégrité." *Burguy*.
- Entayllide, *p.p.* entailed, 3542.
- Entire, *v.* enter, 1967; *ind. pres.* 3 *s.* enteres, 2007, 2387; *pl.* entres, 4309; *pret.* enteride, 2805; *p.p.* entirde, 3448, entrede, 4069, entyrde, 1691.
- Enverounes, *v. pl.* environ, surround, 4124; *pret.* enuerounde, went round or about, 2051, 2094; *p.p.* enuerownde, surrounded, 3242.
- Enueryde, *p.p.* (?) 1694.
- Enuyous, *adj.* 2047.
- Enys. See Eynes.
- Er, *v. pl.* are, 166.
- Erberis, *s. pl.* gardens, 3245.
- Ercheuesques, *s. pl.* archbishops, 67.
- Ere, *v. pl.* are, 1538, 1582, 2547.
- Ere, *adv.* before, 1840.
- Erle, *s.* earl, 1659; *pl.* erlez, 1904, erles, 3528, 3933.
- Erledoms, *s. pl.* earldoms, 42.
- Erles, *s. pl.* earnest, deposit, 2687.
- Erne, *s. pl.* ears, 1086.
- Ernestly, *adv.* 2838, 2903.
- Errawnte, *adj.* arrant, 2895.
- Erthe, *s.* earth, 109, 161.
- Erthely, *adj.* earthly, 1664, 4169.
- Es, *v.* 3 *s.* is, 16, 88, 89; *pl.* es (= are), 1666, 3448.
- Eschape, *v.* escape, 1020, 2957; *pret.* eschappedede, 1881, eschappide, 2367; *p.p.* eschapedede, 1117, 3576.
- Escheffe, *v.* 2301.
- Escheue, *v.* attain, 3347; *pret.* escheuede, 3000, eschewede, fell out well, 2956, eschewede, met with good fortune, 1620; *p.p.* escheuyde, 3021, eschewede, 1539, 3027.
- Eschewes, *v.* 3 *s.* draws back, retreats, 1116; *pret.* eschewede, 1881; *imp.* 2 *pl.* eschewes, 1750. "Eschiver, eskiver, escheveir, éviter, fuir, esquiver." *Burguy*.
- Ese, *s.* ease, 3208.
- Este, *adj.* east, 1740, 3210.
- Esterne, 1006, Estyre, 554, *s.* Easter.

- Etene, *p.p.* eaten, 2716.
- Ethenys, 4163, Ethyns, 4122, *s. pl.* giants. See *Elayn* in *Sir Gawayne and the Green Knight*, ll. 140, 723. A.S. *cóten*.
- Ettylle, *v.* purpose, 554; 3 *s. ettelles*, 520, etles, 3077.
- Euene, 2073, Euenne, 4055, Euyne, 78, Evyne, 3596, Ewynne, 3597, Ewene, 762, Ewyne, 618, 1122, Ewynne, 2961, *adv.* even, straight, right, just.
- Euensange, 894, Euesange, 900, *s.* evensong, vespers.
- Eueriche a, 2037, Euer-ilk a, 212, *adj.* every.
- Euylle, *adv.* ill, 1117.
- Ewene. See *Euene*.
- Ewyne, *s.* evening, eve, 1006, 1788.
- Ewyne, Ewynne. See *Euene*.
- Ewyre, *adv.* ever, 8.
- Eye-liddis, *s. pl.* eyelids, 3952.
- Eyghene, Eyghne, Eyne. See *Eghene*.
- Eynes, 1283, 2308, Eynéz, 1760, Eynis, 2516, Eynys, 1879, Eynyes, 2275, Enis, 2886, 3376, Enys, 3466, *s. pl.* narrow passages, passes. A.S. *enge*, narrow, Germ. *enge*, a narrow passage.
- Faa-mene, *s. pl.* foemen, 303.
- Fadire, 3432, Fadyr, 112, Fadyre, 1169, *s.* father.
- Fadome, *s.* fathom, 1103.
- Faees, *s. pl.* foes, 403.
- Faghte. See *Feghte*.
- Faire, *adv.* well, 1110, 3247.
- Fairely, *adv.* nicely, 954.
- Faith, *s.* 1155.
- Faithely, Faythely, *adv.* assuredly, 3864, 4031.
- Fakene, *v. pl.* coil, 742. "Fake, one of the circles, or windings, of a cable, or hawser, as it lies disposed in the coil. . . . The fakes are greater or smaller in proportion to the extent of space which a cable is allowed to occupy where it lies." Falconer's *Marine Dictionary*, ed. Burney. Sc. *faiik*, a fold (*Jamieson*).
- Falle, *v.* betide, 1006; 3 *s.* falles, belongs, 2480.
- Falow, *adj.* pale, 1402.
- Falowede, *p.p.* turned pale, 3954.
- Fals, *adj.* false, 1307.
- Falsede, 3918, Falssede, 2860, *s.* falsehood, error.
- Falterede, *v. pret.* quivered, 1092.
- Fande. See *Fynde*.
- Fande, 557, 867, 984, Fannde, 656, *v.* endeavour. See *Fonde*.
- Fanng, *v.* seize, take, receive, 425; *ind. pres.* 3 *s.* fangez, 1005, 1249. See *Fongene*.
- Fare, *v.* go, 3581; *ind. pres.* 3 *s.* fares, proceeds, behaves, 788.
- Fare, *s.* journey, course, 393.
- Fare-waye, *s.* course, 1357.
- Farlande, *s.* foreland, 880, 984, 1188.
- Farly. See *Ferly*.
- Faucetez, *s. pl.* taps, 205.
- Faughte, Faughtte, Fawghte. See *Feghte*.
- Fawcone, 788, Fawkone, 4003, *s.* falcon; *pl.* fawcouns, 925.
- Fawe, *adj.* variegated, particoloured, 747. A.S. *fah*.
- Fawnelle, 2765. Read *Fawuelle*, *s.* a horse of a yellowish chesnut colour. "Fauvel, fauvau, fauvelle: De couleur rousse, fauve, tirant sur le jaune, *fluvus, fulvus*." *Roquefort*.
- Fawntkyne, 2440, 2736, *s.* little child, baby; *pl.* fawntekyns, 845.
- Fawte, *s.* lack, 160, fault, 2737.
- Fax, *s.* hair, 1078. A.S. *feax*.

- Fay, *adj.* fated to die, dead, 394, 438, 971, 3328; *fey*, 121, 517, *feye*, 2847.
- Fay, Faye, *s.* faith, 2842, 2860, 3073.
- Fayfully, *adv.* faithfully, 1715.
- Fayled, 3308, looks like a mistake through confounding this line with the next; *qu.* faldede, folded.
- Fayne, *adj.* glad, 1160.
- Faythefully, *adv.* 1345, 1735, 1913.
- Faythely. *See* Faithely.
- Feble, *adj.* weak, bad, 226, 2929.
- Fecchede, *v. pret.* fetched, 169; *p.p.* fechede, 111, fechyde, 437.
- Feedde, *p.p.* fed, 2492.
- Feelde. *See* Felde.
- Feemene, *s. pl.* herdmen, keepers of cattle, 2488. A.S. *feoh*, cattle.
- Feghte, 367, 1715, Fyghte, 1345, 1735, *v.* fight; 3 *s.* feghttys, 789, fyghttez, 2091; *pl.* feghttes, 1495, feghttez, 2163, feghttene, 2555; *pret.* faghte, 1174, faughte, 2164, faughtte, 1898, fawghte, 2799; *i. p.* feghtande, 4257, fyghtande, 4066, 4121; *p.p.* foghtene, 3019, foughtene, 1535, foughttene, 2365.
- Feghte, *s.* fight, 4254.
- Fegure, *s.* figure, shape, 781, 3301.
- Fekille, *adj.* false, 2860.
- Felde, 972, 985, Feelde, 1432, *s.* field.
- Fele, *adj.* many, 845, 1247, 1496.
- Fele, *v.* hide, conceal, 3237. *See* *felen* in *Stratmann*. O.N. *fela*, M. Goth. *filhan*.
- Fele, *v.* feel; *pret.* felede, 1874.
- Feletez, 1158, Felettes, 2174, 4237, *s. pl.* fillets.
- Felewes, *v. pl.* follow, 2758.
- Feleyghes, *s. pl.* felly, circumference of a wheel, 3308. A.S. *felge*.
- Felle, *s.* skin, 1081. A.S. *fell*.
- Felle, *s.* mountain, 2489, 2509.
- Felle, *v.* fell, 1139; 3 *s.* fellez, 1247; *p.p.* fellide, 1851, fellde, 2376.
- Felle, *adj.* fierce, cruel, severe, 1401, 2769.
- Felly, *adv.* fiercely, 2141.
- Felowez, *s. pl.* fellows, companions, 1381.
- Felschene, *v. inf.* (?) renovate, 1975. Halliwell has "*Felsh*. To renovate a hat."
- Fende, *s.* fiend, devil, 871, 954; *pl.* fendez, 843.
- Fente, *s.* (?) 4249.
- Fenyste, *p.p.* finished, 4254.
- Ferant, 2259, Feraunte, 1811, 2140, Ferawnt, 2451, *adj.* seemly.
- Fercostez, *s. pl.* ships of some kind, 743. "Farkost, *Navis*." *Verelius*, under the word *Kost*. *See* *Farcost* and *Fercost* in *Jamieson*.
- Ferde, *p.p.* afraid, 403, 526, 3227; *s.* fear, 1875, 3069.
- Ferdnesse, *s.* fear, 121, 2258.
- Fere, *s.* fear, 3918.
- Fere, *s.* companion; *pl.* feres, 1608, ferez, 1789, feris, 1578, ferys, 2126. A.S. *gefera*.
- Fere, 1232. *See* Ferre.
- Fere, *adj.* sound, unhurt, 2796, 3017.
- Ferke, *v.* move, go, 984, 1037; ferkke, 4152; 3 *s.* ferkez, 933, 949; *inf.* ferkene, 3907; *i. p.* ferkand, 1452, ferkande, 2452.
- Ferly, 2842, Ferlyche, 925, *adj.* strange.
- Ferly, 2440, 2947, Farly, 2485, *s.* strange thing, wonder.
- Fermes, 425, Fermez, 1005, *s. pl.* rents, tribute.
- Fermysone, *s.* (?) some kind of sauce, 180.
- Ferre, *adj.* far, distant, 3547; fere,

- 1232; *be ferre* = *by far*, §1176; *comp. ferrere*, further, 1496, 3068, 4237; *superl. ferreste*, furthest, 2741.
- Ferrers, *s.* a kind of wine, 2714.
- Ferriours, 2752. *Read* Forriours, foragers.
- Ferrome, *adj.* far, foreign, 3578; *o ferrome* = *afar*, 856, 934, 2100.
- Fers, 2161, Ferse, 1451, 1537, *adj.* fierce.
- Fersely, 1115, 3402, Fersly, 1118, *adv.* fiercely.
- Fersenesse, *s.* fierceness, 3826.
- Ferthe, *adj.* fourth, 3412.
- Ferthynges, *s. pl.* round spots, 3472.
- Feryne, *adj.* far, foreign, 3711.
- Ferynne, *s.* fern, 1875.
- Ferys. *See* Fere.
- Fesantez, 925, Fesauntez, 198, *s. pl.* pheasants.
- Fesede, *p.p.* worried, 2842.
- Feste, *adj.* fast, 2142.
- Festenesse, *v.* 3 *s.* fastens, 1118; *pl.* festenez, 934.
- Fetche, *v.* 1188.
- Feteled, *p.p.* fettled, set in order, 2149.
- Fetheris, *s. pl.* feathers, 2098.
- Fette, *v.* fetch, 557.
- Fettede, *p.p.* fitted, ordered, arrayed, 4067. *See* Fitt.
- Feuerzere, *s.* February, 436.
- Fewle, *s.* fowl, bird, 2071; *pl.* feulez, 926.
- Fewtee, *s.* fealty, 112.
- Fewtere, 1791, Fewtire, 1769, Fewtyre, 1366, *s.* rest for a lance.
- Fewters, *v.* 3 *s.* lays in rest, 3775; *p.p.* fewteride, 1711, fewtrede, 1756, with spears in rest.
- Fey. *See* Fay.
- Feyede, *v. pret.* cleansed, wiped, 1114.
- Feyne, (?) foin, 1734.
- Feyne = fine, *v.* cease, 1147.
- Feyne, *v.* feign, 1913.
- Feynte, *adj.* faint, 1874.
- Feyntly, *adv.* faintly, 1734.
- ff.* Words beginning with *ff* are entered under single *F*.
- Fichene, *v. pl.* fix, pierce, 2098; *pret.* fichede, 4239.
- Fif, *adj.* five, 1756.
- Fifte, *adj.* fifth, 3306.
- Fillez, 1402, Fillis, 1038, *v.* 3 *s.* fills; *p.p.* filledde, satisfied, 1032.
- Filsnez, *v.* 3 *s.* lurks, 881. Compare "*Fylskni, Latibulum.*" *Verelius*.
- Filterede, 1078, 2149, Filtyrde, 780, *p.p.* matted, mixed.
- Firthe, *s.* wood, 1708, 2144.
- Fische-halle, *adj.* sound as a fish, 2709.
- Fitt, *v.* fit, set in order, array, 2139; 3 *s.* fittes, 1989, fitez, 1755, 2072; *p.p.* fittyde, 2455.
- Flammande, *i. p.* flaming, resplendent, 198.
- Flappes, *v.* strikes, 2781.
- Flawez, 773, Flawes, 2556, *s. pl.* blasts, gusts.
- Flawmande, *i. p.* flaming, 945, 1975, flashing, 1365, 1494.
- Flawmez, *v.* 3 *s.* flames, 1037; *pl.* flawmes, 2556.
- Flawnke, *s.* flank, 1158, 2174; *pl.* flawnkkes, 2100.
- Flay, *v.* frighten, terrify, 2779; *p.p.* flayede, 2441.
- Flayre, *s.* flame, 772.
- Flede. *See* Flee.
- Flee, *v.* 2021; *pret.* fleede, 494, 1432, 2729, flede, 3236; *p.p.* flede, 2488.

- Fleete, *v.* float, 803 ; *pret.* fletyde, 3602.
- Flemede, 2738, Flemyde, 1155, *p.p.* banished.
- Flemesche, *adj.* Flemish, 743.
- Flenges, *v.* 3 *s.* flings, 2762.
- Fleryande, *i. p.* gibing, scoffing, 1088, 2778. *Sc. fleer.*
- Flesche, *s.* 1160, 2099.
- Fleschez, *v. pl.* flit about, 926.
- Flete, *s.* fleet, 1189.
- Fleterede, *p.p.* (?) fitted for flight, 2097.
- Flethe, *s.* (?) 2482.
- Flieghes, *v.* 3 *s.* flies, 4002.
- Flitt, *v.* shoot (with arrows), 2097.
- Flode, *s.* flood, 773, 803, 1189.
- Floke, *s.* flock, company, 2849.
- Floke-mowthede, *adj.* fluke-mouthed, having a mouth like a flat fish, 2779.
- Flones, 3619, Flonez, 2097, *s. pl.* arrows. *A.S. flá, flán.*
- Florenez, *s. pl.* florins, 885.
- Flores, *s. pl.* fields, plains, 2694, 3249.
- Floresche, *v.* flower, flourish, 2555 ; *pret.* floreschede, 3246 ; *p.p.* floreschede, 771, 1708, 3472, floreschte, 924, 1366.
- Flour, *s.* flower, 1709, 1990 ; *pl.* flourez, 970.
- Flourdelice, *s.* lily-flower, 3333.
- Flowe, *v. pret.* flew, 772, 2100.
- Floynes, *s. pl.* a kind of small ships, 743. *A. Jal in his Glossaire Nautique gives "Flouin. Nom d'un petit navire ponté qui pouvait naviguer à la voile et à l'aviron."*
- Flude, *s.* flood, 494.
- Fluke, *s.* flounder, or other flat fish, 1088.
- Fluriste, *p.p.* flowered, 180.
- Flyeande, *i. p.* flying, 2451.
- Flyngande, *i. p.* flinging, dashing along, 2757.
- Flyschande, *i. p.* slashing, 2141.
- Flysches, *v.* slashes, cuts, 2768.
- Flyttynge, *s.* shooting (with arrows), 2099.
- Foddenid, *p.p.* produced, 3246.
- Foghtene. *See* Feghte.
- Folde, 315, 2151, Foulde, 1071, Fowlde, 3302, *s.* earth.
- Fole, *s.* foal, 449, 2783.
- Folily, *adv.* foolishly, 2841.
- Folowes, *v.* 3 *s.* follows, 1118 ; *pl.* folous, 1360.
- Fomand, 3307, Fomande, 2233, Fomannde, 780, *i. p.* foaming.
- Fome, *s.* foam, 1079.
- Fonde. *See* Fynde.
- Fonde, 3370, (miswritten) Fonode, 205, *v.* try.
- Fondene. *See* Fynde.
- Fongene, *v. pres. pl.* take, 2799 ; fonngez, 2753 ; *pret.* fongede, seized, 3308.
- Fonode. *See* Fonde.
- Foo, *s.* foe, 1536, 3395.
- Foode, *s.* offspring, child, person, 3776.
- Foomene, *s. pl.* foemen, 3020.
- Foonde, *v.* go, 366, 2489.
- Forbere, *v.* forbear, 1913.
- Forbrittenede, *p.p.* cut up, slaughtered, 2273.
- Forchipe, *s.* foeship, 3678.
- Forcyere, *adj. comp.* stronger, 1176.
- Fordremyde, *p.p.* wearied by dreaming, 3392.
- Fore, *prep.* for, 256 ; *conj.* for, 1179.
- Fore-brete, *s.* front, 1494, 1990.
- Fore-brustene, *p.p.* burst, 2272.

- Foregyffe. *See* Forgyffe.
 Forejustyde. *See* Forjuste.
 Forelytenede, *p.p.* lessened, 254.
 Fore-maglede, *p.p.* mangled, 1534.
Se. magil, maigil, to mangle (Jamieson).
 Forestayne, *s.* prow of a ship, 742.
 Foretoppe, *s.* forehead, 1078.
 Fore-trauaillede, *p.p.* fatigued, 806.
 Forfette, *v.* forfeit, 557; *p.p.* forfeited, 1155.
 Forfoughttene, *p.p.* wearied with fighting, 3792, 4179.
 Forgyffe, 3488, Foregyffe, 4324, *v.* forgive; *p.p.* forgeffene, 2134.
 Forheuede, *s.* forehead, 1080.
 Forjuste, 2895, Forjustede, 2088, 2134, 2908, Forejustyde, 1398, *p.p.* overcome in a joust, defeated.
 Formaylle, *s.* female hawk, 4003.
 Forraye, *v.* forage, 2489; 3 *s.* forrayse, 1247; *pret.* forrayede, 3017.
 Forreours, *s.* *pl.* foragers, 2450, 2901.
 Forsake, *v.* refuse, 1686, 2734, deny, 1945, 4142.
 Forsesy, *adj.* strong, powerful, 3300, 3307.
 Forsett, 2012, 2018, Forsette, 1714, 1896, 1979, Foresett, 2161, *p.p.*
 Forsterne, *s.* forepart of the stern, 3664.
 Fortethe, *s.* front teeth, 1089.
 Forthermaste, *adv.* first, 1365.
 Forthes, 2827, Forthis, 1850, *v.* 3 *s.* proceeds.
 For-thi, 152, 225, For-thy, 1172, Fore-ihy, 3009, Fore-thi, 3346, *adv.* therefore.
 Forthire, 261, Forthyre, 340, *adv.* further.
 Forthire, *v.* afford, furnish, 300, 1509.
 Forthirmaste, *adj.* first, 3330.
 For-thynkkes, 4252, For-thynkkys, 971, *impers. v.* repents; *me f.* = I regret, repent.
 Fortrodyne, *p.p.* trampled, 2150.
 Fote, 801, 1079, Fott, 4058, Fotte, 933, 1855, *s.* foot.
 Fote-mene, *s.* *pl.* infantry, 1989.
 Foughtene, Foughttene. *See* Feghte.
 Foulde. *See* Folde.
 Found, 452, Founde, 495, 1189, *v.* go, proceed; *pl.* fowndes, 3112, fowndys, 2756; *pret.* foundide, 1442.
 Foundene, Foundyne. *See* Fynde.
 Fourmede, *v.* *pret.* formed, 3808; *p.p.* 781, 861, 1061.
 Fourte, *adj.* fourth, 3300.
 Fourtedele, *s.* fourth part, quarter, 946.
 Fowlde. *See* Folde.
 Fowle, *s.* bird, 4002.
 Fowly, *adv.* foully, 1089.
 Fowndene. *See* Fynde.
 Fowndes. *See* Found.
 Foyle, *s.* leaf, 2704.
 Foynes, *v.* *pl.* fence, thrust, 1494, 2141, 2163; *pret.* foynede, 1898.
 Fra, *prep.* from, 47, 591.
 Fraisez, 1248. *Read* Frayes, terrifies.
 Fraiste, Frayste, *v.* try, test, 435, 881, 3395; 3 *s.* fraystez, 1227; *p.p.* fraistede, 2774.
 Fraknede, *adj.* freckled, 1081.
 Franche, *adj.* French, 1250.
 Fransye, *s.* frenzy, 3826.
 Frape, 2804, Frappe, 2163, 3548, *s.* company, troop.
 Frappez, *v.* 3 *s.* smites, 1115.

- Frauncnez, *s.* liberty, 1248.
 Frawghte, *p.p.* laden, freighted, 3547.
 Frawnke, *s.* enclosure, 3247.
 Frayedede, *p.p.* frightened, 2260.
 Fraynes, 507, Frayneze, 337, 954, 1441, *v.* 3 *s.* asks, inquires.
 Frayste. *See* Fraiste.
 Fre, Free, *adj.* noble, 1711, 3247.
 Frechely, *adv.* (?) boldly, (?) freshly, 3691.
 Freely, 3330, Frely, 970, Freliche, 2488, 3371, 3808, *adj.* noble.
 Freely, *adv.* 2072, 2140.
 Freke, *s.* man, fellow, 557, 873, 973; *pl.* frekes, 742, frekkes, 1360, frykis, 2898.
 Freke, 2759, 2821, Frekk, 2139, Frekke, 2454, *adj.* bold; *superl.* frekkeste, 1536, 2164.
 Frekly, 1360, 1451, Frekkly, 3927, *adv.* boldly.
 Freliche, Frely. *See* Freely, *adj.*
 Fremdly, 2738, Fremedly, 1250, Fremydly, 3405, *adv.* strangely.
 Fremmede, *adj.* strange, foreign, 3343.
 Frenchepe, *s.* friendship, 656.
 Frendez, *s.* *pl.* friends, 1442.
 Friendely, *adj.* friendly, 3343.
 Friendles, *adj.* friendless, 3305.
 Freschely, 1367, 1441, Fresche-liche, 4249, Frescly, 2097, Fresclyche, 2900, *adv.* freshly, briskly, vigorously.
 Freschene, *v.* refresh, 1452.
 Fresclyche, *adj.* fresh, 2502.
 Fresone, *s.* (?) Friesland horse, 1365.
 Fretene, *p.p.* (?) adorned, 2142. A.S. *frætwian*, to adorn.
 Frette, *p.p.* (?) rubbed, 2708. Fr. *frotter*, to rub.
 Fretted, *p.p.* 1364.
- Fretyne, *p.p.* devoured, 844.
 Frithez, *s.* *pl.* woods, forests, 924.
 Frithed, *p.p.* wooded round, hemmed in with forest, hedged, 3247. Occurs in *Piers the Plowman*, ed. Skeat, Text B, v. 590.
 Fro, *prep.* from, 3, 376, 1138.
 Fromonde, *s.* (?) 1112.
 Froske, *s.* frog, 1081. A.S. *frosc*.
 Frount, 1080, Frounte, 1711, 1756, Frownte, 2455, Fruunt, 1112, Fronte, 1495, *s.* brow, forehead, front.
 Frountere, 2861, Frowntere, 2898, *s.* front of an army.
 Frowarde, *adj.* perverse, 3345.
 Froyte, *s.* fruit, 2492, 2707; *pl.* froytez, 3246.
 Frumentee, *s.* a dish made of wheat and various other things, 180. *See* the recipe in *Liber Cure Cocorum*, ed. Morris, p. 7.
 Frunt. *See* Frount.
 Frusche, *s.* dash, charge, swift attack, 2900.
 Fruschene, *v.* *pl.* dash, smite, 2804. "*Froisser, fruisser, écraser, froisser, briser.*" *Burguy*.
 Frykis. *See* Freke, *s.*
 Frysthez, 1248. *Read* Frythez, spares.
 Frythes, *v.* *pl.* spare, 2159; *imp.* 2 *pl.* 1734; *p.p.* frythede, 656.
 Fude, *s.* food, 160, 2486.
 Fulille, *v.* fill up, 3438.
 Fulle, *adv.* foul, 1154, 2436.
 Fulsomeste, *adj.* foulest, 1061.
 Fundene. *See* Fynde.
 Furlange, *s.* furlong, 873, 946, 1538.
 Furthe, *adv.* forth, 262, 632, 1229.
 Furthe, *s.* path, ford, 1227, 1525, 1714, 1897, 2144.

- Fute, *s.* foot, 461.
 Fyche, *v.* fix, 2162.
 Fyfe, *adj.* five, 844, 856.
 Fyfte, *adj.* fifth, 3414.
 Fyghtande. *See* Feghte.
 Fygured, *p.p.* 2151.
 Fylede, *p.p.* defiled, 978.
 Fylth, *s.* foul lust, 1032, 1071.
 Fynde, *v.* find; *pl.* fyndez, 1357; *pret.* fande, 1160, fonde, 2775; *p.p.* fundene, 1176, fondene, 675, 808, foundene, 92, 163, foundyne, 435, fowndene, 3339.
 Fyrthe, *v.* spare, 3370.
 Fyrthe, *s.* wood, forest, 1409, 1850, 1875, 1897, 2159.
 Fysnamye, 1114, Fyssnamy, 3331, *s.* physiognomy, face.
 Gaddes, 3621, Gaddys, 3683, *s.* *pl.* goads, pricks.
 Gaderide, *p.p.* gathered, 3295; *pret.* gadyrede, 594.
 Gadlynges, 2443, 2728, Gadlyngez, 2854, Gedlynges, 2884, *s.* *pl.* fellows, worthless fellows.
 "So is mony gedelyng,
 godlyche on horse,
 and is peyh lutel wurp;
 wlonk bi þe glede,
 and vuel at pare neode."
The Proverbs of Alfred, Jesus
 Coll. MS. 29, leaf 264.
 A.S. *gædeling*, companion.
 Gafe, *v.* *pret.* gave, 2628, gavest, 1018; gaffe, gave, 85.
 Galaye, *s.* galley, 3724; *pl.* galays, 3096.
 Galede, *v.* *pret.* sang, 927. A.S. *galan*.
 Galte, *s.* swine, 1101.
 Galyarde, *adj.* gay, 721, 1265, 1279. Fr. *gaillard*.
 Gamene, *s.* game, sport, 2811; *pl.* gamnes, 1730, 3174.
 Ganggyng, *s.* going, 706.
 Gardwynes, *s.* *pl.* guerdons, rewards, 1729.
 Garette, *s.* watch-tower, 562, 3104.
 "þe garettes oboven þe yhates
 bryght
 Of þe ceté of heven, I lyken þus
 ryght,
 Tylle þe garettes of a ceté of gold,
 þat wroght war, als I before told,
 Of fyne curalle and rych rubys,
 And of other stanes of gret
 prys, . . ." *Hampole's Pricke
 of Conscience*, ll. 9101-9106.
 Garneschit, 722, Garneschit, 563, 1000, *p.p.* garnished, furnished.
 Garnisone, 3105, Garnysone, 2471, 2655, Garysone, 3007, *s.* garrison.
 Garte. *See* Gere.
 Gas. *See* Goo.
 Gate, *s.* going, 4144, road, 4308.
 Gayliche, Gaylyche, *adv.* gaily, 913, 2655, 3462, 3684.
 Gayne, *v.* avail, 165; 3 *s.* gaynes, 4303; *pl.* gaynez, 1731.
 Gayneste, *adj.* nearest, 487, 1041, 3006.
 Gayspande, *i. p.* gasping, 1462.
 Geant, 3410, Geante, 2889, Gy-aunt, 1122, 1222, *s.* giant; *pl.* geauntez, 375, gyawntis, 2908.
 Gedlynges. *See* Gadlynges.
 Gedyre, *v.* gather, 592.
 Gemows, *s.* *pl.* hinges, 2893.
 "Gymowe of a speryng. *Vertinella, gemella.*" *Promptorium Parvulorum*. *See* Way's notes on this word.
 Genatours, *s.* *pl.* riders on jennets, light horsemen, 2897. "Génetaire, genesteur, génete, génitaire: Sorte de cavalier, suivant Philippe de Commines." "Genitaires: Cavalerie légère." *Roquefort*.
 Gentille, *adj.* gentle, well-born, &c., 987, 1161, 2088; *superl.* gentil-este, 862.

- Genyuers, *s. pl.* (?) 375.
- Gere, *v.* make, cause, 3640; 3 *s.* gers, 3572, 3921; *pret.* garte, 1386, 3709, gerte, 1780, 1946, 1975; gerte kepe hym = caused him to be kept.
- Gere, *s.* gear, tackle, 2539, 3008.
- Gerefawcone, *s.* gerfalcon, 4004.
- Gers. *See* Gere, *v.*
- Gersoms, *s. pl.* treasures, 165, 1729.
- Gerte. *See* Gere, *v.*
- Gessenande, (?) 2521.
- Gesserawnte, 2892, Jesseraunt, 904, Jesserawnte, 4238; *s.* coat of jazeran; *pl.* gesserawntes, 2909. "Jazeran. Particular kind of armour, so called from the Italian ghiazerino, being made of overlapping plates of iron rivetted on canvass covered with velvet, red, black, or blue, and ornamented externally with brass studs." *Meyrick, Glossary of Military Terms.* "Jaserant, jazerant, . . . cotte de petites mailles." *Burguy.*
- Gestes, *s. pl.* stories, 2876.
- Gettlesse, *adj.* without getting anything, 2727.
- Getyne, *p.p.* gotten, 886.
- Ghywes, *s. pl.* gyves, fetters, 3621.
- Gife, 2630, Giffe, 2632, *conj.* if.
- Gife, 1179, Giff, 1060, Giffe, 2321, *v.* give; *p.p.* gifene, 1729.
- Girde, *v.* smite, 3709; 3 *s.* girdez, 1792, gyrdes, 1370, gyrdez, 1470, gyrdis, 2563; *pret.* gyrd, 2971; *p.p.* girde, 3938.
- Girdille, Girdylle, *s.* girdle, 3458, 3923.
- Girse, *s.* grass, 3944.
- Gladchipe, *s.* gladness, 59, 928.
- Gladdez, 2883, Gladdis, 2852, *v.* 3 *s.* gladdens, encourages; *pl.* glad-dene, 928.
- Glade, *adj.* glad, 1386.
- Glade. *See* Glydez.
- Glauerande, *i. p.* talking foolishly, 2538.
- Glayfe, *s.* 3761. "Glaiice. A weapon composed of a long cutting blade at the end of a staff. . . ." *Meyrick, Glossary of Military Terms.*
- Gledys, *s. pl.* sparks, live coals, 117.
- Glent, *s.* stroke, 3863.
- Glentes, 4244, Glentis, 2563, Glentys, 2780, *v.* 3 *s.* glances, glides.
- Gleterande, *i. p.* glittering, 595, 1280, 2853.
- Gliftis, 3949, Glyftes, 2525, *v.* 3 *s.* looks.
- Gloppynyng, *s.* fright, amazement, 3863.
- Glopyne, *v.* terrify, 2580, be terror-struck, 3 *s.* glopyns, 3949; *pret.* glopmede, 1074; *imp. pl.* 2. glop-pyns, 2853; *i. p.* gloppynnande, 4329.
- Glorede, *v. pret.* stared, 1074.
- Glotione, *s.* glutton, 1074.
- Glydez, *v.* 3 *s.* glides, 1371; *pret.* glade, 2972; *i. p.* glydande, 799.
- Glyftes. *See* Gliftis.
- Gobbede, *adj.* full of gab or derision, 1346. *Sc. gabbed*, loquacious.
- Gobelets, *s. pl.* glove-ornaments of some kind, perhaps little cups, 913. Compare *Gobelot de gland* = acorn-cup. (*Roquefort.*)
- Gobone, *v.* (?) 4164.
- Gode, *adj.* good, 3476.
- Gole, *s.* 3725. "A ditch or small stream." *Halliwell.*
- Golet, *s.* gullet, 1772.
- Gome, 85, 1209, Gume, 3409, *s.* man; *pl.* gomes, 1461, gomys, 3683, 3684. A.S. *guma.*

- Goo, *v.* go, 213, 1279; 3 *s.* gas, 3006, gos, 3727, gosse, 3104; *pl.* gosse, 497; *imp.* 2 *pl.* gose, 1266.
- Gorge, *s.* throat, 3760.
- Gorgere, *s.* gorget, piece of armour for the throat, 1772.
- Gorre, *s.* gore, 1130, 1370.
- Gos, Gose. *See* Goo.
- Gosesomere, *s.* gossamer, 2687.
- Gosse. *See* Goo.
- Gossehawke, *s.* goshawk, 4001.
- Gouernour, *s.* 1201.
- Gowces. *Read* Gowtes, drops, spots, 3759.
- Gowke, *s.* cuckoo, 927. A.S. *geac.*
- Gowles, 3646, 3759, Gowlles, 3945, *s.* gules (Her.).
- Gracious, *adj.* 187.
- Grame, *s.* anger, 1077, 3008. A.S. *grama.*
- Granes, *v.* groans, 2562.
- Grape, *v.* grope, search, 2725.
- Grassede, *p.p.* fattened, fat, 1091.
- Graue, *p.p.* engraved, 3462.
- Graunt, 2820, Graunted, 1202, *p.p.* granted.
- Grayhondes. *See* Grehownde.
- Graynes, *s.* *pl.* 913, 3463.
- Graythe, *v.* make ready, prepare, equip, 1279, convey, 4303, proceed, hasten, go, 1266; 3 *s.* graythes, goes, 1353, 1384, 3761; *p.p.* graythede, equipped, 589, 602, graythide, 373.
- Graythelyche, 722, Graythely, 1369, 1384, 1387, Graythly, 1000, *adv.* readily, speedily.
- Graytheste, *adj.* readiest, promptest, 1201.
- Gre, 2748, Gree, 1936, 2645, *s.* will, pleasure.
- Gree, *s.* (degree) ascendancy, 3706, 4298.
- Grees, *s.* grease time, the time when deer are fat and fit for killing, 658. *See* Grease in Halliwell.
- Greesse-growene, *adj.* grown over with fat, 1101.
- Grefe, 1077, Greefe, 1471, 2562, Grefe, 3007, 4324, *s.* grief, anger, vexation, pain, sorrow.
- Grefe, *v.* grieve, 705; *p.p.* grefede, hurt, 1282, grefede, 1463. *See* Greue.
- Grefes. *See* Greue, *s.*
- Grehownde, 3464, Grewhounde, 1075, Grewhownde, 4001, *s.* grayhound; *pl.* grewhoundez, 1730, grayhondes, 2521.
- Grekkes, *adj.* Greek, 594.
- Grene, *adj.* green, 1266, 1281.
- Grenede, *v. pret.* grinned, showed his teeth, 1075.
- Gresse, *s.* grass, 1131.
- Gret, 256, Grete, 207, Grett, 1, 165, Grette, 539, *adj.* great; *comp.* gretter, 3243; *superl.* gretteste, 1469.
- Grete, *v.* greet, 1282; 3 *s.* gretez, 1077; *pl.* gretes, 1233; *pret.* grette, 84, 3476.
- Grete, *v.* weep; 3 *s.* gretes, 2962; *pret.* grette, 3790; *i. p.* gretand, 951, 3912.
- Gretez, *v.* 1774. Qu. gredez, calls.
- Greue, *s.* grove, 2540; *pl.* greues, 1874, greuez, 927, grefes, 2881.
- Greue, *v.* grieve, vex, annoy; *pret.* greuyde, was vexed, 1352; *p.p.* greuede, 134, 266, 1173, greuyde, 1022.
- Grewhounde, Grewhownde. *See* Grehownde.
- Gripe, *v.* seize, gripe, grasp, 3008; 3 *s.* grypes, 1163, 2526, gryppes, 1369.
- Grisely, 3105, Grylsly, 1075, Gry-sely, 951, Gryeslye, 1469, Gry[s]-lych, 1101, *adj.* horrible, grisly.

- Grisely, 1462, 3950, Grysely, 3912, Gryselyche, 1373, *adv.* horribly.
- Groffe, 3850, Grouffe, 3944, Growffe, 3869, *s.* On *g.* = flat, sprawling.
- Grome, *s.* groom, 2526, 3489.
- Gronande, *i. p.* groaning, 1373, 3938.
- Grouche. *See* Gruche.
- Grouffe. *See* Groffe.
- Groundene, 1371, 2972, Grown-dene, 1281, Grundyne, 1461, *p.p.* ground, sharpened.
- Growffe. *See* Groffe.
- Growndene. *See* Groundene.
- Gruche, 706, 2644, Grouche, 2819, *v.* be dissatisfied, grudge; *pret.* grychgide, 2557; *i. p.* grucchande, 1076, 1353, 1462.
- Grundyne. *See* Groundene.
- Grychgide. *See* Gruche.
- Gryeslye. *See* Grisely.
- Gryffoune, *s.* griffin, 3869.
- Grygyngge, *s.* (graying) dawn, 2510.
- Grylych, 1101. *Read* Gryslych, and *see* Grisely.
- Gryme, *adj.* grim, 3621, 3760; *superl.* grymmeste, 3419.
- Grymly, *adv.* grimly, fiercely, 1471, 2558, 3813.
- Grypes, Gryppes. *See* Gripe.
- Grysely, Gryselyche, Grysly. *See* Grisely.
- Guchede. *Read* Guthede = gouted, goutté, bedropped, spotted, 3937.
- Gud, 2851, 2853, Gude, 559, 563, *adj.* good.
- Gudes, 295, Gudez, 1213, 1249, *s. pl.* goods.
- Gudly, *adv.* well, 677, 3005.
- Gumbaldes, *s. pl.* (?) dainties, 187.
- Gume. *See* Gome.
- Guschez, *v. pl.* gush, 1130.
- Guttes, 1130, Guttez, 1370, *s. pl.* guts.
- Guyte, *s.* child, 2963. *See* *Get* and *Gyte* in Jamieson.
- Gwerdones, 4277, Gwerddouns, 2820, *s. pl.* guerdons, rewards.
- Gyaunt, Gyawntis. *See* Geant.
- Gydes, *v.* 3 *s.* guides, 3005.
- Gydes, *s. pl.* guides, 3006.
- Gye, *v.* guide, 4; *pret.* gyede, 3860.
- Gyf, 3058, Gyfe, 1598, Gyffe, 4, *v.* give; 3 *s.* gyffes, 1774; *p.p.* gyfene, 4277, gyffene, 1202; gyffes = makes account of, 539.
- Gyrd, Gyrdes, &c. *See* Girde.
- Haa, *int.* 133.
- Habite, *s.* dress, 3917.
- Habydes, *v.* 3 *s.* abides, waits for, 596; *pl.* habyddez, remain, 1431.
- Hade. *See* Hafe.
- Hafe, 252, 286, Haffe, 1616, *v.* have; 2 *s.* has, 100, 140, hase, 1805; 3 *s.* has, 846; *pl.* has, 12, 369; *pret.* hade, 26, 52.
- Hailsez, *v.* 3 *s.* greets, salutes, 1058.
- Hakenayes, 484, Hakkenays, 2284, Haknays, 734, *s. pl.* hackneys.
- Halde, *v.* hold, 424; 3 *s.* haldes, 64, haldez, 1135; *pret.* helde, 1196; *p.p.* haldene, 387, 1456.
- Hale, *v.* draw, haul, 748.
- Hale, 1260, 2108, Halle, 2651, *adj.* whole.
- Halely, 764, Hally, 1001, 1085, Holly, 748, *adv.* wholly, entirely.
- Halfe, *s.* half, part, side; *pl.* halves, 1853, halfez, 1979, halues, 1966, 3530.
- Halowes, *v.* 3 *s.* shouts, hollas, 3319.
- Hals, *s.* neck, throat, 764; *pl.* halses, 4120, halsez, 1798.

- Haly, 297, 309, Holy, 348, *adj.*
 Hame-holde, *adj.* domestic, 1843.
 See *Hamald* in Jamieson.
 Hanche, 1100, 1119, Haunche,
 1157, *s.* haunch.
 Handez, *s. pl.* hands, 1137.
 Handilez, *v. pl.* handle, feel, 1156.
 Handsomere, *adj. comp.* more
 handy, 2128.
 Hannde-brede, *s.* handbreadth,
 2229.
 Hansemene, *s.* henchman, page,
 2662; *pl.* hansemene, 2743. See
Henseman in Jamieson.
 Hape, 1937, Happe, 2446, *s.* hap.
 Happe, *v.* have good fortune, suc-
 ceed, 2630.
 Happene, *v.* 1269, obtain, 3433;
p.p. hapnede, happened, 1154, 3304.
 Happy, *adj.* fortunate, 1741, 2974.
 Happyng, *s.* good fortune, suc-
 cess, 3958.
 Harageous, *adj.* 1645, 1742, 1834,
 2248, violent, stormy. (Wright.)
 Harawde, 2294, 3029, Hawrawde,
 3013, *s.* herald.
 Harbergage, *s.* quarters, 2475.
 Hardare, *adj. comp.* harder, 4194.
 Harde. See *Here, v.*
 Hardly, *adv.* closely, 1084.
 Hardynes, *s.* boldness, courage,
 3959.
 Hare, *s.* hair, 1001.
 Hare, *s.* 2504.
 Harlotte, *s.* ribald, rascal, low
 fellow, 2446; *pl.* harlottez, 2743.
 Not used in the modern sense.
 Harnes, 2437, Harnes, 1842, *v.*
 3 *s.* harms.
 Harnayse, *s.* armour, 2629.
 Harrawnte, *v.* (?) 2449.
 Harske, *adj.* harsh, hard, 1084.
 Has, Hase. See *Hafe.*
- Hastyly, *adv.* hastily, quickly,
 167.
 Hathelle, *adj.* noble, 358, 1659,
 1662; *superl.* hathelest, 988, ha-
 theleste, 2109.
 Hawberke, *s.* hauberk, coat of
 mail, 1156, 2078, 2552. Ger.
halsberg.
 Hawe, *s.* (?) 3704.
 Hawle, *s.* hall, 3879.
 Hawrawde. See *Harawde.*
 Hawtayne, *adj.* haughty, 1058,
 2612, 2910.
 Hawtayne, (?) 3029.
 Haylede, *v. pret.* projected, 2077.
 Haythemene, *s. pl.* (?) heathen
 men, 2295.
 Haythene, 1260, 2274, Hathene,
 1284, Heythene, 2285, 3642, He-
 thene, 1834, *adj.* heathen.
 Hedde, *v.* behead, 2311.
 Heddys-mene, *s. pl.* headmen,
 chief men, 281.
 Hede. See *Heuede.*
 Hede-rapys, *s. pl.* head-ropes,
 3668.
 Hedire, *adv.* hither, 2614.
 Hedlyngs, *adv.* headlong, 3829.
 Hedoyne, *s.* (?) 184.
 Hedyrwarde, *adv.* hitherward, this
 way, 25.
 Hedys. See *Heuede.*
 Heghe = heth, heath, 2476.
 Heghe, 158, 167, 499, Heyghe,
 3471, Hey, 3467, 3485, Hye, 39,
 58, Hyghe, 3014, *adj.* high; *superl.*
 hegheste, 3369.
 Heghe, 1261, 1832, Hye, 194,
 1119, *adv.* high.
 Heghe, *s.* high place, height, 1146.
 Heghely, *adv.* hastily, 2294.
 Heghte = aughte, *adj.* eight,
 2830.
 Heghte = heth, *s.* heath, 2295.

- Heghte, 1157, 2613, Highte, 3626, *s.* height; *pl.* heghttez, 798.
 Hekes, *s. pl.* horses, 2284.
 Heldede, *v. pret.* bowed down, inclined, 3368.
 Hele, *s.* health, prosperity, 2630, 3958.
 Hele, *v.* hide, conceal, 3286; *pret.* hillid, 1120; *p.p.* hillyd, 3606.
 Hele, *v.* heal, be healed, recover, 3688; 3 *s.* heles, 2209; *pret.* helyde, 1825; *p.p.* helyd, 3030.
 Helme, *s.* helmet, 1832; *pl.* helmes, 380, 730, hellmes, 2551.
 Helmede, *adj.* having helmets, 1647, 3626.
 Helpene, *v. inf.* help, 1646; *p.p.* holpene, 2631, 2661.
 Helych, *adv.* loudly, 1286.
 Hemmes, 1359, 1648, Hemmys, 2219, *s. pl.* borders.
 Hende, *adj.* courteous, 167, 1135, 1283.
 Hente, *v.* seize, take, receive; 3 *s.* hentez, 1132, hentes, 2917; *pret.* hente, 2973; *p.p.* hente, 1842, 3319.
 Herbariours, *s. pl.* harbingers, men who went forward to find places for others, 2448.
 Herberde, *p.p.* harboured, lodged, 153, 166, 2650.
 Herbergage, *s.* lodgings, quarters, 1285, 2285.
 Here, *v.* hear, 12; *pret.* herde, 1285, harde.
 Herede, *adj.* haired, 1083.
 Heretyke, *s.* heretic, 1307.
 Herkene, *v.* hearken, 1646, 3899; *imp. 2 pl.* herkenes, 25, herkynes, 15.
 Herne-pane, *s.* brain-pan, skull, 2229.
 Herte, *s.* heart, 251, 262.
 Herte, *v.* take courage, 1181.
 Hertelyche, 2551, Hertly, 1835, *adj.* severe.
 Hertly, 3642, Hertely, 2991, *adv.* heartily, severely.
 Heslyne, *adj.* of hazel, 2504.
 Heste, *s.* command, 2294, 3368, 4307.
 Hetches, *s. pl.* hatches, 3682.
 Hete, 2127, 3030, Hette, 2631, 3369, *v.* promise, assure.
 Hethe, 1834, 2308, Heghe, 2476, Heghte, 2295, Heyghe, 2651, *s.* heath.
 Hethely, *adv.* scornfully, 268.
 Hethynge, *s.* scorn, 1843.
 Hette. *See* Hete.
 Heuande, *i. p.* rising, 3704.
 Heuede, 262, 1178, 1354, *s.* head; chief, 1344; *pl.* hedys.
 Heuedede, *p.p.* beheaded, 463.
 Heuen, *v.* raise, 1937. *See* *Heuen* in the Glossary to *Alliterative Poems*, ed. Morris.
 Heuene, 1167, 1261, Hewene, 705, Hewyne, 2184, *s.* heaven.
 Hewe, *s.* hue, colour, 207, 768, 2524.
 Hewede, *adj.* coloured, 3252.
 Hewene, *v. pl.* hew, 1860; *p.p.* hewene, 1825, 2663.
 Hewys, *v.* 3 *s.* raises, 4156; *p.p.* hewede, 4091.
 Hey, *adj.* *See* Heghe.
 Hey, *s.* *See* Hye.
 Heyghe, *adj.* *See* Heghe.
 Heyghe, *s.* *See* Hethe.
 Heyly, *adv.* quickly, 464, 2663, 2920.
 Heyndly, *adv.* courteously, 15.
 Heynne, *adv.* hence, 2436.
 Heynzous, *adj.* heinous, 268.
 Heythene. *See* Haythene.
 Highte, *p.p.* called, named, 2899.
 Hillid, Hillyd. *See* Hele, *v.*

- Hilte, *s.* hilt, handle of a sword, 1121; *pl.* hiltes, 2239, hiltez, 1056, 1149.
- Hiltede, *adj.* 2274, 2911.
- Hir, 84, 980, Hire, 956, *pron.* her.
- Hirste, *s.* wood, forest, 3369.
- Hittez, *v.* 3 *s.* hits, 1112, 1125, 1149.
- Hode, *s.* hood, 3459.
- Hodles, *adj.* hoodless, bareheaded, 2308.
- Holdene, *v.* *pl.* hold, 4128; *p.p.* holdene, 1579, holdyne, 40, 166.
- Hole, *adj.* hollow, 1083.
- Hole, 1647, 2661, Holle, 3687, 4128, *adj.* whole, all. *See* Hale.
- Holly, *adv.* wholly, entirely, 748, 3368, 3590.
- Holpene. *See* Helpene.
- Holte, *s.* wood, 1283, 1645; *pl.* holtez, 1259.
- Hom, *adv.* home, 3014.
- Homager, *s.* one who does homage, 3147.
- Hondene, *v.* (?) serve with hands, 3209.
- Hondrethe, 844, Howndrethe, 2108, Hundrethe, 930, *s.* hundred; *pl.* hundrethes, 281, hunndrethez, 1879.
- Honeste, *adj.* honourable, good, 3245.
- Honnde, *s.* hand, 1807; *pl.* hondes, 2255, hondez, 1114.
- Honourliche, *adj.* honourable, 2298.
- Hope, *v.* suppose, 2209.
- Hopes, *s.* *pl.* (?) 2503.
- Horde, *s.* treasure; *pl.* hordes, 3145.
- Hore, *adj.* hoar, hoary, 1082.
- Hornez, *s.* *pl.* horns, 1286.
- Horsse, *s.* 463; *pl.* horsez, 734, horsesys, 3721.
- Horsede, 1179, Horsesede, 2944, Horsesyde, 1647, *adj.* horsed, mounted.
- Hostaye, *v.* lead a host, or make war, 555.
- Hotchene, *v.* *pl.* hack, chop, 3687.
- Houe, Hufe, 1688, *v.* tarry; 3 *s.* houys, 915, howes, 2010, hufes, 1260; *pl.* houez, 1283, houys, 377, 2118; *pret.* houede, 2031; *i. p.* houande, 1648.
- Hoursches, *v.* *pl.* (?) rush, 2110.
- House, *v.* dwell, 4284.
- Howes. *See* Houe.
- Howge. *See* Hüge.
- Howndrethe. *See* Hondrethe.
- Howntes, *v.* *pl.* hunt, 4258.
- Howselde, *p.p.* houseled; be h. = receive the housel, or consecrated host, 4315.
- Howsyngge, *s.* dwellings, quarters, 1284, 2285.
- Hufe. *See* Houe.
- Hüge, 1086, Hugge, 583, 1634, Howge, 2339, *adj.* huge.
- Hukes, *s.* *pl.* 734. Miswritten for *hakes*, or *hekes*, horses.
- Huke-nebbyde, *adj.* hooknosed, 1082.
- Hulke, *s.* a great awkward fellow, 1058, 1085, 1121, 1149.
- Hunde-fisch, *s.* houndfish, 1084.
- Hundrethe, Hunndrethez. *See* Hondrethe.
- Hurdace, *s.* fence, palisade, barrier, 3626.
- Hurdez, *v.* 3 *s.* (?) lurks, 1010.
- Hurles, *v.* 2 *s.* rushest, 262.
- Hurtez, *v.* 3 *s.* thrusts, 1772.
- Hy. *See* Hye.
- Hyde, *s.* skin, 1157.
- Hydede, *p.p.* hided, skinned, covered, 1001.

- Hye. *See* Heghe.
 Hye, 463, 2108, Hy, 2109, Hey, 166, *s. haste*.
 Hye, *v. hasten*, 1645.
 Hyely, *adv. hastily*, quickly, (*or perhaps*) loudly, 1058.
 Hyene, *adv. hence*, 2582, 2744.
 Hyled, *p.p. hidden*, 184. *See* Hele.
 Hyme, *pron. him*, 1133, 1134.
 Hymlande, (?) 2503.
 Hyndire, *s. hindpart*, 3626.
 Hynge, *v. hang*; 3 *s. hynnges*, 3473; *pret. hyngede*, 281; *i. p. hyn-gande*, 1083; *p.p. hyaggyde*, 3590.
 Hynter, *s. hindpart*, 3605.
 Hyrdez, *s. pl. shepherds*, 3245.
 Hyre, *pron. her*, 854.
 Hytteez, *v. 3 s. hits*, 1122, 1387.

 Iche. *See* Ilke.
 Iche, *v. sally forth*, rush out, 1412. O. Fr. *issir*.
 Idene, (?) 3061.
 Ife = if, 420, 2438.
 Ile, *s. isle*, 4309; *pl. ilez*, 575, *illes*, 2359.
 Ilkane, 279, Ilkone, 3691, *pron. each one, each*.
 Ilke, *adj. same*, 65, 232, 1311. A.S. *ilc*.
 Ilke, 1006, 1093, Ylke, 2460, 2480, Iche, 589, 1004, Yche, *adj. each*. Often followed by *a*: ilke a, 83, 194, iche a, 2144, 3062, yche a, 3634.
 Illes. *See* Ile.
 Imangez, *prep. amongst*, 3169.
 In-come, *s. coming in*, 2009, 2171.
 Ine = in, 1797.
 Inewe. *See* Inowe.
 Inglisce, *s. English*, 2529.
 Inns, *s. pl. dwellings*, 3041.
 Inowe, 3095, Inewe, 3161, Ynowe, 1626, Ynewe, 1360, 1970, *adv. enough*.
 Irene, 1186, Iryne, 2104, Yryne, 1182, *s. iron*.
 Iresche, 3934, Irische, 4123, 4161, *adj. Irish*.
 Irous, 1329, Irows, 1592, Irus, 1957, *adj. wrathful*.
 Irouslye, *adv. wrathfully*, 2530.
 Ischewe, *s. issue*, 1943.
 Isschewis, *v. 3 s. issues*, 4060; *pl. ischewis*, 3116.
 I-wis, 3339, I-wys, 2020, 2332, 2828, I-wysse, 322, 546, 2685, *adv. certainly*.
 Jaggede, *v. pret. jagged, chopped*, 1123, 2087; *p.p. 905, 2909*.
 Jambe, 2894, Jamby, 373, *adj. active, nimble*; lit. leggy, from Fr. *jambe*, leg.
 Japez, *s. pl. tricks*, 1398.
 Jentille, Jentylle, *adj. gentle*, 115, 904, 3411.
 Jerodyne, *s. (?) 905*.
 Jerownde, *adj. gyronny* (Her.), 2891.
 Jeryne, *s. (?) 903*.
 Jesseraunt, Jesserawnte. *See* Gesserawnte.
 Jocunde, *adj. 2896*.
 Jogges, *v. 3 s. jogs, thrusts*, 2891, 2893.
 Jolily, Jolyly, *adv. gaily, handsomely*, 245, 373, 2088, 4109.
 Joly, *adj. gay, trim, handsome*, jolly, 3414; *comp. jolyere*, 4110; *superl. jolyeste*, 1658.
 Jonede, *p.p. joined*, 2890.
 Jopowne, 4238, Jupone, 905, *s. jupon*.
 Jorné, 3411, Journé, 2875, Journee, 340, 372, 825, Jurnee, 2894, *s. a day's travel, a day's fight, a day's work*.

- Jowelle, *s.* jewel, 862.
 Joye, *s.* 1161.
 Joyes, *v.* 3 *s.* rejoices, 2896.
 Joynenyge, *s.* joining, encounter, 2133.
 Joynez, *v.* *pl.* join, 2112.
 Joynter, *s.* joint, 2893.
 Juggede, *p.p.* judged, 2877.
 Juggez, *s.* *pl.* judges, 246.
 Jumette, *s.* 1122. *Read* Inmette, *s.* intestines. *See* *Inmeats* in *Jamieson*.
 Juny, *s.* June, 345.
 Jupone. *See* Jopowne.
 Jurnee. *See* Jorné.
 Just, *adv.* 1123.
 Justere, *s.* jouter, 3412.
 Justyfy, *v.* execute justice upon, punish, 663.
 Justynge, *s.* jousting, 1657, 2875.
- Kabane. *See* Cabane.
 Kaghte. *See* Cachene.
 Kaire. *See* Cayre.
 Kalander, *s.* calendar, roll, 2640.
 Kalendez, *s.* *pl.* calends, 2371.
 Kambe, *s.* comb, 3351.
 Kampe, *s.* fight, 3670, 3701.
 Kane, *v.* can, 2750.
 Karede, *v.* *pret.* 2882. *See* Cayre.
 Kare. *See* Care.
 Karfuke, *s.* place where four roads meet, 2003. A well-known cross-road at Oxford is called *Carfax*. *See* *Carfoukes* in the *Romans of Partenay*, ed. Skeat, also a note in *Notes and Queries*, Series III, vol. x. p. 184. O. Fr. *carrefour*.
 Kariede, 1887, Karyed, 4010, *v.* *pret.* carried.
 Karpe. *See* Carpe.
 Karyage, *s.* baggage, luggage, 2282.
- Kaughte. *See* Cachene.
 Kaunt, *adj.* stout, bold, 2195.
 Kay, 3111, Keye, 1867, *s.* key; *pl.* kayes, 3064.
 Kayere, Kayre. *See* Cayre.
 Kaysere, *s.* emperor, 1651, 1959; *pl.* kayseres, 1894, kaysers, 2391.
 Kele, *v.* cool, 1839; *pret.* keled, 2712.
 Kelle, *s.* caul, net (which ladies wore over their hair), 3258.
 Kembede, *v.* *pret.* combed, 3351.
 Kempe, *s.* warrior; *pl.* kempis, 1003. A.S. *cempa*.
 Kempe, *v.* fight, 2633.
 Kene, *v.* tell, 2619, 3521, show, 876; *pret.* kende, 481, 2194, kend, handed over, 1590.
 Kene, *adj.* keen, sharp, 47, 1106, bold, 641, 1152, 1725, 1785, fierce, 3669; *comp.* kenere, 4194; *superl.* keneste, 2721, 3490.
 Kenely, 935, 1243, 1271, Kenly, 943, *adv.* sharply, boldly.
 Kenetez, *s.* *pl.* kennets, small hounds, 122.
 Kepare, *s.* keeper, 3512.
 Kepe, *s.* care, heed, attention, 156, 1682, 1746.
 Kepe, *v.* keep, 1138, 1780, wait, watch, 2003, heed, regard, care, 2398, 3522, 4021; *imp.* 2 *pl.* kepys, await, 623; *pret.* kepede, 919, kepyde, 838, 2263; *p.p.* kepede, 1586, kepide, 998, kepyd, 2171.
 Keppe, *v.* catch, seize, 3484.
 Kepyng, *s.* keeping, 4205.
 Kerfe, *s.* cutting, 4194.
 Kerfes, 4231, Kerues, 2567, *v.* 3 *s.* cuts; *p.p.* coruene, 211, 3335, 3673.
 Keste. *See* Caste.
 Kettle-hatte, *s.* helmet, 3516, 3995; *pl.* kettelle-hattes, 2993.

- Keye. *See* Kay.
 Kidd, 3673, Kydd, 1272, 1390, Kydde, 96, 232, Kyde, 65, 1651, *adj.* celebrated, famous.
 Kirke, 4016, Kyrke, 1219, *s.* church.
 Kithe, 3866, Kythe, 28, 51, 542, Kyghte, 3996, *s.* nation, country.
 Kleuys. *See* Clewes.
 Klokes, *s. pl.* claws, paws, 792.
 Knafe, 2621, Knaffe, 2637, *s.* servant; *pl.* knafes, 2632, knaues, 3484; knaue = male, 850, 1025.
 Knawe, *v.* know, 1003, 1581, 1672, acknowledge, 2637; 3 *s.* knawes, 1317; *pret.* knewe, 2177; *p.p.* knawene, 475, 1654, knowene, 3259.
 Knee, *s.*; *pl.* kneesse, 956, kneys, 4274.
 Knele, *v.* kneel; 3 *s.* knelis, 3951; *pl.* knelis, 3046; *pret.* knelyd, 1199, 2312; *i. p.* kneland, 1137, 4337.
 Knyghte, *s.* 1138; *pl.* knyghttez, 1161.
 Knyghthede, 1320, 1581, 2619, Knyghthode, 1682, 3883, *s.* knight-hood.
 Knyghtly, 2395, Knyghtlyche, 506, 1218, 4083, Knyghttly, 1649, *adj.* knightly.
 Knyghtly, 1707, 1724, Knyghttly, 1692, 1790, *adv.* knightly, like a knight.
 Knylles, *v. pl.* ring, 2353.
 Kombide, *p.p.* combed, 1003.
 Konynge, *s.* cunning, skill, knowledge, 3883.
 Konyngeste, *adj.* most knowing, 3177.
 Kosyne. *See* Cosyne.
 Koueride, *p.p.* covered, 2381.
 Kowardely, *adv.* cowardly, 1923.
 Krafty. *See* Crafty.
 Kraftes, *s. pl.* crafts, 2543.
 Krakede, *v. pret.* cracked, 3269.
 Krayers. *See* Crayers.
 Kreuelleste, Krewelle. *See* Crewelle.
 Krisome, 2636. *See* Crysume.
 Krispane, *i. p.* crisping, 3352.
 Kroke, *s.* crook, curl, 3352. Dan Michel uses the verb *croki*, to curl: "Of pise ydelenesse / ne byeþ nazt quitte þe men þet doþ zuo grat payne ham to kembe and to pouri ine sseaweres and ine hare here wel to *croki* an to bleue be strengþe." — *Ayenbite of Inwytt*, ed. Morris, p. 176. *See* *Havelok the Dane*, ed. Skeat, Preface, p. vii, footnote.
 Krouelle. *See* Crewelle.
 Krysome. *See* Crysume.
 Krysomede. *See* Crysmede.
 Kwne, *v.* can, know, 1565; kwne thanke = return thanks.
 Kydd, Kydde, Kyde. *See* Kidd.
 Kyghte. *See* Kithe.
 Kynde, *s.* nature, kind, 125, 2385, 3049, race, 3867.
 Kyndly, *adj.* natural, proper, good, 3883, 4188.
 Kyndlyche, 714, Kyndly, 2712, Kyndely, 3521, *adv.* naturally, kindly.
 Kyne, *s.* kin, 2618.
 Kyngryke, *s.* kingdom, realm, 24, 1272; *pl.* kyngrykes, 649, kyngrykez, 820.
 Kynredene, *s.* kindred, 2604.
 Kynsemane, 3898, Kynyse-mane, 1778, *s.* kinsman.
 Kyrke. *See* Kirke.
 Kyrnelles, *s. pl.* battlements, 3046.
 Kyrtille, 998, Kyrtylle, 1024, 1191, *s.* kirtle.
 Kyste, *s.* chest; *pl.* kystys, 2302, 2336, kystis, 2342, 2355.
 Kythe. *See* Kithe.
 Kythe, *v.* show, 1652, 4193.

- Lacchene, 750, Lachene, 2541, *v. pl.* catch, take; *pret.* laghte, 2693, 2702, laughte, 2226, 2292, lached, 1515; *p.p.* laghte, 874, laughte, 1817, 1828, 1902.
- Ladde, *s.* lad, 4302.
- Lade-sterne, *s.* loadstar, the polar star, 751.
- Ladily, *adj.* ladylike, 3254.
- Ladyse, *s. pl.* ladies, 3081.
- Laggene, *v. pl.* (?) get ready, 2542.
- Laghte. *See* Lacchene.
- Laghtirs, *s. pl.* laughters, 2673.
- Lake, *s.* lack, 163.
- Lakes, *s. pl.* lakes, pools, 960, 2149.
- Lamede, *v. pret.* lamed, disabled, 4302; *p.p.* 3281.
- Langage, *s.* language, speech, 3477.
- Lange, *adj.* long, 1103, 1269; one lange = along, 1045, 2703.
- Lange, *adv.* long, 863, 1200; *comp.* langere, 550, 587, lengere, 736, 889.
- Lange, *v.* belong; 3 *s.* langes, 402, lengez, 2082; *pl.* langez, 1244, langys, 244, lengez, 1410, 1479; *pret.* lengede, 1492, 2221.
- Lannges, *v.* 3 *s.* longs, 383.
- Langoure, *s.* languor, 4268.
- Languessande, *i. p.* languishing, 4338.
- Lappe, *s.* lappet, 3254, rag, 3286.
- Lappe, *v.* wrap, fold, enclose, 3292; *pret.* lappede, 2300.
- Lapyngge, *s.* lapping, 3235.
- Large, *adv.* wide, away, 1040, deep, 1120, greatly, freely, 1376.
- Largesce, *s.* liberality, bounty, 163.
- Lasschene, *v. pl.* lash, smite, 2801.
- Lat, 3639, Late, 420, 1189, Latt, 4001, Latte, 398, 1139, 1321, *v.* let; 3 *s.* lattes, lets go, dismisses, disperses, 1819; *pret.* lete, 3886.
- Lates, 118, 248, 536, 2054, Latez, 1076, *s. pl.* features.
- Lathe, *s.* (?) displeasure, 458.
- Latheliche, 3279, Laytholy, 4302, *adj.* loathly, ugly, hateful.
- Latte, Lattes. *See* Lat.
- Laughene, *v. pl.* laugh, 3698; *pret.* lughe, 248.
- Laughte. *See* Lacchene.
- Launce, *s.* lance, spear, 1379; *pl.* launcez, 1459, 1754, lawnces, 2462.
- Launches, *v.* 3 *s.* leaps, springs, 2560; *pret.* launschide, 194.
- Launchez, *v. pl.* launch, throw out (?), 750.
- Launde, 1517, Lawnde, 2084, *s.* plain, lawn.
- Laundone, *s.* (?) field, 1768. "Landon; . . . petite lande, pâturage; terres remplies de broussailles." *Roquefort.*
- Lawe, *adj.* low, 154, 3720; *superl.* laweste, 2431; on lawe = down, 2281.
- Lawe, *adv.* low, 1270.
- Lawnches, *v.* 3 *s.* cuts, 3831.
- Lawnde. *See* Launde.
- Laye, *s.* (?) 3721.
- Laye, *s.* law, religion, 2593.
- Layere, *s.* lair, camp, 2293.
- Layke, *s.* game, 1599, 3386, 4093.
- Layne, *v.* conceal, 419, 2398, 2593.
- Laysere, *s.* leisure, 2430, 3095.
- Laythely. *See* Latheliche.
- Layttede, *v. pret.* (?) 254.
- Leberalle, *adj.* liberal, 2318.
- Leburde, *s.* lee-board, 3624.
- Leche, *s.* jelly, 194.
- Lechene, *v.* heal, 2388.

- Lechylde, *p.p.* cut into slices, 188.
 Lede, *s.* nation, man, person, 138, 430, 997; *pl.* ledes, 195, 1902, ledys, 2801.
 Lede, *s.* lead, 750, 2300, 3954.
 Lede, 1268, Leede, 154, *v.* lead, treat; *pl.* ledes, 303; *pret.* ledde, 1515, lede, 3380; *p.p.* lede, 1827, 1903.
 Ledyng, *s.* rule, 3536, conduct, 3880.
 Lee, *s.* shelter, 1446.
 Leefe, 2479, 3093, Lefe, 1035, 1335, Leue, 350, *adj.* dear, lief; *comp.* leuer, 872, 1344, 1573.
 Leefe, 3432, Lefe, 72, 429, Leue, 2082, *s.* leave, permission.
 Lefe, *v.* leave, 1340; *pl.* leues, remain; *pret.* lefte, 1516; *p.p.* lefede, 1397, leuede, 848, 978, leuyde, 394, 1900, 2208.
 Lefulle, *adj.* allowable, lawful, 130.
 Lege, 1901, Liege, 1200, Lige, 1768, 3080, Ligge, 2221, 2389, Lygge, 1518, *adj.* liege.
 Legyaunce, *s.* allegiance, 2594.
 Lele, *adj.* leal, honest, faithful, true, 14, 420, 647.
 Lelely, 672, 2328, Lelly, 1102, Lely, 3084, *adv.* faithfully, honestly, truly.
 Lemande, *i. p.* shining, gleaming, 2462, 2463, 2672.
 Lemete, *p.p.* limited, 457.
 Lenand. *See* Lene.
 Lende, *v.* abide, 1970.
 Lendez, *s.* *pl.* loins, 1047.
 Lene, *v.* lean; *pret.* lenede, 2703; *i. p.* lenand, 1045, 2672.
 Lenge, *v.* abide, remain, dwell, 72, 123, 152; 3 *s.* lengez, 129; *inf.* lengene, 1588.
 Lengede, Lengez. *See* Lange, *v.*
 Lengere, 736, 889, 1055, Lengare, 2154, *adv.* longer.
 Lenghe, *s.* length, 1102, 1126.
 Lenghene, *v.* lengthen, 2845.
 Leppe, *v.* leap, 2084; *pl.* leppyne, 3697, lepys, 3696; *pret.* lepe, 3427; *i. p.* leppande, 1460.
 Lere, *v.* teach, 1035.
 Leskes, *s.* *pl.* loins, 1097, 3279.
 Lesse, *conj.* lest, 2300, 2439.
 Lesse, *adj.* false; withowttynas lesse = truly, certainly, 139.
 Lesynge, 3079, Lesynng, 3721, *s.* losing.
 Let. *See* Lette.
 Letande, *i. p.* (?) appearing, 3831.
 Lete. *See* Lat.
 Letherly, *adv.* wickedly, 1268.
 Lett, *v.* cease, desist, 2325.
 Lette, *v.* hinder, prevent, 473, 1269, 1721; *pret.* let, 3720.
 Lette, *s.* hindrance, 92, 458.
 Lettyng, *s.* hindrance, 371.
 Leue. *See* Leefe.
 Leue, *v.* believe, 702, 1097; 2 *s.* leues, 2593.
 Leuenynge, *s.* lightning, 2463.
 Leuere. *See* Leefe.
 Leueré, *s.* delivery; hence, granted or assigned place, 241, livery or uniform; and hence, the different parts of an army, 3078. *See* Livery in Halliwell.
 Leues, *s.* *pl.* leaves, 1708.
 Leuetenaunte, *s.* lieutenant, viceroy, 646.
 Leuez, *v.* 3 *s.* lives, 1731.
 Life, 3723, Liffe, 1036, *v.* live; *pret.* lifede, 3961; *p.p.* lifyde, 252.
 Lifeliche, *adj.* (?) real, actual, 3427.
 Liffe, *s.* life, 430, 1820.
 Lifte, *v.* *pret.* lifted, 3349.
 Lige, Ligge. *See* Lege.
 Liggez. *See* Lygge.

- Lighames. *See* Lyghame.
 Lightly, *adv.* 3287.
 Likez. *See* Lyke.
 Likynge, *s.* pleasure, 130, 3381.
 Lire, 3281, 3954, Lyre, 4272, *s.* face, visage. A.S. *hlcor*.
 Liste, *s.* desire, pleasure, 12.
 Liste, *v. pret.* desired, 4270.
 Lofte; on lofte = aloft, 163, 916, 942; appone lofte = aloft, 2800, 3623.
 Loge, 421, Lugge, 152, 454, *v.* lodge; *pl.* lugegez, 2280; *pret.* luggede, 486; *i. p.* lugande, 1045.
 Loke, 1643, Luk, 3209, Luke, 135, *v.* look; 3 *s.* lukez, 113; *pl.* lukkes, 751; *pret.* loked, 119, lukede, 1313; *imp.* 2 *pl.* lokez, 1640; *i. p.* lukande, 3108.
 Lokerde, *p.p.* curled, 779. *Sc.* *lokker*, to curl (Jamieson).
 Lokkes, *s. pl.* locks, 778, 3280.
 Lond, *s.* land; *pl.* londes, 878, londez, 427, 1691, 1933.
 Londis, *v.* 3 *s.* lands, 3922.
 Longez, *v. pl.* belong, 2828; *pret.* lonngede, 3080.
 Loo, *int.* lo, 974, 1349.
 Loos, 254, Loosse, 474, *s.* praise, renown, good name.
 Lordcheppez, 1727, Lordchipez, 253, 646, Lordecheppez, 1970, *s. pl.* lordships.
 Lordliche, 3638, Lordlyche, 570, 2032, 2281, 2541, *adj.* lordly.
 Lordly, 2230, 2479, Lordely, 1818, 2227, *adv.* in a lordly manner.
 Lorne, *p.p.* lost, 1153.
 Losels, *s. pl.* rascals, wretches, 252.
 Losse, 1599, Lossene, 2845, *v.* lose.
 Lotes, *s. pl.* features, 1462. *See* Lates.
 Lothely, *adj.* loathly, horrid, ugly, 778, 3234.
 Lothely, *adv.* horridly, 2074, 3849.
 Lothene, 778, Lothyne, 1097, *adj.* hateful, detestable.
 Loue, *v.* praise, 369; *p.p.* louede, 4305.
 Louely, 3478, Louelyly, 2292, *adv.* in a loving manner, kindly.
 Louerde, *s.* lord, 3918.
 Lowde; on l. = aloud, 1781, 2032.
 Lowe, *s.* flame, 194.
 Lowkkide, *p.p.* closed, 3953.
 Lowrande, *i. p.* lowering, looking sad, 1446, 4338.
 Lowttes, *v. pl.* bow, 505; *pret.* lowttede, bowed before, 2634, 3285, 3408.
 Loyotour, *s.* embroidery (Perry), 3253.
 Lufe, *s.* some part of a ship, 744, 750. "Loof. The windward side of a ship. . . . It is not easy to make out exactly what part of the ship the loof originally was. Du. loef is a rullock or oar-pin, scalmus, but the loof was a timber of considerable size, by which the course of the ship was directed; it would seem to be the large oar used by way of a rudder, or perhaps the tiller." *Wedgwood's Dictionary of English Etymology*.
 Lufe, 703, 705, Luffe, 1256, 3381, *s.* love, sake.
 Luffe, *v.* love, 1597; *pl.* luffes, 12.
 Luffiche, 3623, Luffly, 1459, *adj.* lovely.
 Luffly, 505, Luffly, 248, Lufflyche, 2674, *adv.* in a lovely manner.
 Lugande, Lugegez, Lugge, Luggede. *See* Loge.
 Lughe. *See* Laughene.

- Luk, Lukande, Luke, Lukkes. *See* Loke.
- Lukyngge, *s.* looking, 139.
- Lumpe, 1819, Lumppe, 1814, 2230, *s.* crowd, throng.
- Lunggez, *s. pl.* lungs, 2168.
- Lussche, *s.* (?) thrust, 3848.
- Lutterde, *adj.* bowed, bent, 779.
Sc. luttaird. (Jamieson.)
- Luyschene, *v. pl.* (?) lash, 1459 ;
pret. luyschede, 2226.
- Lyarde, *adj.* gray, 2542, 3280.
" *Liart, liarde*, gris, gris-pommelé."
Burguy. *See* *Liart* in Jamieson.
- Lyefe, 2845, Lyffe, 1269, *s.* life ;
pl. lyfez, 1217.
- Lyf, *v.* live, 1903 ; 3 *s.* lyffes,
405, 537 ; *p.p.* lyffede, 868.
- Lyfte, *s.* sky, 4272.
- Lygeaunce, *s.* allegiance, 244.
- Lygge, *v.* lie ; 2 *s.* lygges, 1060 ;
3 *s.* lyggez, 805, lys, 3938 ; *pl.*
lygges, 459, lyggez, 1184, liggez,
1773.
- Lyghame, *s.* body, 3281, 3286 ;
pl. lighames, 4269. *A.S. lichama.*
- Lyghte, *v.* light, alight, 1270 ; 3
s. lyghtez, 933 ; *pret.* lyghte, 3594 ;
p.p. lyghtede, 1782.
- Lyghte, *v.* lighten, 2846 ; 3 *s.*
lyghttys, 368 ; *pl.* lyghttys, 251.
- Lyghtenande, *i. p.* lightening,
flashing, 2463.
- Lygmane, *s.* liegeman, 420 ; *pl.*
lyggemene, 1518.
- Lyke, *v.* be pleased, rejoice, 195 ;
usually an impers. v. likez, 383,
lykes, 55, lykez, 1190, lykys, 32,
186, pleases ; *pret.* lykede, 599 ;
i. p. lykande, being pleased, 248,
pleasing, 497, 2406.
- Lykyngge, *s.* pleasure, 701, 2673.
- Lyme, 459, 1097, Lymme, 1046,
s. limb.
- Lympe, *v.* happen, befall, 1643 ;
pl. lymppene, incur, 3119 ; lymppede, gained, 3415, lympyde, 292
p.p. lymppede, incurred, suffered,
875.
- Lynd, *s.* tree, 454, 486.
- Lynkwhyttez, *s. pl.* linnets, 2674.
Sc. lintwhite ; *A.S. linet*, flax ; *linet-*
wig, flax-finch, linnet.
- Lyone, *s.* lion, 139 ; *pl.* lyouns,
3234.
- Lyppe, *s.* lip, 119 ; *pl.* lyppys,
1011, lippis, 3954.
- Lyre. *See* Lire.
- Lys. *See* Lygge.
- Lythe, 1653. *Read* Kythe.
- Lythe, *adj.* gentle, 1517, 1600.
- Lythe, *v.* listen, 12 ; *pl.* lythes,
1810.
- Lytherly, *adv.* badly, 1448.
- Lythes, *s. pl.* (?) leases, tene-
ments, 994. *See* *Lith* in Glossary
to *Havelok the Dane*, ed. Skeat, and
Lud in Glossary to *William of*
Palerne, ed. Skeat.
- Lythyre, *adj.* wicked, bad, 23.
- Lytille, 1021, Litylle, 1719,
Lyttille, 754, *adj. or adv.* little.
- Lytte, (?) little, 550.
- Lyue, *s.* life, 1775, 3067, 3520.
- Lywyngge, *s.* living, 5.
- Ma, *adj.* more, 1829.
- Mace, *s.* 4210.
- Mache, *s.* match, 4070.
- Machede, *p.p.* matched, 1533,
2904.
- Maches, *s.* (?) 2950.
- Mad, *v. pret.* made, 50, 112 ; *p.p.*
mad, 77.
- Made, *s.* madness, 4271.
- Magestee, 1236, Maigestee, 1303,
s. majesty.
- Maister, 990, 2870, Mayster, 938,
3652, *s.* master.
- Maisterede, *v. pret.* mastered, 2683

- Makk, *s.* companion, fellow, 1166.
- Makles, *adj.* peerless, matchless, 3875.
- Malle, *v.* hammer, beat, 3038, 4037; 3 *s.* mallis, 3841.
- Maluesye, *s.* a kind of wine, 236.
- Malyncoly, *s.* 2204, 4209.
- Man, *adj.* See Mayne.
- Manace, *s.* menace, threatening, 3383.
- Manacede, *v. pret.* threatened, 1383.
- Manere, *s.* manor, 4310.
- Manere, *s.* manner, 1383.
- Mangere, *s.* 1588. Qu. Maugree, ill will.
- Manhede, *s.* manhood, 399, 434, 4278.
- Manliche, *adj.* manly, 2417.
- Manrede, *s.* homage, service, 127.
- Manykyne, *adj.* of many kinds, 3174.
- Manys = man's, 76.
- Marasse, 2505, Marras, 1534, Marrasse, 2014, *s.* morass, marsh.
- Marche, *s.* frontier, boundary, 318, 1588; *pl.* marches, 631, marchez, 1232, marchys, 77.
- Marchez-mene, *s. pl.* bordermen, borderers, 1237.
- Marras, Marrasse. See Marasse.
- Marre, *v.* mar, 2015.
- Marters, *s. pl.* martyrs, 1066.
- Martyre, *v.* kill, 560.
- Mase, *v.* 3 *s.* makes, 960.
- Masondewes, *s. pl.* hospitals, 3038.
Fr. *maison-dieu*, lit. house of God, a name suggested by Matthew xxv.
- Maugree, 1238, Mawgree, 426, in spite of.
- Maundement, *s.* commandment, order, 1537.
- Mawene, *p.p.* mown, 2507.
- Mawgree. See Maugree.
- Mawncelet. Read Mawntelet, *s.* mantling, or lambrequin, 3632.
"Mantling, or Lambrequin:—a small Mantle, generally of crimson velvet or silk and lined with ermine, with tassels, attached to the Basinet or Helm, and hanging down over the shoulders of the wearer."—*Boutell's Heraldry* (3rd edit. 1864), p. 115. In the present instance the mantelet was of silver mail.
- Mayles, 2250, Maylez, 904, 1487, 1764, *s. pl.* chain or ringed armour.
- Mayne, *s.* might, power, 4326.
- Mayne, 427, 434, Man, 4071, *adj.* main.
- Maynoyrede, *p.p.* worked, 2507.
- Mayntene, *v.* maintain, 399; *p.p.* mayntenye, 4278.
- Mayster. See Maister.
- Maysterfulle, *adj.* victorious, 3413.
- Mede, *s.* meed, reward, 666, 1068.
- Mede, *s.* mead, 1290, 2506.
- Medille, *s.* middle, waist, 2205, 4168.
- Medille-erthe, 2951, Medillerthe, 3239, *s.* world.
- Medillewarde, 2904, Medilwarde, 3766, Medylwarde, 1938, *s.* centre of an army.
- Mekille, Mekylle, *adj.* great, 1236; *adv.* much, greatly, 711, 1314, 1382.
- Mele, *v.* speak, talk, 990; 3 *s.* meles, 382, 679, 1781; *pl.* mellys, 3652; *imp.* 2 *pl.* melys, 2871.
- Melione, *s.* million, 3144.
- Melle, *v.* mix, join, meddle, deal with, 938; *pl.* mellis, 2904.
- Melles, *v.* 3 *s.* hammers, smites, 2950. See Malle.
- Mellyd, *adj.* (?) made like a *mall* or hammer, hammer-headed, 4210.
- Mellys, Melys. See Mele.

- Mendement, *s.* amendment, 989, 1236.
- Mendynantez, *s. pl.* (?) mendicants, beggars, 667.
- Mene, *v.* speak, tell, 3556, speak of, mention, 2869; 3 *s.* menys, talks, 3478, 3653.
- Menede, *v. pret.* meant, 891.
- Mengene, *v. pl.* mingle, join, 4173; *p.p.* mengede, 3632.
- Menske, *s.* honour, 126, 399, 433.
- Menskes, *v. 3 s.* honours, 1303, 2871.
- Mensksfully, *adv.* honourably, 631, 940, 1233, 1988.
- Mereswyne, *s.* dolphin, 1091. "Hic delfis. pis mere-swin." *Ælfric's Grammar*, Cotton MS. Julius A ii, leaf 31.
- Merke, *v.* proceed, 351, 427, 4320, assign, 1068; 3 *s.* merkes, cuts, 2206; *pl.* merkene, 4168; *p.p.* merked, formed, made, 1304, merkyde, 952.
- Merkes, *s. pl.* bounds, 461, 1147.
- Merrede, 1238, 3555, Merride, 3322, *p.p.* marred.
- Meruaile, Meruayle, *s.* marvel, wonder, 2682, 2906.
- Meruailles, *v. 3 s.* marvels, 1314.
- Meruailous, 260, Meruaylous, 428, Meruayllous, 2237, Meruelyous, 236, *adj.* marvellous, wonderful; *superl.* meruelyousteste, 129.
- Mery, *adj.* merry, cheerful, 260; *comp.* meriere, 3175; *superl.* meryeste, 3239.
- Messes, *s. pl.* masses, 4018, 4333.
- Mett, *v. pret.* dreamed, 3223.
- Mette, 2491, *s.* meat, food; *pl.* metes, 75, metez, 1298.
- Mette, *v.* meet, 434; *pret.* mett, 1175, 3841.
- Mette-fulle, *adj.* measure-full, in good measure, 2343.
- Mette while, *s.* measured time, or scanty time, 3903. A.S. *méte*, moderate, little.
- Meue, *v.* move, 2001.
- Misdoo, *v.* ill-use, wrong, 126.
- Mo, 844, 885, Moo, 856, 2500, *adj.* more.
- Mobles, *s. pl.* movable goods, 666.
- Mode, *s.* mind, 3222, 3382, 3454.
- Modyr, Modyre, *s.* mother, 2, 983, 1211.
- Mofes, *v. 3 s.* moves, 3323.
- Molde, *s.* mould, earth, 129, 952, 975.
- Mone, *v.* must, shall, 813, 1155, 2186, 2436, 2820.
- Monee, *s.* money, 2343.
- Monethe, *s.* month, 318.
- Montayngnes, 3238, Mowntayngnes, 4259, *s. pl.* mountains.
- Monte, *s.* mountain, 938, 1069; *pl.* montez, 874, 1175, mowntes, 3535, 3556.
- Mony, *adj.* many, 3623, 3671.
- Moo. *See* Mo.
- More, *adj.* greater, 1018.
- Morne, *s.* morning, morrow, 1223.
- Morne-while, *s.* morning time, 2001, 3223.
- Morthires, *v. 2 s.* murderest, 1315; *pl.* mourtherys, 4259; *p.p.* morthirede, 976.
- Morwene, *s.* morning, 3476.
- Moste, *v.* must, 250, 263, 449; *impers. v.* 2491.
- Mošte, *adj.* greatest, 3322, 4221.
- Mot, 346, Mote, 4104, Mott, 136, 1306, Motte, 227, *v.* must, may.
- Mournande, *i. p.* mourning, 4333.
- Mourtherys. *See* Morthires.
- Mowe, *v. subj. sg.* be able, may, 3812.

- Moyllez, *s. pl.* mules, 2287.
 Muskadelle, *s.* a kind of wine, 236.
 Myche, *adj.* great, 1166, 1214, 2033; *adv.* much, greatly, 1068.
 Myde, *adj.* mid, 3841.
 Myddes, 1293, Myddys, 2176, *s.* midst.
 Mylde, *adj.* mild, 1211.
 Mynde, *s.* memory, 1221.
 Mynsters, *s. pl.* monasteries, 3038.
 Myrthez, *s. pl.* mirths, 1532.
 Myschefe, *s.* trouble, misfortune, 667, 3437.
 Myse-bide, *v.* offer injury, 3083.
 Mysese, *s.* trouble, grief; and hence, those who are in trouble, 667.
 Myshappene, *v.* meet with misfortune, 3454.
 Myskaries, *v.* 3 *s.* comes to grief, 2872; *p. p.* myscaryede, 1778, myskaryede, 1237.
 Mysse, *s.* wrong, injury, 1315, 3057.
 Myste, *s.* mist, 2001.
 Myx, *s.* vile wretch; lit. dung, 989. A.S. *meox*, dung, muck. "Ne myhte þe *mixes* þo wurse don, Bute a-moug þeoues on rode an-bon." Jesus Coll. MS. 29, leaf 265, back.
 Na, *adj.* no, 160, 310, 1644.
 Nakyne, *adj.* of no kind, 2350.
 Nane, *adj.* no, 213, 565; *pron.* none, 657, 2613.
 Nauylle, *s.* navel, 979.
 Naye, *s.* a naye = an aye, an egg, 3283. Compare *Neiz* in *William of Palerne*, ed. Skeat, l. 83.
 Ne, *adv.* not, 230, 1117; *conj.* nor, 10, 161.
 Nedes, 263, 1266, Nedez, 1329, Nedys, 470, *s. pl.* business.
 Nedyllle, *s.* needle (of a compass), 753.
 Neghe, *v.* draw nigh, approach, 2433.
 Neghe, *adv.* closely, exactly, 2658.
 Neke-bone, *s.* neckbone, 2771.
 Nere, *adv.* nearly, almost, 805, 1127, 1135.
 Nese, *s.* nose, 2248.
 Neuwe, *s.* nephew, 689.
 Newzere, *s.* new-year, 78.
 Newzers daye, *s.* new-year's day, 90.
 Nextte, *adj.* nearest, 2422.
 Neynesome, nine in all, 523. See *Sum* in Richthofen's *Allfriesisches Wörterbuch*.
 Nobille, Nobylle, *adj.* noble, 16, 18, 68; *superl.* nobileste, 3439, 3935.
 Nobilly, *adv.* nobly, 1815.
 Noblay, *s.* splendour, 76, 2433.
 Noghte, *pron.* naught, 1191; *adv.* not, 135, 419, 1174.
 Nokyne, *adj.* of no kind, 430.
 Nombirde, 2887, Nowmerde, 2658, *p. p.* numbered.
 Nombyre, 2831, 3068, Nowmbre, 2884, Nowmbyre, 2942, 3433, Nowmer, 884, *s.* number; *pl.* nommers, 591, nowmbirs, 3935.
 Nomene, 1437, Nommene, 1868, 1872, 2477, *p. p.* taken.
 Nommers. See *Nombyre*.
 None, *s.* the ninth hour of the day (at the equinox, none = 3 P.M.), 78.
 Nonis, 3297, Nonys, 1927, *s.* nonce; for the nonce, for the occasion.
 Nonkyns, *adj.* of no kind, 2363.
 Nonne, *adj.* no, 3365.
 Nonnes, *s. pl.* nuns, 3539.
 Noo, *adj.* no, 4149.

- Not, *v.* 1 *s.* know not, 977.
- Notez, *v. pl.* make use of, 1815.
A.S. *notian*.
- Nother, 2367, Nothyre, 10, Nowthire, 161, 429, *conj.* neither.
- Notte, *s.* use; hence, business, 1816. A.S. *notu*.
- Nowene, 1806; thi nowene = thine own.
- Nowmhirs, Nowmbre, Nowmbyre, Nowmer. *See* Nombyre.
- Nowmerde. *See* Nombirde.
- Nowthire. *See* Nother.
- Noyes, *v.* 3 *s.* harms, grieves, 1816, 2248.
- Nurree, *s.* nursling, 689.
- Nyghtgale, *s.* nightingale, 929.
- Nyghttes, *v.* 2 *s.* gettest benighted, 451.
- Nynne = nine, 3439
- O, 656, 1217, 3480, Oo, 3907, *prep.* on, in.
- O, *prep.* of, from, 3906.
- Occedente, *s.* occident, west, 2360.
- Occyane, *s.* ocean, 31.
- Oches, *v.* 3 *s.* hacks, breaks, 2565; *pl.* ochene, 3675; *pret.* ochede, 4245. "Ocher, ocher, ébrécher, entailler, briser." *Burguy*.
- Occupyes, *v.* 3 *s.* holds, occupies, 1663, 2360.
- Of = from, 2540.
- Oglite, *pron.* aught, 1014, 1269, 2302.
- Okene, *adj.* oaken, 2722.
- Olawe, *adv.* below, down, 1517.
- Olyfaunte, *s.* elephant, 2339; *pl.* olyfantez, 1286, olyfauntez, 2288.
- Olyfe, *adv.* of life, from life, 802, 1139; bringe olyfe = kill.
- One = on, *prep.* 74, 116, 753.
- One, *adv.* alone, only, 826, 937, 2519, 2592. A.S. *áne*. Myne one, by myself, 3230; by myne one, by myself, 704; be oure one, by ourselves, 1345; thyne one, thyself, 466; with hyme one, with himself, 597; of hyme one, of himself, 1793; be thame one, by themselves, 3195.
- Ones, 135, 179, Onez, 1109, 1756, *adv.* once.
- One-secande, *i. p.* looking on, 525.
- Onone, *adv.* anon, quickly, soon, 571, 1178, 1231.
- Ony, *adj.* any, 2519, 3489, 4215.
- Oo. *See* O.
- Opyne, *adj.* open, 2147.
- Or, *prep.* ere, before, 1269, 1788; *conj.* ere, before, 374, 529, 1680.
- Ordaynede, *v. pret.* arranged, 1991; *p.p.* ordande, ordained, 1621.
- Orfraeez, 902, Orfrayes, 2142, *s.* gold embroidered work, or fringe of gold. "Orfrais, . . . étoffe brochée d'or, broderie en or, frange d'or." *Burguy*.
- Orrible, *adj.* horrible, 1240.
- Oryent, 2289, Oryentte, 1904, *s.* orient.
- Osay, *s.* a kind of drink, 202.
- Oslante, *adv.* aslant, 2254, 3923.
- Ostage, *s. pl.* hostages, 3187, 3208.
- Ostayande, *i. p.* warring, or leading an army, 3502. "Ostoier, osteier, osteer, faire la guerre, guerroyer, mener ost, attaquer son ennemi." *Burguy*.
- Oste, *s.* host, 1624; *pl.* ostes, 1240, ostez, 2387.
- Other-while, *adv.* at another time, 1145.
- Othire, *adj.* other, 3973; *pron. pl.* others, 3932.
- Ouer-charggede, *p.p.* overburdened, overpowered, 1749.
- Ouer-fallene, *p.p.* fallen upon, 1154.

- Ouergylte, *p.p.* gilded over, 207.
- Ouer-hande, *s.* upper hand, mastery, 4300.
- Ouerkeste, *v. pret.* overthrew, 3932.
- Ouerlynge, *s.* superior, lord, 289, 520, 710.
- Ouer-rane, *v. pret.* overran; *p.p.* ouer-ronne, 1206.
- Ouer-reche, *v.* reach over, afford, 1508; *pl.* ouerrechez, reach over, 921.
- Ouer-rydez, *v. pl.* ride over; *p.p.* ouer-redyne, 1415, 1524.
- Ouersette, *p.p.* overthrown, 111, 2815, 4136.
- Ouer-swyngene, *v. pl.* overthrow, overturn, 1466.
- Ouer-whelme, *v.* overturn, 3261.
- Oundyde, 765, Ownde, 193, *adj.* wavy. *Her. ondee.*
 "Hire *ownded* here, that sonnyssh
 was of hewe,
 She rente . . ."
 Chaucer, *Troilus & Cryseyde*,
 bk. iv. stanza cii.
- Ovyre-fallys, *v. pl.* fall over, 3677.
- Ower, *prep.* over, 747.
- Ownde. *See* Oundyde.
- Owte-iles, 30, Owtt illes, 2359, *s. pl.* foreign islands.
- Owte landes, 2607, Owte-londes, 2723, Owtt-londys, 3697, *s. pl.* foreign countries.
- Owte-mowntes, *s. pl.* far off mountains, 3909.
- Owte ouer, 903, Owtt ouere, 2339, *adv.* outside, above.
- Owther, 110, 2413, Owthire, 964, *conj.* either.
- Owtraye, *v.* finish, overcome completely, ruin, do violence against, 642, 1010, 1328; 3 *s.* owtrayes, 1664; *p.p.* owtrayedede, 1952, owtrayedede, 2617, owtrayedede, 2840.
- Pacokes, *s. pl.* peacocks, 182.
- Pales, 503, Palesse, 3913, Palez, 636, 718, *s.* palace; *pl.* palaisez, 1287.
- Palfray, *s.* 3143.
- Palle, *s.* a kind of rich silk or cloth, 1288, 2178, 3142.
- Palyd, 1287, Palyde, 1375, *p.p.* paled (*Her.*).
- Pape, *s.* pope, 229, 2327.
- Pare, *v.* (?) 4047.
- Parlement, *s.* parliament, 146.
- Party, *s.* part, 212; *pl.* partyes, parts, countries, 2596.
- Pas, *s.* pace, 3496.
- Passande, *i. p.* passing, more than, 2741, passant, 4184.
- Pastorelles, *s. pl.* herdmen, 3120.
- Patriarkes, *s. pl.* 3807.
- Paume, *s.* palm, 776.
- Paunsonne, *s.* (?) piece of armour covering the paunch, 3458. "*Panchire, panchire*, la partie de l'armure qui couvre la panse ou le ventre." *Burguy.*
- Pauiys, 3460, properly means a large shield, but it is by no means clear what is meant in this passage.
- Pausers, *s. pl.* men who bore the *paris*, a large shield used to cover archers, 2831, 3004.
- Parelyouns, 2624, Pauiyllyons, 2478, *s. pl.* tents.
- Pawnce, *s.* piece of armour for the belly, 2075.
- Pawnche, *s.* paunch, 2076.
- Paye, *v.* satisfy, please, 4049; 3 *s.* payes, 2646; *p.p.* payede, 230.
- Payganys, *s. pl.* pagans, 4046.
- Payne, *s.* penalty, 2329; *pl.* paynez, 1546, 1632.
- Paynyme, *s.* pagan, 1377; *pl.* paynymes, 2835, paynymecz, 1544.

- Payses, *v. pl.* weight, load, 3037 ;
pret. paysede, overloaded, weighed
 down, 3042.
 Payvese, *s. pl.* pavises, 3625.
 Pecez, *s. pl.* pieces, 1825.
 Pechelyne, *s. (?)* 1341.
 Pekille, *s.* a kind of sauce made
 of dripping, wine, mustard, and
 onions, 1027. See the recipe *For*
Pykulle in the *Liber Cure Cocorum*,
 ed. Morris, p. 31.
 Pelid, *v. pret.* thrust, drove (?),
 3042.
 Pelours. See Pylours.
 Pendes, *v.* 3 *s.* belongs, 1612 ;
pl. 2624.
 Penowne, *s.* pennon, flag, 2917 ;
pl. penouns, 2460.
 Penselle, *s.* small pennon, streamer,
 2076, 2411 ; *pl.* penselles, 2460,
 pensels, 1289.
 Percede, *v. pret.* pierced, 2075.
 Peres, 146, Perez, 637, Peris,
 1637, *s. pl.* peers.
 Perfournede, *p.p.* performed, 672.
 Perrie, 4184, Perrye, 2460, 3461,
s. precious stones, jewelry.
 Persayfes, *v.* 3 *s.* perceives, 4224 ;
pret. persayfede, 1631, persayude,
 2811.
 Persewes, *v.* 3 *s.* pursues, 2155 ;
pret. persewede, 1476, persuede,
 1377.
 Pertly, *adv.* openly, 2917.
 Pes, 2411, Pesse, 1542, *s.* peace.
 Pesanc, *s. (?)* 3458.
 Peté, *s.* pity, 2812, 3043.
 Peyne. See Payne.
 Pighte, Pyghte, *p.p.* pitched,
 1287, 1290, set (with stones, &c.),
 212, 3354, 3460 ; adorned (?), 3364.
 Pilgram, *s.* pilgrim, 3475.
 Pilgremage, *s.* 3496.
 Pillione hatt, *s.* 3460. A kind
 of hat, at one time worn only by
 doctors in theology, but afterwards
 more generally. See Pecoock's *Re-*
pressor, ed. Babington, pp. 88, 89,
 and Glossary.
 Pilouur, *s.* robber, 2533.
 Plas, *s.* place, 4013.
 Plasche, *s.* marshy place, 2798.
 Platers, *s. pl.* dishes, 182.
 Platez, *s. pl.* plates, 2075.
 Plattes, *s. pl.* purple cloths, 2478.
 "Platta, purpura, vel pannus pur-
 purei coloris." *Ducange*. Or more
 probably *plattes* is a *pl. v.* meaning,
 strike, beat. A.S. *plættian*.
 Playne, *adj.* level, smooth, 1290.
 Playsterede, *adj.* plastered, 3042.
 Plenerly, *adv.* fully, 2608, 3498.
 Plenteuous, *adj.* abundant, 1028.
 Plesande, *i. p.* pleasing, pleasant,
 11, 4049.
 Plesaunce, *s.* delight, enjoyment,
 3140.
 Pleyne, *v.* complain, 1217.
 Plumpe, *s.* crowd, 2199.
 Plyande, *adj.* flexible, 777.
 Plytte, *s.* condition, 683.
 Pomarie, *s.* fruit-garden, orchard,
 3364.
 Pome, *s.* globe, 3354.
 Pomelle, *s.* small globe (probably
 used as an ornament on a flag-
 staff), 1289.
 Pontyficalles, *s. pl. (?)* bishops,
 4335.
 Pople, 100, 1204, Popule, 11, 52,
s. people.
 Porke despyne, *s.* porcupine, 183.
 Porkes, *s. pl.* swine, 3121.
 Porte, *s.* port, 2609 ; (?) 3625 ;
pl. portes, gates, 503, 568, portez,
 portholes, 749.
 Postles, *s. pl.* apostles, 2413.
 Potestate, *s.* power, potentate,
 2327.

- Poveralle, *s.* poor folk, 3120.
 Pouere, *adj.* poor, 3540.
 Pouerte, *s.* poverty, 1545.
 Pourpour, *s.* purple, 1375.
 Powere, *s.* forces, 1635, 1925, 2155.
 Poynes, *v.* work upon, toil at, 2624.
 Poyntez, *s. pl.* points, 767.
 Praye, *s.* prey, booty, 3003, 3010.
 Prekande, Prekas, Prekys, Prekande, &c. *See* Prike.
 Preker, Prekkers. *See* Prikkere.
 Presant, *adj.* present, 1257.
 Presante, *s.* present, 1021.
 Prese, *v.* press, 1583; 3 *s.* presez, 1374; *pret.* presede, 2199.
 Presone, 1546, Presonne, 1632, *s.* prison.
 Presonere, *s.* prisoner, 2536; *pl.* presoners, 1583, 1636.
 Presse, *s.* crowd, 1477, pressure, difficulty, 1522.
 Preué, *adj.* privy, secret, 2005.
 Preuely, 213, 896, 2648, Prenalye, 1609, *adv.* privily, secretly.
 Price, 94, 355, Pris, 500, 569, Pryce, 230, 746, Prys, 2, 718, Pryse, 1636, Prysse, 1545, *adj.* precious, worthy, good.
 Prike, *v.* prick, ride, 2844; 2 *s.* prykkes, 2533; 3 *s.* prekez, 2156, prekys, 718; *pl.* prekes, 503; *imp.* 2 *pl.* prekez, 1609; *i. p.* prekande, 1545, prekkande, 2836; *p. p.* prykyd, pricked, 2648, prykyde, stitched, 3608.
 Prikkere, 2649, Preker, 1374, *s.* rider, horseman: *pl.* prekers, 355, 1479; prekkers, 2835.
 Pris. *See* Price.
 Priste, *adj.* ready, 1021, 4106.
 Pristly, *adv.* readily, quickly, 2762.
 Profire, *v.* offer battle, 2534; 2 *s.* profers, 2533; 3 *s.* profers, 1376, 3141.
 Profire, 2857, Profyre, 1257, *s.*
 Profitabile, *adj.* 11.
 Proudely, 1374, Proudliche, 1287, Prowdliche, 3607, *adv.* proudly, splendidly.
 Proue, *v.* prove, try, test, 1341; 3 *s.* proues, 1478; *pl.* prouene, 746, proues, 2464; *p. p.* prouede, 2596.
 Proueste, 1611, 1889, Prouoste, 1632, *s.* provost.
 Prowde, *adj.* proud, 2536, gay, splendid, 2076.
 Prowesche, *s.* advantage, 1958.
 Pryce, *adj.* *See* Price.
 Pryce, 1924, 2788, Prys, 2751, Pryse, 2649, *s.* praise, prize.
 Prykkes, Prykkyde. *See* Prike.
 Pryme, *s.* the first hour of the day, 95, 4105.
 Prys, Pryse, *s.* *See* Pryce.
 Prys, Pryse, Prysse. *See* Price.
 Prysonere, 1478, Pryssonere, 1610, *s.*
 Purchase, *v.* gain, acquire, obtain, 3497.
 Purpos, 687, Purposse, 2848, *s.*
 Purpre, 4184, Purpur, 3142, Purple, 1258, Pourpour, 1375, *s.* purple.
 Purtrayed, *p. p.* portrayed, 3607.
 Puruayed, *v. pret.* provided, furnished, 2832; *p. p.* puruayed, 1925, 2477.
 Purueance, *s.* provision, providing, 688.
 Put, *v.* 2535; put of = ward off.
 Pygges, *s. pl.* pigs, 183.
 Pyghte. *See* Fighte.
 Pyke, *s.* pike, staff, 3475; *pl.* pykes, points, claws, 777.
 Pyke, *v.* pick; 2 *s.* pykes, 2534; pyke vp, 1636.

- Pylotes, *s. pl.* pellets, stones used as missiles, 3037.
 Pylours, 3004, Pelours, 2831, *s. pl.* (?) archers, or men who worked the engines.
 Pymment, *s.* a kind of drink, 1028.
 Pyne, *s.* suffering, 3043.
 Pynne, *v.* pin, 4047.
 Pypez, *s. pl.* pipes, fifes, 2030.
 Quarte, 552, Qwerte, 3810, *s.* health, prosperity.
 Quarterde, *p.p.* quartered, 1736.
 Quod, *v. pret.* quoth, said, 140, 259, 1559.
 Qyutte, *v.* requite, 1788.
 Qwarelles, *s. pl.* bolts (for the cross-bow), 2103.
 Qwarters, *s. pl.* 3389.
 Qwaste, *p.p.* quashed, crushed, 3389.
 Qwat, 3868, Qwate, 4008, *pron.* what.
 Qwayntly, 2103, Qwayntely, 3261, *adv.* cunningly.
 Qwen, 1222, Qwene, 26, 736, Qwenne, 48, Qwhene, 407, *adv.* when.
 Qwene, 2189, 2871, Qwenne, 3998, *s.* queen.
 Qwerte. *See* Quarte.
 Qwhene. *See* Qwen.
 Qwhilles, 4160, Qwhyle, 553, Qwhylls, 3480, 3651, 3810; Qwylls, 3505; *adv.* whilst, while; qwylls, 4047, qwylls, 4007, until.
 Qwyke, 1736, Qwykke, 3810, *adj.* alive.
 Qwylls, Qwylls. *See* Qwhilles.
 Qwyne, *adv.* whence, 3503.
 Qwythene, 4157, properly means *whence*; in this passage it seems to be miswritten for *Qwyne* = O that! Compare "Whyne myghte I" = "O that I might," l. 703.
 See the preface to Hampole's *Pricke of Conscience*, ed. Morris, pp. xxv and xxvi.
 Raas, *v.* tear, pluck away, 362; *pret.* rasede, tore, 2984.
 Racches, *s. pl.* hounds, 3999.
 Rade, *adj.* frightened, 1995, 2881.
 Rade, *s.* fear, dread, 3896.
 Rade. *See* Ryde.
 Radly, *adv.* quickly, 1529, 3815. *A.S. hrædlice.*
 Radnesse, *s.* fear, dread, terror, 120, 310.
 Raghte. *See* Reche.
 Raike, 1525, Rayke, 2985, *s.* course, path.
 Raissede, *p.p.* raised, 2057.
 Rane. *See* Ryne.
 Ranez, *s. pl.* thickets, brushwood, 923. *See* *Ronez* in *Sir Gawayne and the Green Knight*, ed. Morris, l. 1466.
 Ranke, 2271, Rannke, 1474, 1764, 2138, *adj.* rank, strong.
 Rankour, *s.* 1666.
 Raply, *adv.* swiftly, 1763.
 Rappyd, *v. pret.* rapped, smote, 785.
 Rarede, *v. pret.* roared, 784, 1124.
 Rasches, *v. pl.* dash, 2107.
 Rasede. *See* Raas.
 Raskaille, *s.* rabble, 2881.
 Rathe, *adj.* swift, quick, 2550.
 Rathe, *adv.* quickly, speedily, 1275, 1332, 1663, 2022.
 Rathly, 237, Raythely, 2880, *adv.* quickly.
 Raughte. *See* Reche.
 Raunsake, *v.* search, 4304; 3 *s.* ransakes, 3939; *pl.* ransakes, 1884; *imp.* 2 *pl.* rawnsakes.
 Raunsone, *s.* ransom, 1528.

- Raunsone, 466, 1276, 1508, Rawnsone, 3275, *n.* ransom, levy ransom upon; *pret.* raunsounde, 293, 329; *p.p.* raunsound, 100, rawnsone, 2667.
- Rauyschett, *v. pret.* ravished, 294.
- Rawe, *s.* row; on rawe = in a row, in order, one after the other, 238, 633, 1292.
- Rawghte. *See* Reche.
- Rawmpyde, *v. pret.* ramped, 794.
- Rawndoune, *s.* swiftness, violence, impetuosity, 2985. *See* *Randon* in Roquefort.
- Rawnsakes. *See* Raunsake.
- Rawnsone. *See* Raunsone.
- Rayke, *v.* proceed, go; 3 *s.* raykes, 1762, raykez, 889, 1057; *pret.* raykede, 237; *i. p.* raykande, 3469.
- Rayke, *s.* *See* Raike.
- Raylide, *p.p.* clothed, covered, 3263.
- Raymede, *p.p.* (?) 100. Halliwell has, "*Rame.* To rob, or plunder."
- Raythely. *See* Rathly.
- Reale, 524, Realle, 179, 221, 411, Rialle, 1993, Ryalle, 53, 74, 2138, Ryealle, 17, *adj.* royal, kingly, noble; *superl.* realeste, 175, 1410.
- Realtee, *s.* royalty, 155, 228, 423; *pl.* ryalltes, 3214, ryalitez 1665, royaltez, 4005.
- Rebanes, *s. pl.* ribbons, 3255.
- Rebawde, *s.* ribald, rascal, vagabond, 1333; *pl.* rebawdez, 1416, 1705.
- Rebawdous, *adj.* ribald, 456.
- Rebelle, *adj.* rebellious, 2040.
- Rebuke, *v.* 1333; *p.p.* rebukkede, 4233, rebuyked, 1445, rebuykkyde, 2234, rebuykyde, 567, 1705, 2153.
- Reche, *v.* reach, stretch forth the hand in giving or receiving; hence, hand over, give, take, draw, &c., 3 *s.* reches, 1111, 2252, rechez, 792; *pret.* raghte, 2766, raughte, 1527, 1884, 3352, rawghte, 3456, rechede, 1090, 3350, 4218; *p.p.* raghte, 2666, rechide, 1043.
- Reched, *s.* (?) richness, 3263.
- Reches, *s.* riches, wealth, 2667, 3571.
- Recheste, *adj.* richest, 155.
- Reconsaillez, *v.* 3 *s.* reconciles, 3130.
- Recreaunt, *adj.* recreant, 2334.
- Red, 2932. *See* Rede, *v.*
- Reddour, *s.* fear, dread, 109, 485, 1418. *Su. Goth.* *reddle*, fear.
- Reddour, *s.* rigour, 1456. *O. Fr.* *redour*, *reddur*, rigour, severity.
- Rede, 550, 2369, Red, 2932, *v.* advise; interpret, 3228; *p.p.* rede, discerned, 2921.
- Rede, 995, 2144, Reedde, 3457, Reede, 795, 1526, *adj.* red.
- Redely, 1472, 2070, Redily, 363, Redly, 1207, 1526, *adv.* readily, quickly.
- Redene. *See* Ryde.
- Redy, *v.* make ready, prepare, 4137; *pl.* redyes, 1427.
- Redyne. *See* Ryde.
- Reedde. *See* Rede.
- Refede, *v.* rob, take away, deprive of; *pret.* refede, 959, refte, 295, 1475; *p.p.* refede, 1820, refte, 1206, 1733, rewede, 3315.
- Regale, *s.* regalia, 4207.
- Regestre, *s.* register, 113.
- Reghte, *adv.* right, 1057, 1668, just, 1301.
- Reghttes, *v.* 3 *s.* rights, puts to rights, 3815; *pl.* reghttez, 1454, ryghttene, 3618.
- Regne, 398, Regne, 4005, Ryngne, 3214, *v.* reign; 3 *s.* regnes, 310, regnez, 287, ryngnes, 2266; *pl.* rengnez, 865; *pret.* regnede, 293, 3273, rengnede, 3272, reynede, 175, ryngnede, 228; *i. p.* regnaude, 2665.

- Rehersene, *v.* relate, tell, say, 3229; 3 *s.* rehersys, 3206; *pret.* rehersede, 1666.
- Rehetes, 411, Rehetez, 3198, *v.* 3 *s.* cheers; *pret.* rehetede, 221. O.Fr. *rehaïter*.
- Reke, *s.* smoke, 1041.
- Rekeneste, *adj.* (?) quickest, readiest, 4081. A.S. *recene*, soon, quickly.
- Rekenyng, 1678, Rekkynyng, 102, *s.* reckoning, account.
- Rekke, *v.* reck, care, 995, 2040; *pret.* roughte, cared for, 3275.
- Rekkene, *v.* reckon, 1275, 2334.
- Reklesse, *adj.* reckless, careless, 922, 1670.
- Relayes, *v. pl.* relax, slacken, 1529.
- Releuis, *v. pl.* rally, 2278; *pret.* releuyde, 2234; *p.p.* releuede, 1207.
- Relikkes, *s. pl.* relics, 4207.
- Relyes, 4291, Relyez, 1882, *v. pl.* rally; *pret.* relyede, 1391.
- Relys, *v.* 3 *s.* reels, 2794.
- Remenaunt, *s.* remnant, remainder, 1553.
- Remmes. *See* Rewme.
- Remmes, 2197, Remys, 4155, *v.* 3 *s.* shouts, cries out; *pret.* remyd, 3894.
- Remowes, *v.* 3 *s.* removes, 1761.
- Renayed, *adj.* renegade, having renounced their faith, 2913, 3572, 3892.
- Rengnede, Rengnez. *See* Regne.
- Renke, *s.* man, 1057; *pl.* renkes, 1410, renkkes, 391, 1994, renkys, 17, 147, renkkez, 2135.
- Rennene, *v. pl.* run, 200.
- Rente, *s.* rent, tribute, 465; *pl.* rentez, 103, 995, renttez, 1509, 1667.
- Rependez, *v. pl.* hang back, 2107.
- Repent, *v. pret.* repented, 3894; repent, *impers. v.* 1392.
- Requit, *p.p.* paid, 1680.
- Rere, *v.* move, 2810. Cf. Dan. *röre sig*, to bestir oneself.
- Rereage, *s.* arrears, 1680.
- Rerebrace, *s.* 2566. "From the French *arriere-bras*. That part of plate armour which covered the arm from the shoulder to the elbow. In the reign of Edward II. only one plate at first protected the arm outside, being put on the sleeve of mail; but afterwards the rerebrace became a cylinder, consisting of two halves joined with hinges and clasps." Meyrick, *Glossary of Military Terms*.
- Rererys, *v.* 3 *s.* rears, 4249; *p.p.* rereryde, 4280.
- Rerewarde, *s.* rearguard, 1430, 1527, 1762.
- Resaywe, *v.* receive, 3587.
- Rescewe, 1752, Reschewe, 2243, Rescowe, 4131, *v.* rescue; *p.p.* reschowede, 363.
- Reschewe, 3859, Reschewes, 433, Rescowe, 1953, Rescows, 4137, *s.* rescue, deliverance.
- Resonabillye, *adv.* reasonably, 1508.
- Resone, 2041, Resoune, 174, 1668, *s.* reason, account.
- Restreynede, *p.p.* restrained, 2041.
- Retenewys, 3572, Retenuz, 1334, 1655, 2664, *s. pl.* retainers, followers.
- Retournes, *v. pl.* turn back, 1395.
- Reuare, 62, 1455, Reyuere, 424, Ryuere, 1292, *s.* river.
- Reuaye, 3275, Ryvaye, 3999, *v.* hunt by a river. "*Rivoier, riceier, chasser en rivière.*" *Burguy* under *Rive*.
- Reuelle, *s.* 1667.

- Reuelle, *v.* 1969.
 Reuengyde, *p.p.* avenged, 1204.
 Reuerssede, *v. pret.* turned down, 2070; *p.p.* reuersside, turned up, trimmed, 3255.
 Reuertede, *v. pret.* turned over, 2918.
 Reueste, *p.p.* dressed, clothed, 4334.
 Rewdly. *See* Ruydly.
 Rewe, *v.* have pity, 866; cause regret, 1678; 3 *s.* rewes, 3272.
 Rewede. *See* Refe.
 Rewfulle, *adj.* rueful, pitiful, sad, 1049.
 Rewfully, *adv.* ruefully, sadly, 1523.
 Rewghe. *See* Rewthe.
 Rewllez, 1672, Rewlys, 509, *v.* 3 *s.* rules, governs; *pl.* rewles, 1455, rewlys, 726; *p.p.* rewlyde, 52.
 Rewme, *s.* realm, 1207; *pl.* rewmes, 52, 66, 425, remmes, 49.
 Rewthe, 888, 1430, 2197, Rewghe, 3859, *s.* pity, compassion, sorrow; rewthe werkes, sorrowful deeds, 3453, 3894.
 Reynede. *See* Regne.
 Reyuer. *See* Renare.
 Rialle. *See* Reale.
 Riatours, *s. pl.* ravagers, 2034.
 Richely, *adv.* 173.
 Richeste, *adj.* 147.
 Rigge, *s.* back, 800. A.S. *hrycg*.
 Rightene, *v. pl.* put right, 1525.
 Rightewissly, *adv.* righteously, 1554.
 Rightwis, *adj.* righteous, 3989.
 Riotes. *See* Ryot.
 Riotous. *See* Ryotous.
 Riste, 1969, Ryste, 108, 423, *v.* rest; 3 *s.* rystez, 2170; *pret.* risted, 485, rystede, 53; *p.p.* riste, 2235, ryste, 1428.
 Ritzze, 2138, Rittis, 3753, *v. pl.* break, tear.
 Roche, *s.* rock, 1146, 3601.
 Rochelle, *s.* a kind of wine, 203.
 Rode. *See* Ryde.
 Rode, *s.* rood, cross, 3217, 3559. A.S. *ród*.
 Rog, *s.* (?) crowd, 3272. *See* rogo in Ihre.
 Roggede, *v. pret.* shook, 784.
 Rollede, *p.p.* enrolled, 2641.
 Romawns, *s. pl.* romances, 3200.
 Romede, *v. pret.* roared, 784.
 Romyez, *v.* 3 *s.* roars, 888; *pret.* romyede, 1124.
 Rongene. *See* Rynge.
 Ronnene. *See* Rynce.
 Roo, *s.* rest, peace, quiet, 1751, 3362, 4304. A.S. *row*.
 Roo, *s.* wheel, 3374. Fr. *roue*, Lat. *rota*.
 Roo, *s.* roe, 922, 4000. A.S. *rá*.
 Roode. *See* Ryde.
 Roselde, 2880, Rosselde, 2793, *adj.* (?) brandished, shaken. Cf. Sw. *rushla*, to shake; E. *rustle*.
 Rosers, *s. pl.* rosetrees, 923.
 Rosse, *s.* rose, 3457.
 Rosselde. *See* Roselde.
 Rossete, *adj.* russet, 237.
 Rostez, *s. pl.* roasts, 1049.
 Roughte. *See* Rekke.
 ROUNGENE. *See* Rynge.
 Rowelle, *s.* wheel, 3262. "*Roete, rouete, roelle, roue, petite roue, rond, cercle; de rotula.*" Burguy.
 Rowm, 1454, Rowme, 391, 432, Rowmme, 3470, *adj.* roomy, spacious.
 Rowte, *v.* sleep; lit. snore, 108.
 Rowte, 719, 1763, Rowtt, 1656, Rowtte, 390, 456, *s.* company, troop.

- Rowtte, *s.* road, way, 379.
- Roy, 411, 1670, Roye, 3200, 3273, *s.* king. Fr. *roi*, Lat. *rex*.
- Royaltez. *See* Realtee.
- Rungene. *See* Ryngne.
- Rusche, *v.* rush, fall; cast, hurl, 1339, thrust, 2850; 3 *s.* rusches, falls, 2241, 2794, ruschez, rushes, 392, ruysches, 2983; *pl.* rusches, 2550, ruysches, hurl, dash, 2913; *pret.* ruschede, 2792, 2879, ruschte, 120.
- Ruscledde, *adj.* (?) ruckled, wrinkled, 1096. Cf. *ruck* in Wedgwood.
- Ruyd, 1096, Ruyde, 1049, 1057, 1332, *adj.* rude.
- Ruydly, 785, 794, Ruydlyche, 1877, Rewdly, 2810, *adv.* rudely.
- Ruysches, Ruysches. *See* Rusche.
- Ryalle. *See* Reale.
- Ryalltez. *See* Realtee.
- Ryally, *adv.* royally, 1472, 3613.
- Rybbez, 1134, Rybbys, 1151, *s.* *pl.* ribs.
- Ryche, *adj.* 108, 833.
- Rydde, *adj.* fierce, 4117. *See* *Rid* in Jamieson.
- Ryde, *v.* ride, 1876; 3 *s.* ryddis, 3540; *pl.* ryddez, 2849, rydene, 2809; *pret.* rade, 294, 853, rode, 1953, roode, 920; *pret. pl.* redene, 485; *p.p.* redene, 2598, redyne, 52, 100.
- Ryealle. *See* Reale.
- Ryfe, 362, Rywe, 2439, *v.* rive, rend, split, pierce; 3 *s.* ryfez, 794, 1474, ryvys, 3824; *pl.* ryffes, 2913.
- Ryghte, *adv.* straight, 889.
- Ryghttene. *See* Reghttes.
- Ryghttez, 894, 1439, Ryghtys, 610, *s. pl.*
- Ryghtwise, *adj.* righteous, 866.
- Ryndes, 3363, Ryndez, 921, 1884, *s. pl.* trees.
- Ryne, *v.* run, 109, 3990; 3 *s.* rynez, 1121, ryynnys, 31, 62, 540; *pret.* rane, 1526, 2881, ryynyde, 2965, ryynyd, 920; *pret. pl.* ron-nene, 922; *i. p.* ryynande, 392, 795.
- Ryngne, *v.* ring, 4332; *p.p.* rungene, 462, rounge, 1587, rongene, 976.
- Ryngne, Ryngnede, Ryngnes. *See* Regne.
- Rynisch, *adj.* either Rhenish, or strange, foreign, 203. *See* *Runisch* in Glossary to *Alliterative Poems*.
- Rynnande, Rynez, Ryynyde, &c. *See* Ryne.
- Rynsede, *p.p.* rinsed, 3375.
- Ryot, 456, 785, Ryott, 341, Ryotte, 923, 1883, *v.* ravage; (with the reflexive pronoun) run riot; 3 *s.* ryottez, 619, riotes, 3172.
- Ryotous, 379, 432, Riotous, 363, *adj.*
- Ryotte, *s.* uncontrolled license, riot, 294, 412; *pl.* riotes, 388, ryotes, 3593.
- Rype, *v.* search, 1877; 3 *s.* rypes, 3940.
- Rysses, *v.* 3 *s.* rises, 3660.
- Ryste, Rystede, &c. *See* Riste.
- Ryues, *s. pl.* (?) 1764.
- Ryvaye. *See* Renaye.
- Ryve (= aryve), *v.* land, 3896.
- Ryvys, Rywe. *See* Ryfe.
- Sa, *adv.* so, 3796, 3870.
- Sabyll, 771, Sable, 2027, *s.* sable, black.
- Sadde, *adj.* satisfied, 847. Ger. *satt*.
- Sade, *adj.* sad, 3948; *comp.* sad-dare, 3289.
- Sadilles, 1801, Sadylls, 1855, *s. pl.* saddles.
- Sadly, 331, 1685, 2466, Saddly, 1458, *adv.*

- Safe, *v.* save, 3051.
- Sagge, *adj.* sage, wise, 814.
- Saghetylle, *v.* become reconciled, 330.
- Saise, *v.* 3 *s.* says, 1162; *imp.* 2 *pl.* saise, 1267.
- Sakles, 3986, 3992, Sakeles, 3399, *adj.* innocent.
- Sale, *s.* hall, 82, 91, 134, 409.
- Salle, 1364. *Read* Sable.
- Salle, *v.* shall, 16, 105, shalt, 111, 152.
- Salue, *v.* salute; 3 *s.* saluz, 87; *pret.* saluzed, 82, saluzede, 953.
- Salue, *s.* salve; *pl.* saluez, 2691.
- Salue, *v.* heal, 932; *p.p.* saluede, 2907.
- Sandes, 513. Perhaps a mistake for *sandesman*.
- Sandes-mane, *s.* messenger, 1419; *pl.* sandismene, 266.
- Sare, *adv.* sore, sorely, 134, 2248.
- Satanase, *s.* Satan, 3812.
- Satilles, *v.* *pl.* settle, descend, 2465.
- Saughte, *s.* peace, reconciliation, 1007, 1548, 3052.
- Saule, 666, 1062, Saulle, 2192, Sawle, 1169, *s.* soul.
- Saunke, *s.* blood, 179.
- Sawghte, *adj.* at peace, reconciled, peaceable, 3194, 4042.
- Sawle. *See* Saule.
- Sawtere, 3316, Sawtire, 3421, *s.* psalter.
- Sawturoure, *s.* saltire, one of the ordinaries in heraldry, 4182.
- Sayne, *v.* bless, cross (oneself), 969; *pret.* sayned, 1042, saynned, 966.
- Scathylle. *See* Skathelle.
- Schadande, *i. p.* shedding, flowing, 3845.
- Schafte, *s.* shaft (of a spear), 2169.
- Schaft-monde, *s.* 2546, 3843, 4232. "A measure, from the top of the extended thumb to the utmost part of the palm, which in a tall man is about six inches, or half a foot."—Bosworth's A.S. Dict. under *Scaft-mund*.
- Schake, *v.* shake, proceed, 1213, 1992.
- Schakke, *s.* sudden movement, 1759.
- Schalke = chalk, 1226, 1363.
- Schalke, *s.* man, 1098, 2170, *pl.* schalkes, 1857, schalkez, 2211.
- Schalle, *v.* shall, 7, 148, shalt, 102.
- Schalyde, *p.p.* scaled, 766.
- Schamely, *adv.* shamefully, 2616.
- Schamesdede, *s.* deed of shame, 3.
- Schanke, *s.* shank, leg, 3845; *pl.* schankez, 1099.
- Schape, *v.* shape, form, prepare, 342, 1324, 2588, 3400; *pret.* schoupe, 3599.
- Schappely, *adv.* fitly, 2333.
- Schappes, *v.* 3 *s.* shapes, destines, 1716.
- Schare. *See* Schere.
- Scharlette, *s.* scarlet, 3459.
- Scharpe, *s.* 3841.
- Scharpely, *adv.* sharply, smartly, 1212, 2429, 2456.
- Schathe. *See* Skathe.
- Schawe, 2406. *Read* Schewe.
- Schawe, *s.* wood, 1765; *pl.* schawes, 1723, 1760.
- Schaylande, *adj.* (1) scaly, 1098.
- Schede, 2922, Schedde, 3398, *v.* *pret.* shed, poured.
- Scheene, 1760, 2457, Schene, 2129, 3747, Schenne, 2676, *adj.* fair, beautiful.
- Scheftene, Scheftys. *See* Skyfte.
- Schelde, 914, 1110, Schilde, 3714, Schylde, 2984, *s.* shield; *pl.* scheldez, 595, scheldys, 2545.

- Schelde, *v.* shield, 3.
- Scheldyde, *adj.* having shields, 1856.
- Scheltrone, 2106, 2922, Schiltrone, 1856, Sheltrone, 1992, *s.* troop, band; *pl.* schiltrounis, 1765, schiltrouns, 1813, 2210. The older form is *schiltrum*. A.S. *scyld*, shield, *truma*, troop.
- Schenchipe, *s.* disgrace, 4299.
- Schende, *v.* ruin, disgrace, confound, 2435.
- Schene. *See* Scheene.
- Schepe, *s.* sheep, 2922.
- Schere, *v.* shear, cut, 2546; 3 *s.* scherys, 3600; *pret.* schare, 3843, scherde, 1856, 2545.
- Scherenkene. *See* Schrenkys.
- Schethede, *p.p.* sheathed, 3852.
- Scheurede, *v. pret.* shivered, split, 1813; *p.p.* scheuride, 3748.
- Schewe, *v.* show, 191, 1183, appear, 1717; *inf.* schewene, 2457.
- Schewynge, *s.* showing, manifestation, 3401.
- Schifte, Schiftys. *See* Skyfte.
- Schilde. *See* Schelde.
- Schiltrone, Schiltrounis. *See* Scheltrone.
- Schippemene, *s. pl.* shipmen, sailors, 1212.
- Schire, 1760, 2169, Schyre, 1213, 3600, *adj.* bright.
- Schirreues, *s. pl.* sheriffs, 725.
- Scho, *pron.* she, 853, 860.
- Schoderede, 3844, Schoderide, 2106, Schodirde, 4234, Schodyrde, 2169, *v. pret.* shuddered, shook, quivered.
- Schokke, *v.* shock, jog, move or throw with violence, 4114; 3 *s.* schokkes, 3816, 3852, 4235; *pl.* schokkes, 1759.
- Scholde, 1031, 1719, Schoulde, 3611, *v.* should.
- Schone, *s. pl.* shoes, 3471.
- Schone, 1717, 1719, Schoune, 314, *v.* shun, avoid, get or keep out of the way; 3 *s.* schownnes, 3599.
- Schonte, Schontez. *See* Schountes.
- Schore, *s.* score, 2344, 3577.
- Schorte, at the, shortly, soon, 1325.
- Schotande. *See* Schotte.
- Schotene, *v. pl.* shut, 749.
- Schotte, *v.* shoot, 1992; *pl.* schottes, 2426; *pret.* schotte, 1765; *i. p.* schotande, 1766.
- Schotte, *s.* shot, shooting, 2105, 2428; *pl.* schotys, 3627.
- Schotte-mene, *s. pl.* shooters, 2467.
- Schouelle-fotede, *adj.* shovel-footed, 1098.
- Schouene, 2333, Schoue, 2335, *v. pret. pl.* shaved.
- Schoulders, *s. pl.* shoulders, 2546.
- Schoune. *See* Schone.
- Schountes, 3816, Schownttes, 3715, 3842, Schuntes, 1055, *v.* 3 *s.* turns aside, shrinks away, hesitates, delays; *pl.* schontez, 1759; *pret.* schonte, 2106, 2428, schounte, 736; *imp.* 2 *s.* schunte, 1324.
- Schoupe. *See* Schape.
- Schove, *v.* shove, thrust, 3847.
- Schowande, *i. p.* (?) shuffling, 1099.
- Schowannes. *See* Schone.
- Schownttes. *See* Schountes.
- Schragges, *s. pl.* jagged ends, 3473.
- Schrede, *v. pret.* cut, 2211, 4167; *p.p.* schrede, 2688.
- Schrede, 3991, Schreede, 767, *p.p.* clothed.
- Schreddez, 905, Schredys, 3473, *s. pl.* shreds.
- Schrenkys, *v.* 3 *s.* shrinks, 4234; *pl.* scherenkene, 2105; *p.p.*

- schrenkede, wrinkled, 2211; *i. p.* schrenkande, wrinkling, 1857.
- Schrewe, *s.* wicked person, 2779.
- Schrifte, *s.* schrift, confession, 2588.
- Schrinkande, *i. p.* shrinking, wrinkling, 767.
- Schrowde, *s.* dress, 3628. A.S. *scrád*, garment.
- Schryfe, *v.* confess, 3400.
- Schrympe, *s.* deformed creature, monster (applied to a dragon), 767.
- Schrynede, *p.p.* shrined, 3991.
- Schulde, *v.* should, 3183, 3791.
- Schuldrez, 1157, Schuldrys, 3294, Shoulders, 2546, *s. pl.* shoulders.
- Schunte, Schuntes. *See* Schountes.
- Schwede = schewede, showed, 4233.
- Schyfte. *See* Skyfte.
- Schylde. *See* Schelde.
- Schynbawde, *s.* 3846, seems to mean the *greave* or shin-plate; but the form of the word leads one to think that it originally meant *shin-belt*, probably a piece of chain-armor or other defence bound round the leg. *See* Glossary to *Syr Gawayne*, ed. Madden. Compare Eng. *baldrick* and Lat. *balteus*.
- “He, and his gambesoũns, glomede als gledys,
With graynes of rubyes, that graythede were gaye
And his schene schynbawdes, scharpe for to schrede.”
The Awntyrs of Arthure, ed. Madden, stanza xxxi.
- Schyre. *See* Schire.
- Scoulders, 766. *Read* Shoulders.
- Scrippe, *s.* 3474.
- Seche, Sechis. *See* Seke.
- See, *s.* seat, 3291, 3350.
- See, *s.* sea, 490, 1402.
- Seegge, *s.* seat, proper place, 2473.
- Seegge. *See* Segge.
- Seese, *v. pl.* see, 1405.
- Segge, 134, 1043, Seegge, 1574, *s.* man; *pl.* seggez, 1420, 1422. A.S. *secg*.
- Segge, 355, *s.* siege.
- Seggede, *v. pret.* besieged, 3011.
- Segnourry, *s.* lordship, 528.
- Sekadrisses, *s. pl.* 2283. There is surely some mistake here; perhaps we ought to read *cokadrilles* = crocodiles (compare Span. *cocodrillo*) or *cokatrisses*, which may have the same meaning, since Roquefort gives, “*Cocutrice, cocatrix: Crocodile.*” Either suits the alliteration, gives some sense, and might by a slight mistake of the scribe be turned into *sekadrisses*, which gives no sense at all. Crocodiles in a Roman camp are not more out of place than camels and elephants are when crossing the Alps with coffins on their backs! *See* p. 69.
- Seke, *adj.* sick, 1574.
- Seke, 105, 937, 1296, Seche, 3233, *v.* seek, make for, go (towards); 2 *s.* sechis, 3507; *pret.* soghte, 1041, soughte, 720, 2170; *inf.* sekene, 898; *p.p.* soghte, 1171.
- Sekere, 1173, 1458, Sekire, 4313, Sekyre, 478, 551, *adj.* sure, safe, trusty; *comp.* sekerare, 3289; *superl.* sekereste, 1492.
- Sekerly, 441, 969, Sekirly, 3499, Sekyrly, 439, 1420, *adv.* surely, certainly, safely.
- Sekire, *v.* ensure, 2585, 3804.
- Sektour, *s.* executor, 665.
- Selcouthe, 75, 1298, 3531, Selkouthe, 1948, *adj.* strange, rare.
- Seldene, *adv.* seldom, 1163.
- Sele, *s.* seal, 85.
- Selfene, 331, 338, Seluene, 1, 8, Seluyne, 10, 34, self.
- Selkouthe. *See* Selcouthe.

- Selkouthely, *adv.* strangely, 3252.
- Selkylde, 3356. Perhaps miswritten for 'Serkyld,' encircled.
- Seluene, Seluyne. *See* Selfene.
- Semblant, *s.* show, splendour, 75, 410.
- Semble, *v.* assemble, gather, meet, 63, 967; *pl.* sembles, 3748; *pret.* sembled, 409, 1457; *p.p.* sembled, 70.
- Semes, 1672, Semez, 133, 1162, Semys, 1418, *impers. v.* seems; *pret.* semede, 123, semyde, 193. It is often used with the objective case of the personal pronouns: the semes = thou seemest, 1672; them semyde = they seemed, 193.
- Semliche, 3947, Semlyche, 655, Semly, 410, 1949, *adj.* seemly, comely, goodly.
- Semliche, 3316, Semlyly, 3787, *adv.* in a comely manner, well.
- Sen, 127, 142, Sene, 526, 952, *adv. or conj.* since.
- Sendelle, *s.* fine linen, 2299.
- Sengely, 2434, Sengilly, 471, 2592, Sengly, 3729, *adv.* singly, alone.
- Sent, *s.* scent, 1040.
- Sent, *s.* assent, consent, 1628, 2615, 3065.
- Sepulture, *s.* burial, 4340.
- Sere, *adj.* various, diverse, separate, 192, 607, 1576, 3195.
- Serfe, *v.* serve, 1220; *pret.* serfede, 892.
- Serfede, 1068. *See* Serues.
- Sergeaunt, *s.* servant, 632; *pl.* sergeantes, 1173.
- Serte, *s.* desert, 2926; *pl.* sertes, 513. Compare *serve* for *deserve*.
- Seruez, *v. pl.* serve, 1168.
- Serues, *v. pl.* deserve, 1315; *p.p.* seruede, 2590, serfede, 1068.
- Ses, *v. 3 s.* sees, 3941.
- Sesez, *v. 3 s.* seizes, 1500.
- Seside, *v. pret.* put in possession, 3065; *p.p.* sessed, 2608.
- Sessed, *v. pret.* ceased, 2132.
- Sesyne, *s.* seizin, 3588.
- Sete, 3315, Sette, 1305, *s.* seat.
- Seterdaye, *s.* Saturday, 1550, 3176.
- Sethene. *See* Sythene.
- Setille, *s.* settle, seat, 3270.
- Seuende, *adj.* seventh, 488.
- Seuenschore, seven score, 3788.
- Seuenyghte, *s.* week, 153, 380, 3182.
- Sewes, *s. pl.* stews, pottages, 192.
- Sewe, *v.* follow, 2927; *pret.* sewede, 3288; *i. p.* sewande, 81.
- Sex, *adj.* six, 354, 380; sex sum = six in all, 471.
- Sexte, *adj.* sixth, 3316, 3416.
- Sextene, *adj.* sixteen, 81, 105.
- Sexti, Sixty, *adj.* sixty, 179, 210, 601.
- Sexti-faulde, *adj.* sixtyfold, 2299.
- Seyne, *s.* sign, 2055, 2870.
- Seyne, *p.p.* seen, 3985.
- Seyne, *adv.* afterwards, 188, 192, 282, 1591.
- Seyngnour, 3313, Seyn3owre, 2419, *s.* lord; *pl.* seynowres, 1577.
- Seynt, *s.* saint, 1169; *pl.* seyntez, 1163, 1168.
- Sheltrone. *See* Scheltrone.
- Sibb, 3984, Sybb, 645, 3891, Sybbe, 681, *adj.* related, akin.
- Siche. *See* Swylke.
- Siluer, *s.* 1165.
- Silueryne, *adj.* made of silver, 185.
- Singulere, *adj.* single, by himself, 172.
- Sir, 3288, Syr, 3312, Syre, 3134, *s.* lord.

- Sittande, *i. p.* becoming, suitable, 953, 1501.
- Sittandly, *adv.* becomingly, 159.
- Sittene, *p. p.* sat, 3291.
- Skalopis, *s. pl.* scallop-shells, 3474.
- Skape, *v.* escape, 1562.
- Skathe, 1643, 1841, 3119, Schathe, 292, *s.* hurt, damage.
- Skathelle, 1642, Scathylle, 32, *adj.* hurtful.
- Skathlye, *adj.* hurtful, 1562.
- Skayles, *v. 3 s.* scales, 3034.
- Skayres, *v. pl.* scare, frighten, 2468.
- Skewe, *v.* eschew, escape, 1562.
- Skiftez. *See* Skyfte.
- Skilfulle, *adj.* reasonable, right, 1561.
- Skomfite, *s.* discomfit, 2335.
- Skomfite, *p. p.* discomfited, 1644.
- Skomfitoure, *s.* discomfiter, one who discomfits, 1644.
- Skomfytüre, *s.* discomfiture, 1561.
- Skorne, *v.* scorn, 1642; *pret.* skornede, 1840.
- Skornefulle, *adj.* 1840.
- Skotiferis, 3034, Skottefers, 2468, *s. pl.* shield-bearers. Compare Lat. *scutiferi*, squires.
- Skouerours, *s. pl.* explorers, scouts, 3118.
- Skoulkery, *s.* lurking, ambush, 1644.
- Skowtte-waches, *s. pl.* sentinels, 2468.
- Skrogges, 1641, Skroggez, 1642, *s. pl.* stunted bushes, shrubs. *Sc. scrog.*
- Skulker, *s.* 3119.
- Skyfte, 1643, Schifte, 1213, 1325, *v.* shift, dispose, manage; 3 *s.* skiftez, 1561, skyftys, 32; *pl.* skyftes, 3117, schiftys, 725, schef-
tene, 3627, scheftys, 2456, schyfte, 3847; *imp. 2 s.* schyft, 1717.
- Skylle, *s.* reason, skill, 32.
- Skyrmys, *v. pl.* fight, skirmish, 2467.
- Slade, *s.* green valley, 2978.
- Slakes, *v. 3 s.* slackens, loosens, 3220.
- Slakkes, *s. pl.* (?) pools of water in slack or hollow places, 3719.
- Slale, *adj.* (?) 3117.
- Slaughte, *s.* slaughter, 2675.
- Slawe, *adj.* slow, dull, 4044.
- Slawyne, *s.* slavein, pilgrim's mantle, 3474.
- Slayne, *p. p.* slain, 1824, 2977.
- Sleghe, *adj.* sly, cunning, clever, 2978.
- Sleghte, 3220, Sleyghte, 3418, 4045, *s.* sleight, skill, craft.
- Sleghte, *p. p.* slipped, 2675.
- Slely, 3855, Sleyghly, 2975, Sleyghely, 4321, *adv.* slyly, prudently, cleverly.
- Slepe, *v.* sleep, 4044.
- Sleppes, *v. 3 s.* slips, 2976; *pret.* sleppid, 3854.
- Slewe, *v. pret.* 3418.
- Slewthe, *s.* sloth, 3221.
- Sleyghly, Sleyghely. *See* Slely.
- Sleyghte. *See* Sleghte.
- Slode, *v. pret.* slid, 3854.
- Slomowre, *s.* slumber, 3221.
- Slomyre, *v.* slumber, 4044.
- Slongene, *p. p.* slung, 2978, 4321.
- Sloppes, *s. pl.* pools, 3923.
- Slote, 2254, Slotte, 2975, *s.* pit of the stomach.
- Slottede, *p. p.* stabbed in the pit of the stomach, 3853.
- Sloghe, 23, Slowghe, 4045, Slewe, 3418, *v. pret.* slew.
- Slowde, *s.* slush, sludge, 3719.

- Slowghe. *See* Sloughe.
- Slydande, *i. p.* sliding, 2976.
- Slyke, *adj.* such, 3719. *See* Swylke.
- Slynges, *v.* 3 *s.* slings, throws, 3220, 3855.
- Slytte, *s.* slit, 3853.
- Slyttes, *v.* 3 *s.* slits, 2254, 2975.
- Smyttes, 2564, Smyttez, 1148, *v.* 3 *s.* smites.
- Snelle, *adj.* swift, 57.
- Socoure, *v.* succour, 2276.
- Socoure, 2317, Socure, 1438, *s.* succour.
- Sodanly, 80, 599, 1422, Sodaynliche, 3270, Sodaynly, 632, 1980, *adv.* suddenly.
- Softe, *adj.* softening, melting, 3983.
- Softene, *v.* soften, ease, 2691.
- Soghte. *See* Seke.
- Soiorne, 4027, Soiourne, 4042, *v.* sojourn.
- Solauce, *s.* solace, recreation, 239, 659.
- Solemply, 3196, 3805, Solempnely, 1948, Solempnylye, 525, *adv.* solemnly.
- Solempnitee, *s.* solemnity, 514.
- Som, *adj.* some, 3683.
- Somercastelle, *s.* wooden tower, 3033.
- Somme, *s.* sum, 448, 2347.
- Somond, 1212, Somounde, 525, *v. pret.* summoned; *p.p.* somonde, 140, sommonde, 267.
- Somouns, *s.* summons, 91, 104.
- Sonde, *s.* something sent, 2511.
- Sonde, *s.* sand, 3728, 3745.
- Sondire, 2182, Sondre, 1123, Sondyre, 1388, 1482; *in s.* = asunder.
- Sondirwise, *adv.* separately, 3529.
- Sone, *s.* son, 1945.
- Sone, 170, 1022, Sonne, 2222, *adv.* soon.
- Songene, *v. pret. pl.* sang, 745, 2674.
- Sonne, 1978, 2511, Sone, 4035, *s. sun.*
- Sonodaye, *s.* Sunday, 501, 2482.
- Soo, *adv.* so, 1841.
- Sope, *s.* sup, hasty meal, 1890.
- Soppe, *s.* crowd, company, troop, band, 1493, 2818, 3729.
- Sore, *s.* disease, 932.
- Sore, *adv.* sorely, 1173; *comp.* sorere, 1163.
- Sorowe, *s.* 1138, 2224.
- Serte, *s.* troop, company, band, 63, 410, 1575; *pl.* sortes, 606.
- Sothe, *adj.* true, 1686; *for sothe, truly,* 1087.
- Sothe, *s.* truth, 3229.
- Sothely, *adv.* truly, 172, 239, 319.
- Sott, 1044, Sotte, 847, 1060, *s.* sot.
- Soueraygne, *adj.* 1167.
- Soueraygne, 1298, 1330, Soueraygne, 141, *s.* sovereign; *pl.* souerayngez, 1960.
- Soughte. *See* Seke.
- Soupe. *See* Sowpe.
- Sowdane, *s.* soldan, sultan, 590, 1295; *pl.* sowdanes, 593.
- Sowdeours, *s. pl.* hired warriors, mercenaries, 551, 593, 2925, 2938.
- Sowe, *s.* some warlike engine, 3033. *See* Sow *in* Jamieson.
- Sowmes, *s. pl.* sums, 1627.
- Sownde, *adj.* 1577.
- Sowpe, 1298, Soupe, 3805, *v. sup;* 3 *s.* sowppes, 1025; *pret.* sowpped, 409; *i. p.* sowpande, 1044.
- Sowper, *s.* supper, 1022.

- Sowre, 1041. *Read Sowrs*, source.
- Sowte. *See* Soyte.
- Soyte, 81, 3931, Sowte, 3941, *s.* suit, company.
- Spakely, *adv.* swiftly, quickly, 2063.
- Spalddyd, *p.p.* split, 3699.
- Spanne, *s.* span, 2060.
- Spayre, *s.* the spare or thin part of the body, the waist, 2060.
- Specyalle, *adj.* 999.
- Spede, *v.* fare, succeed, 2414, speed, hasten, 2416; *pret.* spede, 1794; *p.p.* spede, 3016.
- Speke, *v.* speak, 2415; 3 *s.* spekes, 2063.
- Spekes, *s. pl.* spokes (of a wheel), 3264, 3311.
- Speltis, *s. pl.* thin streaks or splinters, 3264.
- Spencis, *s. pl.* expenditure, 3163.
- Spendyde, *v. pret.* spent, 235.
- Spere, *s.* spear, 1794; *pl.* sperys, 1898.
- Spere-lenghe, *adj.* spearlength, of the length of a spear, 3311.
- Speryt, *s.* spirit, 4327.
- Spille, *v.* perish, 2415; *pl.* spillis, destroy, 3159.
- Spleene, *s.* 2061.
- Splent, *s.* splint, 2061. "Splents. In ancient armour, several little plates that run over each other, and protected the inside of the arm." *Halliwel*. They were also worn on the leg (see Jamieson under *Splentis*), and probably on other parts of the body.
- Splentide, *p.p.* splinted, adorned with splinters, 3264.
- Sponene, *p.p.* spun, 999.
- Spoures, 483, Spurres, 2416, *s. pl.* spurs.
- Spraddene. *See* Sprede.
- Sprangene. *See* Sprynges.
- Sprede, *v.* spread, 3158; *pret.* sprede, 2062; *pret. pl.* spraddene, 3310.
- Sprente, 2062, 3310, Sprentyde, 3700, *v. pret.* sprang, leapt.
- Springande, Sprongene. *See* Sprynges.
- Sproulez, *v.* 3 *s.* sprawls, 2063.
- Sprynges, *v.* 3 *s.* springs, 3162; *pl.* spryngene, 3158; *pret. pl.* sprangene, 483; *i. p.* springande, 3265; *p.p.* sprongene, 1943, burst, 1794, sprongene, 3699.
- Spycerye, *s.* 162.
- Spytte, *s.* spite, 270.
- Sqwwere, *s.* squire, 1179.
- Stade, *p.p.* set, placed, 1926.
- Stake, *v.* put on a stake, 1178.
- Stale, *s.* company, troop, 377, 1355, 1435, 1932; *pl.* stales, 1980.
- Stalkis, *v.* 3 *s.* 3466.
- Stam, *s.* foreship, 3664.
- Stamyne, *s.* some part of a ship, 3658.
- Standerde, *s.* 2080.
- Statte, *s.* state, rank, 157.
- Stedde, *p.p.* beset, 2824, 4133.
- Stede, *s.* stead, place, 1748, 2824.
- Stede, *s.* steed, horse, 1355; *pl.* stedes, 1280, stedys, 1488, 1647.
- Stekes, *v. pl.* stick, stab, 3126; 3 *s.* stekys, 3822; *pret.* stekede, 1488.
- Stele, *s.* steel, 1371, 1487.
- Stelene, 1488, 2129, Stelyne, 1354, *adj.* steelen, made of steel.
- Stepes, *v.* 3 *s.* steps, 1229.
- Sterape, 2692, Sterepe, 916, *s.* stirrup; *pl.* sterapes, 3823.
- Stere-bourde, 745, Stere-burde, 3665, *s.* starboard.
- Sterenefulle, 3824, Sterynfulle, 2692, *adj.* stern, fierce.

- Steride, Steris. *See* Stire.
- Stertez, 1104, Sterttes, 1355, Stirttez, 1932, Styrtez, 1152, *v.* 3 *s.* starts; *pl.* stirttes, 2692; *pret.* sterte, 916.
- Steryne, 157, 377, 735, Sterynne, 3622, *adj.* stern; *superl.* steryn-
neste, 3872.
- Steryntyly, *adv.* sternly, 745, 2130.
- Sterys. *See* Stire.
- Steuen, *s.* voice, 2531, 4269.
- Stewede, *v.* *pret.* enclosed, 1489.
"Estuier: Serrer, mettre dans un
étui, cacher, enfermer, renfermer,
envelopper, emprisonner."—*Roque-
fort.*
- Stire, 2823, Styre, 4038, *v.* stir,
move; 3 *s.* sterys, 917; *pl.* steris,
2923, 3658; *pret.* steride, 1793;
imp. 2 *pl.* stirrez, 1748.
- Stirttes, Stirttez. *See* Stertez.
- Stizttelys, *v.* *pl.* arrange, 3622.
- Stodde, Stode. *See* Stondez.
- Stokes, *s.* *pl.* (?) estocs, or stab-
bing swords, 1436.
- Stokes, *v.* *pl.* stab, 2554. "*Esto-
quer, estoquier*: Frapper, pousser,
casser, rompre, briser." *Roquefort.*
- Stokkes, *s.* *pl.* 3665.
- Stonays, *v.* *pl.* stuns, hits stun-
ning blows, 2118; *p.p.* stonayede,
1933, 3873.
- Stondez, 2090, Stonndys, 3623,
v. *pl.* stand; *pret.* stode, 1489,
2923, stodde, 4133.
- Stotais, 1435, Stotays, 3467,
4271, *v.* 3 *s.* becomes foolish, mad,
dizzy, or stupid. "*Estoutir, es-
toutoyer*: Être fou, imprudent,
avoir de la témérité, être insensé;
stultescere." *Roquefort.* Burguy
gives the forms "*estoteier, estou-
teier, estuteier, estoutoier, estotoier*,"
but with the meaning "*maltraiter*."
- Stour, 377, 1747, Stoure, 1488,
Stowre, 2086, *s.* battle.
- Stownde, *s.* time, 3974; *pl.*
stowndys, 3888.
- Stownntyng, *s.* stopping, delay,
491.
- Stowre. *See* Stour.
- Strake. *See* Stryke.
- Strandez, 598, 883, 947, 1227,
1337, Strandys, 3626, Strondes,
4067, *s.* *pl.* waters.
- Strates, 561, Straytez, 3009, *s.*
pl. straits, narrow places.
- Strayte, 1933, Straytt, 1230,
adj. strait, narrow.
- Streke, *adv.* straight, 1792, 3101.
- Strekes, Strekyne. *See* Stryke.
- Strekez, *v.* 3 *s.* stretches, 1229,
2085.
- Streme, *s.* stream, 755; *pl.*
stremes, 1224.
- Strenghe, 258, 376, Strenghte,
796, *s.* strength; strong place,
1230, 1435; *pl.* strenghes, forces,
1475, 2242, strenghez, 1827,
strengethis, 3322.
- Strenghely, *adv.* strongly, 4096.
- Strette, *s.* street, road, 3467.
- Streynez, *v.* 3 *s.* exerts, 917.
- Strondes. *See* Strandez.
- Stroye, 1927, Struye, 561, *v.* de-
stroy; *pl.* stroyene, 3127; *p.p.*
stroyede, 1933, struyede, 1205.
- Stryke, *v.* strike, smite; 3 *s.*
strykez, 1124, strykkes, 1480; *pl.*
strykkys, 1411, strekes, 3101;
pret. strake, 2080, 2129; *pret.* *pl.*
strekyne, 755, 3659.
- Studyande, *i. p.* studying, 3467.
- Stuffe, *v.* furnish, 1932; *pl.* stuf-
fene, 2369; *pret.* stuffede, 3616.
- Sturdely, *adv.* sturdily, 1104.
- Stye, *s.* path, 3466.
- Styghtylle, *v.* order, arrange, 157.
- Stynte, *v.* cease, 3127.
- Styre. *See* Stire.

- Styrtez. *See* Stertez.
 Subarbe, *s.* suburbs, 4043; *pl.* subarbis, 3122, subbarbes, 2466.
 Subgettez. *See* Sugett.
 Suerddes. *See* Swerde.
 Sugett, 87, Sugette, 3138, *s.* subject; *pl.* subgettez, 2314.
 Suggourne, *v.* sojourn, 153, 354, 1335; 3 *s.* suggeourns, 54, suggournez, 624.
 Sulayne, *adj.* alone, 2592.
 Sulde, *v. subj. pret.* should, 72, 213, 214.
 Sundryre, *v. part.* separate, 7.
 Suppowelle, *v.* support, 2818.
 Supprisede, 2616, Supprissede, 1345, Supprysede, 3797, Supprysede, 1951, Suppryside, 1420, *p.p.* taken unawares, overtaken, surprised.
 Surcott, 3252, Surcotte, 2434, *s.* surcoat.
 Surepel, *s.* cover, 3317.
 Surgyne, *s.* surgeon, 4311.
 Surrawns, *s.* assurance, security, 3181.
 Surs, *s.* rising, rise, 1978, 2511, 3468.
 Suteleste, *adj.* subtlest, 808.
 Suyche. *See* Swylke.
 Suyte, 179, 210, 528, Suytte, 3139, *s.* suit.
 Swafres, *v.* 3 *s.* staggers, 3970. *Sc. swaver*, to walk feebly. *Jamieson*.
 Swalters, *v.* 3 *s.* (?) 3924.
 Swange, *s.* loins, 1129.
 Swangene, *v. pret. pl.* swung, 2146.
 Swanke, *v. pret.* toiled, 2961, 3361.
 Swape, *s.* blow, stroke, 314.
 Swappes, 4244, Swappez, 1126, 1129, *v.* 3 *s.* smites, strikes; *pl.* swappene, 1464, swappez, 1465; *pret.* swappede, 1795.
 Swarthe, *s.* sward, grassy ground, 1126, 1466, 2145, 2960.
 Swathes, *s. pl.* 2508.
 Swayne, *s.* 3360.
 Swefene, *s.* dream, 812; *pl.* swefennys, 3228.
 Swefnynge, *s.* dreaming, 759.
 Swelte, *v. die*, 716, 813; 3 *s.* sweltes, 2961, faints, 3069; *pl.* sweltez, 1466; *pret.* swelte, 2952; *i. p.* sweltand, 2146, sweltande, 1465.
 Sweperly, *adv.* quickly, nimbly, 1128, 1465. *Sc. swipper*, quick, swift, nimble. *Jamieson*.
 Sweppene, *p.p.* swept, 2508.
 Swerde, *s.* sword, 47, 715; *pl.* swerddez, 1253, suerddes, 314.
 Swete, 3703, 4223, Swett, 2145, Swette, 3360, *s.* life.
 Swetly, 3970, Swettly, 1297, *adv.* sweetly.
 Sweyftly, *adv.* swiftly, 3703.
 Sweys, *v.* 3 *s.* sways, 57; *pl.* 1467, 3676, 4273.
 Swiche. *See* Swylke.
 Swoghe, *s.* swaying motion, 759.
 Swoghe, *s.* swoon, 1467.
 Swoughe, *s.* whirr, 1127.
 Swoune, *s.* swoon, 3969.
 Swounes, *v.* 3 *s.* swoons, 1127; *i. p.* swounande, 1467, 2960.
 Swowyng, *s.* sound, 931.
 Swyer, *s.* squire, 2959, 3703.
 Swykede, 1795, Swykkede, 3361, *v. pret.* deceived.
 Swylke, 403, Swiche, 3000, Suyche, 529, Slyke, 3719, Siche, 967, 1031, Syche, 76, 226, *adj.* such.
 Swym, *s.* swoon, 4246.
 Swyng, *s.* swing, 3360, 3676, 4223.

- Swyre-bane, *s.* neckbone, 2959.
 Sywthe, *adv.* quickly, swiftly, 185, 409, 715, very, 1949; as swythe = immediately, 813.
 Sybb, Sybbe. *See* Sibb.
 Sybredyne, *s.* kindred, 691, 4145.
 Syche. *See* Swylke.
 Sydlyngs, *adv.* sidelong, sideways, 1039, 1043.
 Sydys, *s. pl.* sides, 2148.
 Syene. *See* Syne.
 Syghande, 3794, Sygheande, 3891, *i. p.* sighing.
 Syland, 1297, Sylande, 3794, 4340, *i. p.* flowing.
 Syluerene, *adj.* silvern, made of silver, 1949.
 Sylure, *s.* canopy, 3194.
 Symple, *adj.* mean, 684, few, 967.
 Syne, *s.* sin, 3315, 3986.
 Syne, 85, 1182, 3216, Syene, 4033, Synne, 3435, *adv.* afterwards.
 Synchalle, 1871, Syneschalle, 1910, *s.* seneschal.
 Synglere, *s.* boar, 3123.
 Syngne, *s.* sign, 3075.
 Syngulere, *adj.* single, 826.
 Synkande, *i. p.* sinking, 3705.
 Synne. *See* Syne.
 Syr, Syre. *See* Sir.
 Syte, 1060, Sytte, 1305, *s.* grief, sorrow.
 Sythene, 184, 1336, Sythine, 159, Sythyne, 56, 169, Sethene, 1977, *adv.* afterwards.
 Sythis, *s. pl.* times, 2216.
 Syttyne, *p. p.* sat, 511.
 Tabylle, *s.* table, 53.
 Tachementez, *s. pl.* attachments, 1568.
 Tachesesede (?), 821.
 Tacle, 3679, Takle, 2444, Takelle, 3618, *s.* tackle.
 Taghte, 178, Tawghte, 3202, *adj.* taught, trained.
 Tak, *v.* take, 144; take, 307, proceed, go; 3 *s.* tase, 1890, takes; *pl.* tas, 3203; *pret.* tuke, 328, 1359, 2242; *p. p.* takyne, 73, gone.
 Tale, *s.* number, 317, 335, 2933, account, 4094.
 Talmes, *v.* 3 *s.* falters, 2581. Du. *Talmen*, to loiter, linger, haggle, waver, act tediously, be irresolute or in suspense. *Sewell's Dictionary*.
 Talounez, *s. pl.* talons, claws, 800.
 Targe, *s.* round shield; *pl.* targez, 732. The targe was often emblazoned, hence at line 89, targe = arms on a seal.
 Tarsse, *s.* kind of cloth, 3189.
 Tarye, *v.* tarry, 1703.
 Tas, Tase. *See* Tak.
 Tauernez, *s. pl.* taverns, 1568.
 Taulde, *p. p.* told, 2618.
 Tawghte. *See* Taghte.
 Temez, *v.* 3 *s.* empties, 1801.
 Temperalle, *s.* 2409.
 Tempeste, *v.* 2408.
 Temporaltee, *s.* 1570.
 Tende, *adj.* heedful, attentive, intent, 1916. *Sc. tent*.
 Tende, *adj.* tenth, 73.
 Tene = ten, 1421.
 Tene, *s.* injury, wrong, grief, vexation, 1396, 1956. A.S. *teona*.
 Tenefulle, *adj.* harmful, grievous, 4280.
 Tenefully, *adv.* grievously, 272, 2345.
 Tenes, *v. pl.* harm, vex, annoy, 264. A.S. *teonun*.
 Tente, *s.* heed, attention, 3586, 4094.

- Tentyly, *adv.* heedfully, attentively, 3618.
- Teraunt, *s.* tyrant, wicked or cruel man, 842; *pl.* terauntez, 583, tirauntez, 1801, tyrauntez, 2408.
- Terez, *v.* 3 *s.* tears, 800; *pl.* terez, 1143.
- Teris, 3886, Terys, 3794, *s.* *pl.* tears.
- Tha, 77, 157, 377, Thaa, 1993, *pl.* of the.
- Thai, 1141, 1144, Thay, 1160, They, 22, *pron. n. pl.*; *gen.* thaire, 1143, 1396, their, 13, 20, thiare, 160, 3191, thire, 19; *obj.* thaim, 396, thame, 329, 923, thaim, 2276, 2280, theme, 169, them, 1886, theyme, 1889.
- Than, 1212, 2153, Thane, 64, 196, *adv.* then.
- Thar, 881, Thare, 60, 102, *adv.* there; there = where, 59, 1185.
- Thare, *impers. v.* 403; hym thare = he needs.
- Thare-aftyre, *adv.* thereafter, after that, 1495, 2028.
- Thareby, 190, Thar-by, 1186, *adv.* thereby, beside.
- Tharefore, *adv.* therefore, 2042.
- Thare-in, 1242, Thare-ine, 1254, *adv.* therein.
- Thas, 58, 432, Thase, 236, 434, *adj.* those.
- Thedyre, *adv.* thither, 2488.
- Thee, *s.* thigh, 1046; *pl.* theese, 1100.
- Theeffe, *s.* thief, 1150.
- Thees, Theis, Theise. *See* This.
- Then, 315, Thene, 1344, *conj.* than.
- Ther, *adv.* there, 884; where, 1131, 1219; there = where, 476.
- Ther-aftyre, *adv.* thereafter, 1115, according to it, 339.
- Ther-to, *adv.* thereto, also, 181.
- Ther-vndyre, *adv.* under it, 1156.
- Thes. *See* This.
- Thethene, *adv.* thence, 4345.
- Thewes, *s.* *pl.* virtues, good qualities, 21.
- Theyne = thine, 3403.
- Theys. *See* This.
- Thic = thee, 104.
- Thiere, Thire. *See* Thai.
- Thies, Thiese. *See* This.
- Thikke, *s.* thick, dense part of a crowd, 3755; *pl.* thykkys, 2216.
- Thir, Thire. *See* This.
- Thirlede, Thirleze. *See* Thyrl.
- This, *pron. or adj.* 410; *pl.* thees, 154, 167, theis, 1604, theise, 2044, thes, 48, 1356, theys, 2810, thies, 104, 264, thiese, 2723, thise, 152, 263, thys, 52, thir, 1161, 1164, thire, 993.
- Thof. *See* Thoghe.
- Thoghe, 477, 1329, Thof, 2443, Thofe, 109, 460, Thoffe, 2688, *conj.* though.
- Thoghte. *See* Thynkes.
- Thole, *v.* suffer, endure, permit, 676, 4022, 4150.
- Thoos, 156, 158, Thos, 42, 2200, *pron.* those.
- Thorowe, Thorughe. *See* Thurghe.
- Thorowely, *adv.* thoroughly, 3294.
- Thorowowte, *prep.* throughout, right through, 2170, 2986.
- Thosande, 1400, Thosanne, 1537, Thowsande, 1421, *s.* thousand.
- Thourghe. *See* Thurghe.
- Thourghe-gyrde, *p.p.* smitten through, pierced, 3683.
- Thra, 3295, Thraa, 249, *adj.* vehement, eager; *superl.* thraeste, 3756.
- Thrange, *s.* throng, 2217.
- Thrawe, *s.* throe, pang, 1150.
- Threpide, 930, Threppede, 2216, *v. pret.* strove.

- Thrette, *v.* threaten, 3295; 3 *s.* thretys, 249.
- Tbretty, *adj.* thirty, 3295.
- Thristis, *v. pl.* thrust, 3755.
- Throly, *adv.* vehemently, 1150, 2217, 4332.
- Thronge, *v.* press, 3755.
- Throo, *adj.* vehement, 3294.
- Throstilles, *s. pl.* throistles, 930.
- Throwene, *p.p.* thrown, 3694.
- Throwghe, Thrughe, Thrughte. *See* Thurghe.
- Thryftye, *adj.* 317.
- Thryngez, *v.* 3 *s.* presses, squeezes, 1150, 2217.
- Thrystez, *v.* 3 *s.* thrusts, 1151.
- Thryttene, *adj.* thirteen, 2216.
- Thurghe, 1, 215, 499, Thourghe, 1792, 2253, Thorughe, 495, Thorowe, 5, 24, Throwghe, 1772, Thrughe, 1413, Thrughte, 390, *prep.* through. A.S. *þurh*.
- Thurghe-girde, *p.p.* smitten through, 1461.
- Thursse, *s.* giant, 1100. A.S. *þyrs*.
- Thykkys. *See* Thikke.
- Thynkes, 366, 1335, Thynkys, 350, Thynkkys, 2440, *impers. v.* seems; seems good, 996; *pret.* thoghte, 495, 2479, thoughte, 3230.
- Thyrle, *v.* pierce, 1413; 3 *s.* thirlez, 2167; *pret.* thirlede, 1858, 3890; *p.p.* thyrllede, 2238, 2688.
- Thyzandez. *See* Tydandis.
- Tide, *s.* time, 3902; *pl.* tydez, 753.
- Til, 6, 36, Tille, 10, 130, Tylle, 3608, *prep.* to.
- Tiltine, *v. pl.* tilt, topple, 1144.
- Tite, 3886, 3887, Tyte, 737, 841, Tytt, 744, Tytte, 1891, 2583, *adv.* quickly; alls tite = as quickly, at once, immediately.
- Tittez, *v.* 3 *s.* makes totter, 1801.
- To, *adv.* too, 957, 1200.
- To, *conj.* till, 3182.
- To-briste, *v.* burst asunder, 3982.
- To-geders, 1050, To-gedirs, 1000, To-gedyre, 2718, *adv.* together.
- Togers, *s. pl.* clothes, 178.
- Toges, *s. pl.* togas, 3189.
- Toile, *s.* tussle, broil, 1802. *Sc. tuilyie*.
- Tolle, *s.* customs, 1568.
- Tolowris, *s. pl.* (?) tool-makers, 3618.
- To-morne, *adv.* to-morrow, 1587.
- Tonges, *s. pl.* tongues (of a dragon's tail), 821.
- Toppe, *s.* top, 1144, head, 801.
- Toppe-castelles, *s. pl.* 3616.
- To-rattys, *v. pl.* rend asunder, 2235.
- Torfere, 1956, 3451, 3567, Tourfere, 2582, *s.* harm, mischief.
- Tornys, 3015, Tournes, 1891, *v.* 3 *s.* turns; *pret.* tornede, 3203, tournede, 1052.
- To-ruscheez, *v. pl.* dash asunder, 1428.
- To-stonayed, *p.p.* utterly stunned, 1436.
- Tother, *adj.* other, 234, 3283. The first *t* is really part of the article, for *the tother* = that other, just as *the tone* = that one.
- Toure, *s.* tower, 245, 1890; *pl.* toures, 39, towrez, 1569, towrres, 3153.
- Tourfere. *See* Torfere.
- Towche, *v.* touch, 2067, concern, tell; 3 *s.* towchez, 800, 1570, 1591; *pret.* towchede, 770, towchide, 841; *i. p.* towchande, 263.
- Towne, *adj.* trained, 178.
- To-wrythes, *v.* 3 *s.* writhes, 3920.
- Towyne, *v. pl.* draw, haul, 3655.

- Toylez, 732, Toyelys, 3616, *s. pl.*
(?) gear, tools.
- Traise, *v.* 3 *s.* draws, 1629.
- Traistely, 3568, Traystely, 1976,
adv. safely, securely.
- Traistez. *See* Trayste.
- Trappede, *p.p.* covered with trap-
pings, 1757, 2150.
- Trauailled, *p.p.* who have toiled,
1947.
- Trauaylande, 1684, Trauelande,
1630, *i. p.* travelling.
- Trauayle, *s.* labour, 3566.
- Traylede, *p.p.* 250.
- Trayne, *s.* stratagem, 1630, 3901,
4192.
- Trayne, *v.* entice, deceive, 1683.
- Trays, *s.* trace, track, 4055.
- Trayste, *v.* trust, 669; 3 *s.* traistez,
1987, 2870; *pret.* traystede, 1955,
3569.
- Traystely. *See* Traistely.
- Traytoure, *s.* traitor, 2173, 4055.
- Trayuellede, *p.p.* toiled, laboured,
2357.
- Trebutte, 114, 2611, Trebutte,
2344, Tribute, 271, Tributte, 2357,
s.
- Tremlande, *i. p.* trembling, 3899.
- Trenchande, *adj.* trenchant, sharp,
3856.
- Tresone, *s.* treason, treachery,
1629, 2017.
- Tresoure, *s.* treasure, 668, 886,
991.
- Trete, *s.* (?) row, 3655.
- Trett, 250, Trette, 263, 878,
2932, *v.* treat; *p.p.* tretyd, 407,
tretide, 3191.
- Treunt, *v.* steal a march, 1976;
pret. treuntede, 3900; *p.p.* treunt,
2017.
- Trew, 263, 992, Trew, 879,
2932, *s.* truce.
- Trewage, *s.* tribute, 2358.
- Trewe, *adj.* true, 16.
- Trewghe. *See* Trewthe.
- Trewly, *adv.* truly, 2610.
- Trewthe, 3437, Trewghe, 3929,
s. truth.
- Treyntis (?), 4056.
- Trine. *See* Tryne.
- Trippe, *v.* trip, move lightly, 3713.
- Trisene, *v. pl.* trice (nautical term),
832.
- Tristily, 407, Trystily, 2357, *adv.*
trustily, faithfully.
- Tristly, 731, 1262, Trystly, 832,
adv. confidently, boldly
- Trofle, 2932, Trofulle, 1702, *v.*
trifle; *i. p.* trofelande, 1683.
- Trome, *v.* troop, 3592. *A.S.*
truma, a troop.
- Trompede, *adj.* having trumpets,
3713.
- Trompes, 1757, Tromppez, 1484,
1947, Troumppez, 4107, Troump-
pez, 1702, Trumpppez, 832, *s. pl.*
trumpets.
- Trouflynge, *s.* trifling, 114.
- Trouthe, 164, 1314, Trowthe,
1063, 1807, Trowhe, 3804, *s.* troth,
fidelity; *pl.* trowhes, 2325.
- Trow, 89, Trowe, 250, 887, 1693,
v. believe.
- Trowhe. *See* Trouthe.
- Trowmpyng, *s.* trumpeting, 3191.
- Truffles, *s. pl.* trifles, 89.
- Trumppede, *v. pret.* trumpeted,
407.
- Trumpppez. *See* Trompes.
- Trusse, *v.* truss, pack up, 3592,
stow; *inf.* trussene, 1976; *pl.*
trussez, 731, trvssene, 3655; *p.p.*
trussede, 1702.
- Trvsselle, *s.* packs, bundles, 3655.
- Tryede, *v. pret.* picked out, se-
lected, 1947. *Fr.* *trier*.

- Trymblyde, *v. pret.* trembled, 270.
 Tryne, *v. go, proceed*; trine, 1757;
 3 *s.* trynes, 3592, trynys, 4055,
 trynnys, 3901; (?) *pret. pl.* tryne,
 3192; *i. p.* trynande, 4189.
 Trystily. *See* Tristily.
 Trystly. *See* Tristly.
 Tuke. *See* Tak.
 Tumbellez, *v. pl.* tumble, 1143.
 Tunge, *s.* tongue, 1250, 1891.
 Turmenttez, *v. 2 s.* tormentest,
 1954; 3 *s.* turmentez, 3153.
 Tuskes, 1075, 3234, Tuskez, 791,
s. pl. teeth.
 Twa, *adj.* two, 171, 335.
 Twys, *adv.* twice, 716.
 Tydandis, 3450, 3899, Tythdands,
 264, Thyzandez, 1567, *s. pl.* tid-
 ings.
 Tyde, *v.* betide, happen, 879; 3
s. tyddes, 1703; *p.p.* tydd, 3654,
 tydde, 3451.
 Tydez. *See* Tide.
 Tykes, *s. pl.* dogs, 3642, 4258.
 Tylle. *See* Til.
 Tymbyrde, *p.p.* built, devised,
 3742.
 Tymede, *v. pret.* happened, 3150.
 Tyne, *v.* lose, 2933; 2 *s.* tynnez,
 1954; *p.p.* tynt, 272, 770, tynte,
 1917, 2345, = perished, 4281.
 Tyrauntly, *adv.* like a tyrant, 271.
 Tyseday, *s.* Tuesday, 3900.
 Tyte, Tytt. *See* Tite.
 Tythdands. *See* Tydandis.
 Valyaunt, *adj.* valiant, 2093.
 Vassallage, *s.* service, 2048.
 Vawewarde, *s.* vanguard, 1981.
 Velany, *s.* villany, 298, 326.
 Vencows. *See* Venquyse.
 Venemus, 299, Venymmos, 4124,
adj. venomous.
 Venge, *v.* avenge, 867; *p.p.*
 vengede, 298, 2264.
 Venquyse, 1984, Vencows, 4297,
v. vanquish; *pret.* vengwiste, 2093;
p.p. venqueste, 3765, venquiste,
 325, venqwyste, 2065.
 Ventelde, *v. pret.* spread sail to
 the wind, 737.
 Venymmos. *See* Venemus.
 Vernacle, *s.* a handkerchief said
 to have the print of Christ's face
 upon it, 297, 307.
 Vernage, *s.* a kind of drink, 204,
 3166.
 Verrayely, 3765, Verreilly, 308,
adv. truly.
 Verrede, *p.p.* spotted, 2573.
 Vertely, *adv.* readily, 3168.
 Vertous, Vertouous. *See* Vertu-
 ouse.
 Vertue, *s.* virtue, 215, 4297.
 Vertuose, 204, Vertuus, 297,
 Vertouous, 3055, Vertous, 5, *adj.*
 virtuous.
 Vescounte, Vescownte. *See* Vi-
 counte.
 Vesage, *s.* visage, 137, 3055.
 Vesare, 910, Vesere, 3054, *s.*
 visor.
 Vesettez, *v. 3 s.* visits, 1726.
 Vesselle, *s.* 3071.
 Vestoure, *s.* clothing, 3071.
 Vetaile, *s.* victuals, 3071.
 Vetaile, *v.* victual, 353; 3 *s.*
 vetailles, 3165.
 Viage, *s.* journey, expedition,
 2037, 2493.
 Vice, *s.* fault, defect, 911.
 Vicounte, 3167, Viscownte, 2047,
 Vescounte, 2024, Vescownte, 1984,
 Vyscownte, 2050, *s.*
 Visez, *v. 3 s.* purposes, 3167.
 Vmbeclappes, *v. 3 s.* embraces,
 1779.

- Vmbegrippys, *v.* 3 *s.* grasps, 3758; *pret.* vmbegrippede, 3944.
- Vmbelappes, *v.* 3 *s.* surrounds, 1819; *pret.* vmbylappyde, 3785.
- Vmbrere, *s.* part of a helmet, the movable part which shelters the face, 943, 2247, 3952.
- Vn-abaiste, *adj.* unabashed, not cast down, 1378.
- Vnblysside, *adj.* unblest, not marked with the sign of the cross, 962.
- Vnblythely, *adv.* sadly, 1434.
- Vnbrydilles, *v. pl.* unbridle, 2509.
- Vnclede, *p.p.* unclothed, 4202.
- Vncouere, *v.* uncover, 2710; *pret.* vncouerde, 739.
- Vncouthe, 1902, 3449, Vncowthe, 3514, *adj.* unknown, strange.
- Vncowpylle, *v.* uncouple, 3999.
- Vndir-takande, *i. p.* enterprising, 2723.
- Vndone, *p.p.* 1722, 3752, 3966.
- Vndrone, 2840, 3077, Vndroune, 462, *s.*
- Vndyrtakyng, *s.* 3187.
- Vne-made, *adj.* unmade, 2507.
- Vnfaire, 303, 779, 1045, Vnfayre, 2171, *adv.* badly, ill, unpleasantly.
- Vnfaye, *adj.* unharmed, sound, 2796.
- Vnfers, *adj.* unfierce, tame, 4122.
- Vnfondyde, *adj.* untried, 2485.
- Vnfraistede, 2861, Vnfraystede, 2736, *adj.* untried.
- Vnfrely, *adv.* (?) ignobly, 780.
- Vnlordly, *adj.* 1313; *adv.* 1267.
- Vnmete, *adj.* unmeet, 4070.
- Vnquellyde, *adj.* unskilled, 3810.
- Vnrekene, *adj.* (?) unpleasant, 3754.
- Vnresonable, *adj.* 3452.
- Vnryghttwyslye, *adv.* unrighteously, 329.
- Vnsaughte, 1910, Vnsawghte, 1306, 1457, 4140, *adj.*
- Vnsaughtely, 1501, Vnsaughtly, 1847, *adv.*
- Vnsekyrly, *adv.* unsafely, 966.
- Vnsemyly, *adv.* unseemly, 1044.
- Vnsene, *adj.* unseen, 3114.
- Vnselely, *adv.* unskillfully, clumsily, 979.
- Vnsownde, *adj.* 3290, 3931, 3942.
- Vnsparely, 3160, Vnsparyly, 235, *adv.* unsparingly.
- Vntenderly, 1144, Vntendirly, 2575, *adv.*
- Vntrewe, *adj.* untrue, faithless, 4227.
- Vntrewely, *adv.* dishonestly, 886.
- Vnuenquiste, *adj.* unvanquished, 2049.
- Vnwemmyde, *adj.* unspotted, spotless, 3801.
- Vnwittyly, *adv.* unwisely, 3802.
- Vnwynly, *adv.* unjoyfully, unpleasantly, 955, 1302, 1481, 3562.
- Vnwyse, *adj.* 3817.
- Voide, 309, Voyde, 215, 2049, 2094, *v.* pass out, pass away; 3 *s.* voydes, retreats, 3764, voydez, withdraws, 1974; *pl.* voydez, quit, 3168.
- Voute, 137, Vowt, 3054, *s.* mien. *Lat. vultus.*
- Voyde, *adj.* empty, vain, 10, (?) open, 911.
- Voyde, Voydes, Voydez. *See* Voide.
- Vpbrayde, *v.* 1930.
- Vpceynes, *s. pl.* (?) 3675.
- Vpe = up, 1119, 1877.
- Vrayllede, *p.p.* 2568. Perhaps for "*Veruelled*, or *Varuelled* :— having small rings attached." *Boutell's Heraldry*, p. 88.

- Vse, *v.* practise, 1843.
- Vtas, *s.* 625. "The eighth day, or the space of eight days, after any festival." *Halliwell.*
- Vttere, *adv.* further out, 2438.
- Vtters, *v.* 3 *s.* dismisses, 418.
- Vttirly, *adv.* 3966.
- Vys, 3617, Vyse, 2424, *s.* screw. Crossbows were drawn back by means of a screw.
- Wache, *v.* watch, 547; *inf.* wachene, 613; *p.p.* wachede, 1613.
- Wache, *s.* watch, 2499; *pl.* waches, 1356.
- Wafulle, *adj.* woeful, sorrowful, 950, 955.
- Wagande, *i. p.* wagging, waving, 3660.
- Wage, *s.* pay, 302.
- Wage, 547, Wagge, 333, 1615, *v.* hire, engage; wage, stake, 2967.
- Wagene, *v.* wager, 2445.
- Wakkens, 2370, Wakkenyse, 257, Waknez, 806, *v.* 3 *s.* awakes; wakkenysse, wakens, 3562; *pret.* wakkenyde, awoke, 3392.
- Walde, *v. pret.* would, 339, 342, wouldest, 876, 1035.
- Wale, *s.* gunwale, 740.
- Wale, *v.* choose, 181.
- Wale, *adj.* choice, 2148.
- Wale, *adj.* eddying, surging, 741, 763.
- Walkande, *i. p.* walking, 762, 3479.
- Walkyne, *s.* welkin, sky, 787.
- Walle, *s.* wave, 493. Ger. *welle.*
- Walopande, *i. p.* galloping, 2147, 2827.
- Walowes, *v. pl.* wallow, roll, 1142; *pret.* walewede, 3838.
- Walsche, *adj.* Welsh, 320, 2044.
- Wandrethe, 323, 2370, Wane-drethe, 334, *s.* woe, sorrow.
- Wandsomdly, *adv.* (?) sorrowfully, 4012.
- Wandyrs, *v.* 3 *s.* wanders, 798; *i. p.* wanderande, 763.
- Wane, *adj.* wan, dusky, dark, 492. A.S. *wan.*
- Wane. See Wyne.
- Wapene, 1106, Wapyne, 1119, *s.* weapon; *pl.* wapynez, 2137, wapyns, 312.
- War. See Ware.
- Warantizez, *s. pl.* guarantees, 1614.
- Wardane, 3523, Wardayne, 650, 2494, *s.* warden.
- Warde, *s.* ward, 2480, custody, 1613.
- Wardede, *p.p.* guarded, 1614.
- Wardrop, 4203, Wardrope, 901, 2622, *s.* wardrobe.
- Ware = where, 1054.
- Ware, *v. pret. pl.* were, 18, 177; *subj. pret.* 1 *s.* warre, 2647; 2 *s.* ware, 964; 3 *s.* ware, 73, war, 976; *pl.* ware.
- Ware, 19, Warre, 1973, 2045, *adj.* wary, cautious, aware. A.S. *wær.*
- Warely, *adv.* cautiously, 4026.
- Waresche, *v.* be healed, recover, 2186.
- Warlawe, 948, 958, Warlow, 1140, Werlaughe, 3771, *s.* warlock, wizard; also, a wicked man; *pl.* warlawes, 613.
- Warnes, *v.* 3 *s.* refuses, denies, 700.
- Warpe, 150, Werpe, 9, *v.* throw, cast; *pl.* warpes, 2746; warpes a-way = make off; *pret.* warpe, 901.
- Was, *v. pret. pl.* were, 1415.
- Wasterinne, *s.* desert place, wilderness, 3233. See *Wasturne* in *Al-literative Poems*, B. 1674. A.S. *wæstern.*
- Wate. See Wiet.

- Wathe, *s.* way, path, 3233. See *Wopez* in *Alliterative Poems*, A. 151. A.S. *wáðu*.
 Wathe, *s.* harm, hurt, 2668. See *Wope* in *Alliterative Poems*, B. 855.
 Wathely, *adv.* badly, 2090, 2186.
 Watte. See *Wiet*.
 Watyre, *s.* water, 1299, 1358.
 Watyre-mene, *s. pl.* mariners, 741.
 Wauerynge, *s.* 2224.
 Wawarde, *s.* vanguard, 1767. See *Avantwarde*.
 Wawhte, (?) 3480.
 Waxe, *v.* grow, 4322.
 Wayfare, *s.* course, 1797.
 Wayfe, *v.* wander, stray, 960.
 Waykly, *adv.* weakly, 697.
 Wayte, *v.* watch, look out for, 164, 1807; 3 *s.* wayttes, 2979; *inf.* wayttene, 1973.
 Weches, *s. pl.* witches, 613.
 Wedde, *p.p.* wedded, 700.
 Wedes, 1365, Wedez, 168, 500, Wedys, 2429, *s. pl.* weeds, garments.
 Wedirwyns. See *Wyderwyne*.
 Wedowe, *s.* widow, 950, 4285; *pl.* wedewes, 3154.
 Weende. See *Wende*.
 Weife. See *Wif*.
 Weilde. See *Welde*.
 Weile. See *Wele*.
 Weisely. See *Wyesly*.
 Wekyrly, *adv.* watchfully; hence, in a lively manner, briskly, 2104. A.S. *wacorlice*, watchfully.
 Welde, 3090, Weilde, 650, *v.* rule; possess, 2967.
 Wele, *s.* riches, wealth, 401, 653, weal, 4100.
 Wele, 170, 230, 321, Weile, 1783, *adv.* well.
 Welle, *s.* spring, well, 540, 882.
- Welle, *v.* spring up, bubble up, boil; 3 *s.* wellys, flows, 3819; *pret.* wellyde, 3377; *p.p.* wellyde, boiled, 1736.
 Welte, *v. pret.* overturned, 3152.
 Welters, 1140, Welterys, 890, *v.* 3 *s.* rolls; *pl.* welters, 1142; *i. p.* welterande, 2147.
 Welthes, *s. pl.* 3157.
 Wende. See *Wene*.
 Wende, 302, 1299, Weende, 2445, 2493, *v.* go; 2 *s.* weynde, 450; 3 *s.* wendes, 614, wendez, 701, weyndes, 2185; *pret.* went, 1301.
 Wene, *v.* think, suppose; 2 *s.* wenes, 1806, wenez, 963; *pret.* wende, 2121.
 Wenges, 768, Wengez, 819, 926, *s. pl.* wings.
 Wepede, *v. pret.* wept, 1920; *i. p.* wepand, 2679, 3561.
 Werdes, 3889, Weredes, 385, *s. pl.* fates, destinies
 Werdez. See *Werlde*.
 Were, *adv.* where, 3692.
 Were, 22, 33, 257, Werre, 516, 621, *s.* war.
 Weredes. See *Werdes*.
 Weres = veers (?), 3054.
 Weries. See *Wery, v.*
 Werke, *s.* work; *pl.* werkes, 3, 19.
 Werkkes, *v.* 3 *s.* aches, 2689; *i. p.* werkand, 1797, 2148.
 Werlaughe. See *Warlawe*.
 Werlde, *s.* world, 5, 708; *gen. sg.* werdez, 674.
 Werpe. See *Warpe*.
 Werraye, 546, Werreye, 657, *v.* make war, war upon; *pl.* werrayes, 3447; *pret.* werrayede, 2045, 2215; *i. p.* werrayande, 2089, werreyand, 2599.
 Werre. See *Were*.

- Werryde, *v. pret.* wore, 3872; *p.p.* werede, worn, 2930.
- Wery, 699, 3155, Werye, 4286, *v. curse*; 3 *s.* veries, 3888; *p.p.* weryd, 959.
- Wery, *adj.* weary, 492, 3392.
- Weryede, *p.p.* wearied, 796.
- Wesche, *v. pret.* washed, 231; *p.p.* weschene, 1301.
- Wetene, Wette. *See* Wiet.
- Wette, *v. pret.* wetted, 2332.
- Weyffe. *See* Wif.
- Weyndes, Weyndez. *See* Wende.
- Weyne = wine, *s.* 161.
- Weysse. *See* Wiese.
- Whame, 1202, Whayme, 770, *pron.* whom.
- Whanne. *See* Wyne.
- Whare, *adv.* where, 107, 302.
- Whare = were, 174, 529.
- Whas = was, 76, 634.
- Whayme. *See* Whame.
- Whedire, 3231, Whedyr, 2533, Whedyre, 962, *adv.* whither.
- Whedyre, *conj.* whether, 1717.
- Whene, 2044, Whenne, 63, *adv.* when.
- Whethire, *pron.* which (of two), 350.
- Whilde = wild, *adj.* 3232, 3446.
- Whilke, *pron.* which, 4194.
- Whilles, 1335, 1570, Whills, 1705, Whils, 1737, Whylez, 1597, *conj.* whilst; whilles, 1197, whills, 3908, whylles, 2132, 2511, until.
- Whilome, *adv.* sometimes, 1145.
- Whitte = white, *adj.* 3260.
- Whoo = who, 1322.
- Whydyrewyns. *See* Wyderwyne.
- Whyeseste. *See* Wiese.
- Whyne, why—not, 703. Whyne myghte I dye = O that I might die!
- Wieffe. *See* Wif.
- Wielde, *s.* (?) 2689.
- Wiese, 3035, Weysse, 2514, Wyes, 149, Wyese, 1972, Wyesse, 2745, *adj.* wise; *superl.* wyseste, 290, whyeseste, 532.
- Wiet, 420, Wette, 948, Wyt, 958, *v. know*, know of; 1 *s.* wate, 4203, wattle, 533, 2224; 2 *s.* wate, 3393, watte, 692, 3549; *pl.* wotte (*properly a sg. form*), 4100; *pret.* wiste, 3231, wist, 4204, wyste, 339, 891; *p.p.* wetene, 2966, wytene, 869.
- Wif, 993, Weife, 652, Weyffe, 674, Wieffe, 3550, Wyefe, 3575, Wyf, 986, Wyfe, 955, Wyffe, 3082, *s.* woman, wife; *pl.* wyfes, 294.
- Wightenez. *See* Wyghtnesse.
- Wile, *v.* get away by stealth, 3908.
- Wilfully, *adv.* 151, 3835.
- Wille, *s.* wildness, madness, 3836.
- Willed, *p.p.* strayed, astray, 3230.
- Wilne, *v.* desire; 2 *s.* willnez, 2224, wilnez, 3479, wynez, 961; 3 *s.* wylnez, 384. A.S. *wilnian*.
- Wirche. *See* Wirke.
- Wirchipe, 2187, Wyrchip, 10, Wyrchipe, 150, *s.* honour; *pl.* wyrchippis, 22.
- Wirchipe, Wyrchipe, 397, *v.* honour; 3 *s.* wurscheppez, 1059; *p.p.* wirchupid, 320, wyrchipide, 257, 685.
- Wirchipfulle, 1356, 2231, Wyrchipfulle, 333, 650, *adj.* worshipful, honourable.
- Wirke, 339, 2187, Wyrke, 149, Wirche, 3008, Wyrche, 130, 1030, 1384, *v.* work, perform, do; 2 *s.* wirrkkes, 2432; 3 *s.* wyrkez, 1267, wyrkkes, 1468; *pl.* wyrkes, 663; *pret.* wroghte, 1796; *pret. pl.* wroghtene, 2137; *p.p.* wroghte, 2622, 3495.
- Wist, Wiste. *See* Wiet.
- Wit, *v.* depart, 708. A.S. *witan*.

- With-owtene, 997, With-owttyne, 114, 139, Wythowttyne, 225, 491, *prep.* without; except, 849.
- Withstondene, *v. pl.* withstand, 1747; *p.p.* 1926.
- With-thy, *conj.* provided, on condition, 2587, 2591.
- Witter, *v.* certify, assure, 1239.
- Witterly, 3549, Wytterly, 324, *adv.* plainly, clearly, certainly.
- Wlonke, *adj.* proud, splendid, gay, 3154, 3338. A.S. *wlanc, wlonc.*
- Wode, 1266, 1281, Wodde, 1359, 2219, *s.* wood; *pl.* woddez, 1974. A.S. *wudu.*
- Wode, *adj.* mad, raging, 3837. A.S. *wód.*
- Wodely, *adv.* madly, 2827.
- Wodewyse, *adv.* madly, 3817.
- Wokes, *s. pl.* weeks, 354. A.S. *wuce.*
- Wold, 3835, Wolde, 1282, *v. pret.* would. *See* Walde.
- Wolfes, 3446, Woluez, 3232, *s. pl.* wolves.
- Wolf-heuede, *s.* wolf's head, 1093.
- Wombe, *s.* belly, 768. A.S. *wamb.*
- Wonde, 3494, Woonde, 1615, *v.* hesitate; 3 *s.* wondis, 3833. A.S. *wandian*, to fear, be awe-struck.
- Wonde, *s.* wound; *pl.* wondes, 1469, 2148.
- Wonde, *v.* wound; 3 *s.* wondes, 2090; *pret.* wondide, 2231; *p.p.* wondede, 1853, wonddede, 1553, wondyde, 1415, 1434.
- Wondirliche, 3377, Wondyrlyche, 1357, *adv.* wonderfully.
- Wondsone, *s.* misery, 3836.
- Wondyre, *s.* 1166, 1342; *adv.* 2515.
- Wone, *s.* dwelling, abode, 1300, 2472, 4204.
- Wonene. *See* Wyne.
- Wonne, *v.* dwell, 3910; 3 *s.* wonnys, 3551.
- Wonne, Wonnene, Wonnyne. *See* Wyne.
- Wonnynges, *s. pl.* dwellings, habitations, 3157.
- Wonrydez, *s. pl.* sorrow, grief, 707. *See* Wandrethe.
- Woo, *s.* woe, 2684, 3393.
- Woonde. *See* Wonde.
- Worde, *v.* 3393.
- Worme, *s.* reptile, 796, 798.
- Worows, *v.* 3 *s.* worries, kills, 958.
- Worthe, *v.* become, be, 959 992, 1306.
- Wortheliche, 2669, Worthilyche, 695, Worthily, 2191, *adj.* worthy.
- Worthethy = worthy, 1302.
- Worthily, 2231, Worthylye, 2547, *adv.*
- Wotte. *See* Wiet.
- Wraite, *v. pret.* wrote, 3904.
- Wrakfulle, *adj.* vengeful, 3818.
- Wrange, *adj.* wrong, left, 1480.
- Wraythe. *See* Wrythe.
- Wreche, 1273, Wriche, 1064, Wryche, 2778, *s.* wretch; *pl.* wreches, 1446.
- Wrechyde, *adj.* wretched, 5.
- Wreke, *s.* vengeance, 3839.
- Wreke, *v.* avenge, 321, 385; 3 *s.* wrekes, 2213; *inf.* wrekene, 151; *p.p.* wrokene, 2968, wrokyne, 2225.
- Wrethe, *s.* wrath, 151, 321, 385.
- Wrethe, *s.* fold, wreath, 1093.
- Wrethide, *v. pret.* angered, 2191.
- Wriche. *See* Wreche.
- Wristeles. *See* Wrystille.
- Wroghte, Wroghtene. *See* Wirke.
- Wrokene, Wrokyne. *See* Wreke.
- Wrothely, *adv.* fiercely, 1141, 1480, 2214.

- Wrotherayle, *s.* misery, wretchedness, ruin, 3154.
- Wryche. *See* Wreche.
- Wryngene, *v. pl.* wring, 3155; *p.p.* wryngande, 950, 2679.
- Wrystille, *v.* wrestle, 1141; 3 *s.* wristeles, 890.
- Wrythe, *v.* twist, writhe, turn about, 4322; wrythes, 1920, wrythis, 2214; *pl.* wrythyne, 1141; *pret.* wraythe, 1093.
- Wy, 164, 695, Wye, 2669, *s.* man, person; *pl.* wyes, 56, 336, wyese, 1300, 2656, wysse, 685. A.S. *wiga*, warrior; *wig*, war.
- Wyderwyne, *s.* adversary, 2045; *pl.* wedirwyns, 3818, wedirwynes, 3834, whydyrewyns, 2215. A.S. *wiðerwinna*.
- Wye, *v.* weigh (anchor), 740.
- Wyefe, Wyf, Wyfe, Wyffe. *See* Wif.
- Wyese, Wyese. *See* Wy.
- Wyes, Wyese, Wyesse. *See* Wiese.
- Wyesly, 1974, Weisely, 1613, 2599, *adv.* wisely.
- Wyghte, *s.* wight, man, person, 959.
- Wyghte, *adj.* vigorous, strong, 1140; *comp.* wyghttere, 964; *superl.* wyghteste, 290, 336, 532.
- Wyghtly, *adv.* vigorously, 553, 740.
- Wyghtnesse, 258, 516, 796, Wightenez, 1806, *s.* vigour, strength.
- Wykyde, *adj.* evil, 3232.
- Wylde, *s.* wild animals, 181, 657.
- Wylde fyre, *s.* 797.
- Wylez, *s. pl.* wiles, 1504.
- Wylily, *adv.* in a wily manner, craftily, cunningly, 2746.
- Wylnez. *See* Wilne.
- Wynche, *v.* wink, wince, 2104.
- Wyndowes, *s. pl.* some part of a helmet, probably the *windhole* or *aventail*, 911.
- Wyne, *v.* win, gain, conquer; wynne, 516; wyne to hir speche, get to speak to her, 3908; wyne awaye, get away, 468; *pret.* wane, 33, 115, whanne, 22; *p.p.* wonnene, 1214, wonnyne, 26, 618, wonene, 3001, wonne, 887, 1805.
- Wynly, *adv.* pleasantly, 671, 2185, 3338.
- Wynlyche, *adj.* pleasant, 181.
- Wyrche. *See* Wirke.
- Wyrchip, Wyrchipfulle, &c. *See* Wirchipe, &c.
- Wyrke, Wyrkkes. *See* Wirke.
- Wysse, *v.* direct, guide, teach, 9, 813; 3 *s.* wysse, governs, 671.
- Wysse. *See* Wy.
- Wyste, Wyt, Wytene. *See* Wiet.
- Wythowttyne. *See* With-owtene.
- Wythsytte, *v.* resist, 104.
- Wytt, 741, Wytte, 149, *s.* wit.
- Wytterly. *See* Witterly.
- Yare, 1901. *Read* Thare.
- Yche, Ylke. *See* Ilke.
- Ynewe, Ynowe. *See* Inowe.
- Yryne. *See* Irene.
- Yschewes, *v.* 3 *s.* issues, 610.
- Ythez, *s. pl.* waves, 741, 747, 763.
- ȝa, *adv.* yea, 993, 1033.
- ȝaldsones, *s. pl.* (?) 3809.
- ȝalower, *adj. comp.* yellower, 3283.
- ȝapely, *adv.* quickly, 1502.
- ȝates, 2471, ȝatez, 2039, *s. pl.* gates.
- ȝe, *pron.* ye, 12, 226.
- ȝee, 3911. Perhaps a mistake for *ȝees*, sobs. A.S. *giscian*, to sob.

- 3effe, *conj.* if, 2859.
 3elde, *v.* to yield, 1502; 3 *s.* zeldes, 3809; *p.p.* 3oldene, 2334, 2482.
 3eldene, *p.p.* 1870. Probably a mistake for '3oldene.'
 3eme, *v.* keep, guard; 3 *s.* 3emes, 430, 3emez, 938; *pl.* 3emes, 647.
 3erde, *s.* yard, 3254, 3280.
 3ere, *s.* year, 522, 552.
 3ermys, (?) laments, 3911. A.S. *gyrman*, to roar.
 3erne, *v.* yearn, desire, lust after; 2 *s.* 3ernez, 1502; 3 *s.* 3ernes, 1032; *p.p.* 3ernede, 2343.
 3erne, *adv.* earnestly, eagerly, 1794, 3325, 4189.
 3if, 340, 3ife, 1502, 3iff, 104, 3iffe, 4153, *conj.* if.
 3if, 1567, 3ife, 1668, 3iffe, 2323, *v.* give.
 3is, 2324, 3ise, 2585, *adv.* yes.
 3it, 1128, 3itt, 1140, 3itte, 2109, *yet.*
 3ofe, 1938, 2854. *Read* 'thofe,' *though.*
 3oldene. *See* 3elde.
 3ole, *s.* Yule, 2628.
 3olke, *s.* yolk, 3283.
 3omane, *s.* yeoman, 2628.
 3on, 2935, 3one, 299, 336, 341, *adj.* yon.
 3ondire, 3809, 3ondyr, 2720, *adv.* yonder.
 3our, 95, 153, 222, 3owre, 630, 683, *pron.* your.
 3ow, 15, 16, 3owe, 1266, *prc.* u.

9,
2,
34,
at
63,
1





GretagMacbeth™ ColorChecker Color Rendition Chart

